# Foreword

Welcome to the growing group of value-conscious people who drive Toyotas. We are proud of the advanced engineering and quality construction of each vehicle we build.

**This Owner's Manual explains the operation of your new Toyota. Please read it thoroughly and have all the occupants follow the instructions carefully. Doing so will help you enjoy many years of safe and trouble-free motoring. For important information about this manual and your Toyota, read the following pages carefully.**

When it comes to service, remember that your Toyota dealer knows your vehicle very well and is interested in your complete satisfaction. Your Toyota dealer will provide quality maintenance and any other assistance you may require.

If there is not a Toyota dealer near you, or you need emergency assistance for any reason, please call the following number:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ◀**U.S. OWNERS:** | Toyota Customer Experience Center | **Toll-free: 1-800-331-4331** |
| ◀**CANADIAN OWNERS:** | Toyota Canada Customer Interaction Centre | **Toll-free: 1-888-TOYOTA-8 (1-888-869-6828)** |

**Please leave this Owner's Manual in this vehicle at the time of resale. The next owner will need this information also.**

All information and specifications in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of Toyota's policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

**Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.**

**TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION**

♥ 2005 TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

All rights reserved. This material may not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission of Toyota Motor Corporation.

# SECTION 1- 1

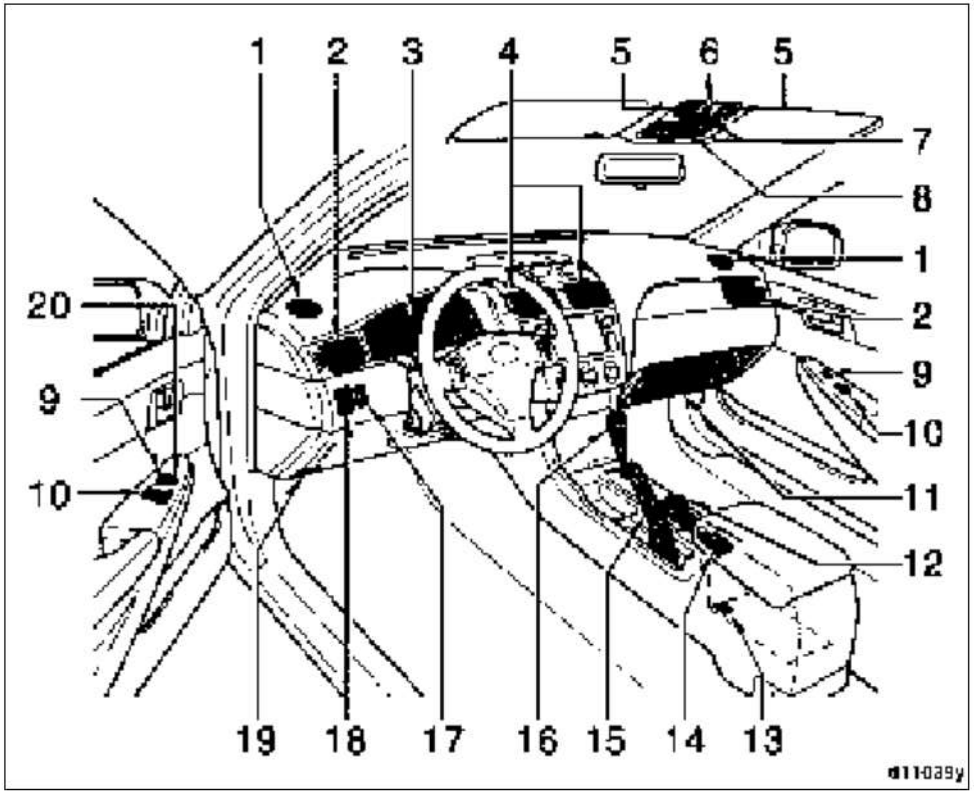
# OPERATION OF INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

## Overview of instruments and controls

Instrument panel overview . . . . . 2
Instrument cluster overview . . . . . 7
Indicator symbols on the instrument panel . . . . . 8

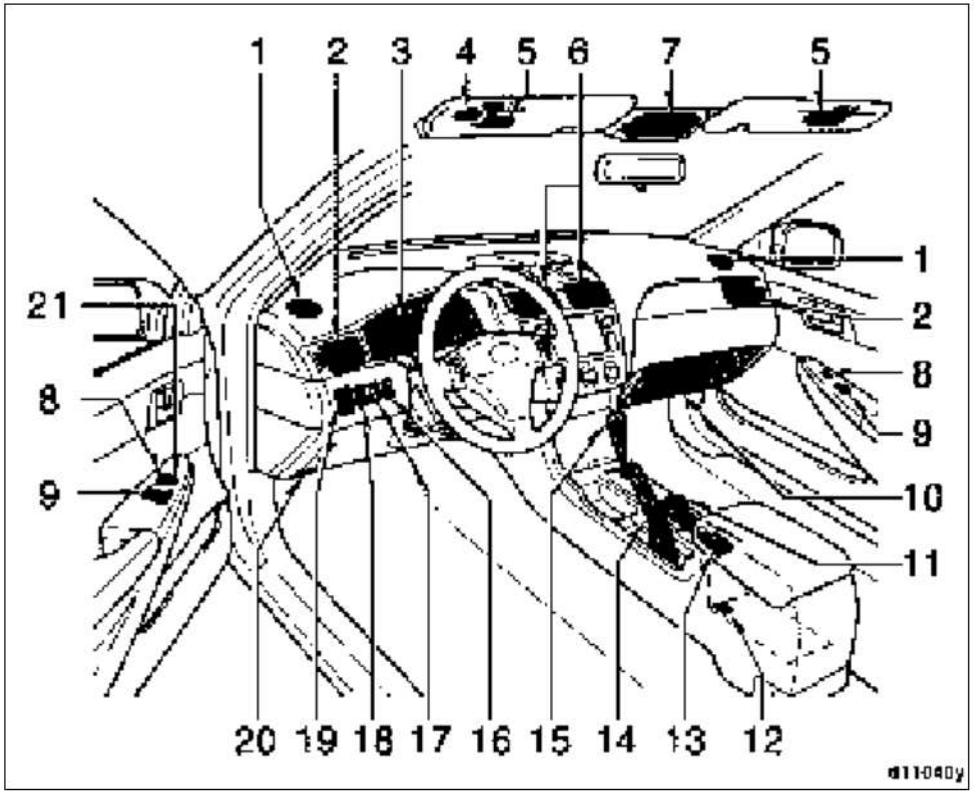
## Instrument panel overview

◀View A (coupe)



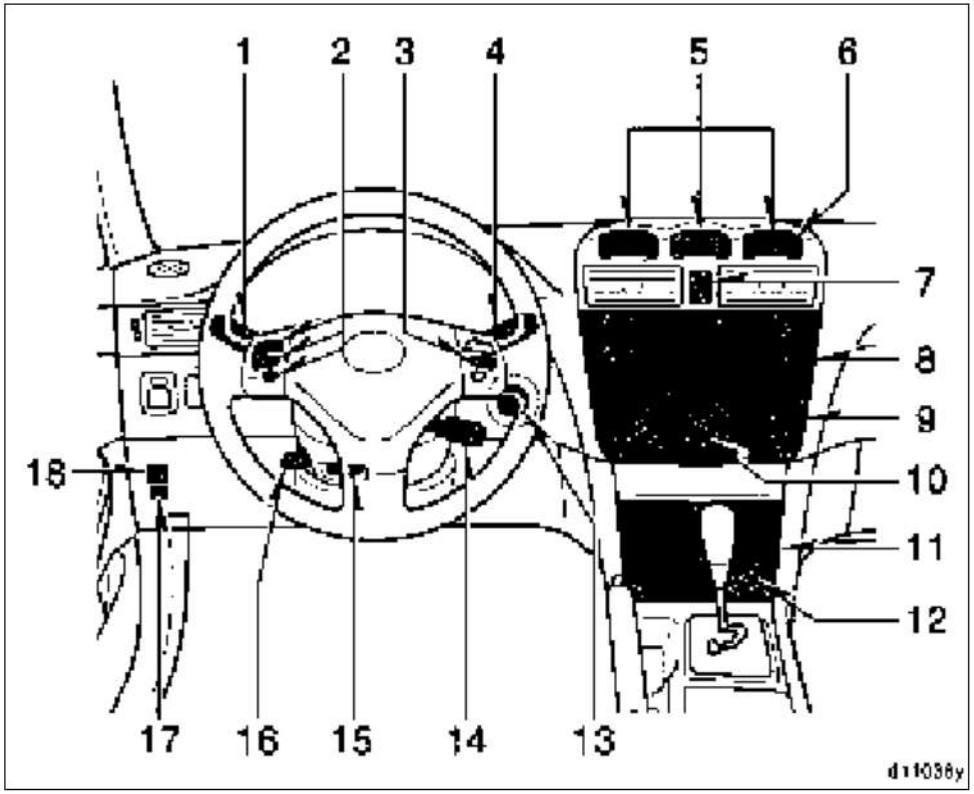

1. Side defroster outlets
2. Side vents
3. Instrument cluster
4. Center vents
5. Personal lights
6. Electric moon roof switch
7. Garage door opener
8. Auxiliary box
9. Power door lock switches
10. Power window switches
11. Glove box
12. Portable ashtray
13. Power outlet
14. Cup holder
15. Parking brake lever
16. Automatic transmission selector lever or manual transmission gear shift lever
17. Theft deterrent system/engine immobilizer system indicator light
18. Power rear view mirror control switches
19. Hood lock release lever
20. Window lock switch

◀View A (convertible)



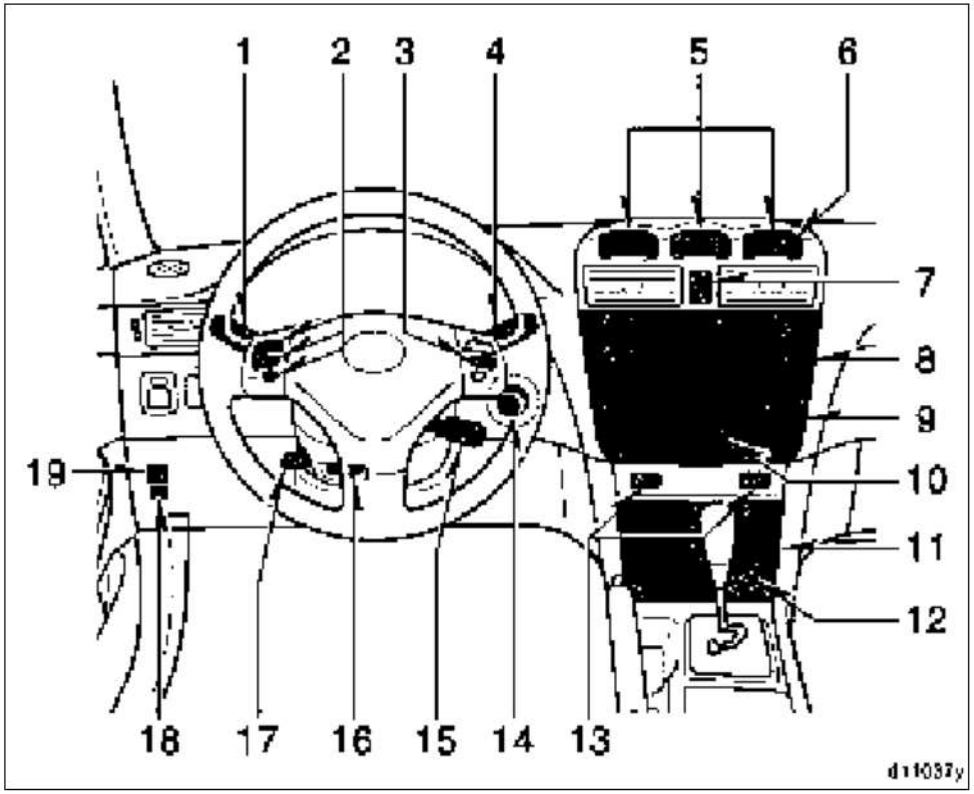

1. Side defroster outlets
2. Side vents
3. Instrument cluster
4. Garage door opener
5. Convertible top latch handles
6. Center vents
7. Personal lights
8. Power door lock switches
9. Power window switches
10. Glove box
11. Portable ashtray
12. Power outlet
13. Cup holder
14. Parking brake lever
15. Automatic transmission selector lever
16. Theft deterrent system/engine immobilizer system indicator light
17. All window control switch
18. Convertible top control switch
19. Power rear view mirror control switches
20. Hood lock release lever
21. Window lock switch

◀View B (with manual air conditioning controls)




1. Headlight, turn signal and front fog light switches
2. Audio remote control switches
3. Multi- information display control switch
4. Wiper and washer switches
5. Multi- information displays
6. Front passenger's occupant classification indicator light/front passenger seat belt reminder light
7. Emergency flasher switch
8. Audio system or navigation system including audio system (For the navigation system, see the separate "Navigation System Owner's Manual".)
9. Air conditioning controls
10. Rear window defogger switch
11. Auxiliary box
12. Power outlet
13. Ignition switch
14. Cruise control switch
15. Tilt steering lock release lever
16. Telescopic steering lock release lever
17. Tire pressure warning system reset switch
18. "TRAC OFF" (traction control system off) switch

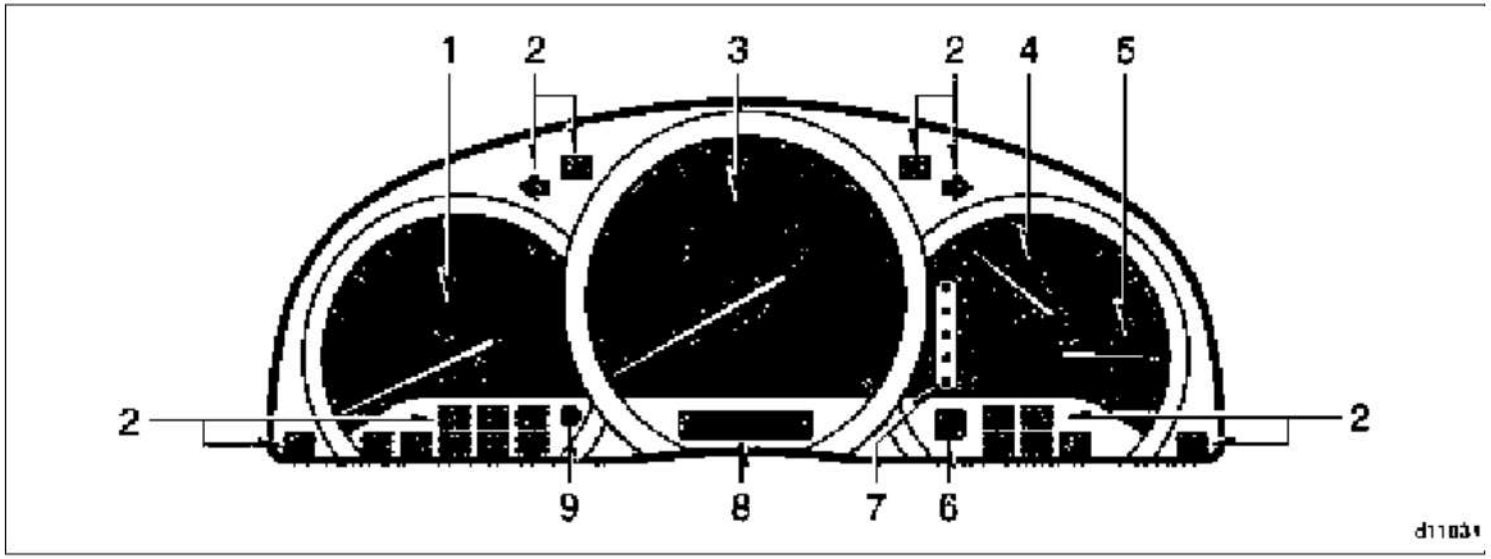
◀View B (with automatic air conditioning controls)




1. Headlight, turn signal and front fog light switches
2. Audio remote control switches
3. Multi- information display control switch
4. Wiper and washer switches
5. Multi- information displays
6. Front passenger's occupant classification indicator light/front passenger seat belt reminder light
7. Emergency flasher switch
8. Audio system or navigation system including audio system (For the navigation system, see the separate "Navigation System Owner's Manual".)
9. Air conditioning controls
10. Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger switch
11. Auxiliary box
12. Power outlet
13. Seat heater switches
14. Ignition switch
15. Cruise control switch
16. Tilt steering lock release lever
17. Telescopic steering lock release lever

18. Tire pressure warning system reset switch
19. "TRAC OFF" (traction control system off) switch

## Instrument cluster overview




1. Tachometer
2. Service reminder indicators and indicator lights
3. Speedometer
4. Engine coolant temperature gauge
5. Fuel gauge
6. Automatic transmission shift range position display
7. Automatic transmission shift position indicator lights
8. Odometer and two trip meters
9. Trip meter reset knob/instrument panel light control knob

## Indicator symbols on the instrument panel

| | |
|---|---|
| BRAKE or  | Brake system warning light*1 |
|  | Driver's seat belt reminder light*1 |
| PASSENGER  | Front passenger's seat belt reminder light*1 |
|  | Discharge warning light*1 |
|  CHECK | Malfunction indicator lamp*1 |
|  | Low engine oil pressure warning light*1 |

| | |
|---|---|
|  | Low fuel level warning light*1 |
| ABS or  | Anti-lock brake system warning light*1 |
|  | Open door warning light*1 |
|  | SRS warning light*1 |
|  | Low tire pressure warning light*1 |
| VSC | Vehicle stability control system/traction control system warning light*1 |
|  | Low windshield washer fluid level warning light*1 |

| | |
|---|---|
| MAINT | Engine oil replacement reminder light*1 |
| PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF ON | Front passenger occupant classification indicator light |
|  | Turn signal indicator lights |
|  | Headlight high beam indicator light |
|  | Slip indicator light |
| TRAC OFF | Traction control system off indicator light |
| CRUISE | Cruise control indicator light*2 |

*1: For details, see "Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers" on page 131 in Section 1- 6.

*2: If this light flashes, see "Cruise control" on page 154 in Section 1- 7.

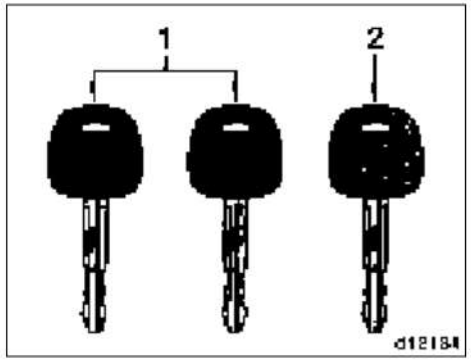
# SECTION 1- 2

## OPERATION OF INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

### Keys and Doors

Keys ..... 12
Engine immobilizer system ..... 14
Wireless remote control ..... 16
Side doors ..... 20
Power windows ..... 24
Trunk lid ..... 27
Hood ..... 29
Theft deterrent system ..... 30
Fuel tank cap ..... 32
Electric moon roof ..... 34
Convertible top ..... 36

## Keys




**Your vehicle is supplied with two kinds of keys.**

1. Master keys (black)—

   These keys work in every lock. Your Toyota dealer will need one of them to make a new key with a built-in transponder chip.

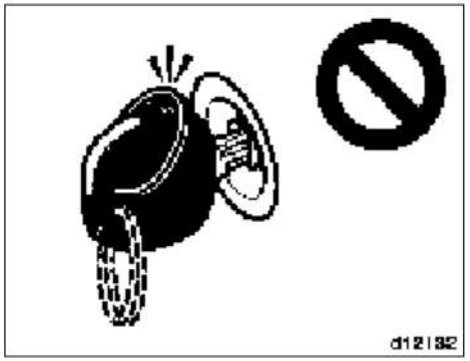
   Since the doors can be locked without a key, you should always carry a spare master key in case you accidentally lock your keys inside the vehicle.

2. Sub key (gray)—

   This key will not work in the trunk lid lock release lever and glove box.

   To protect items locked in the trunk or glove box when using valet parking, leave the sub key with the attendant.

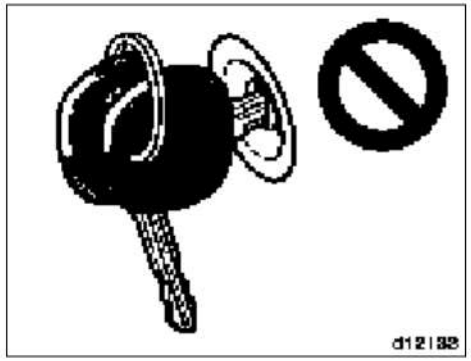
A transponder chip for engine immobilizer system has been placed in the head of the master and sub keys. These chips are needed to enable the system to function correctly, so be careful not to lose these keys. If you make your own duplicate key, you will not be able to cancel the system or start the engine.




***NOTICE***

***When using a key containing a transponder chip, observe the following precautions:***

- ***When starting the engine, do not use the key with a key ring resting on the key grip and do not press the key ring against the key grip. Otherwise the engine may not start, or may stop soon after it starts.***



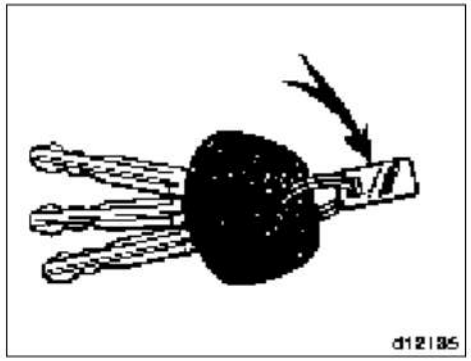

- *When starting the engine, do not use the key with other transponder keys around (including keys of other vehicles) and do not press other key plates against the key grip. Otherwise the engine may not start, or may stop soon after it starts. If this happens, remove the key once and then insert it again after removing other transponder keys (including keys of other vehicles) from the ring or while gripping or covering them with your hand to start the engine.*




- *Do not bend the key grip.*

- *Do not cover the key grip with any material that cuts off electromagnetic waves.*
- *Do not knock the key hard against other objects.*
- *Do not leave the key exposed to high temperatures for a long period, such as on the dashboard and hood under direct sunlight.*
- *Do not put the key in water or wash it in an ultrasonic washer.*
- *Do not use the key with electromagnetic materials.*

## Engine immobilizer system




**KEY NUMBER PLATE**

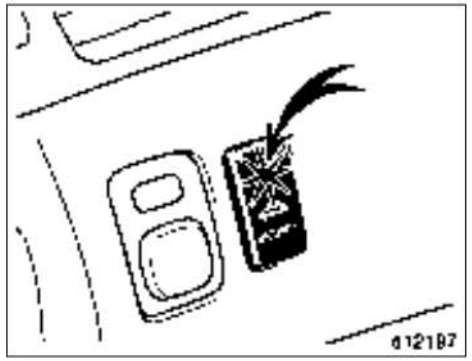
**Your key number is shown on the plate. Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.**

If you should lose your keys or if you need additional keys, duplicates can be made by a Toyota dealer using the key number.

We recommend writing down the key number and storing it in a safe place.




**The engine immobilizer system is a theft deterrent system. When you insert the key in the ignition switch, the transponder chip in the key's head transmits an electronic code to the vehicle. The engine will start only when the electronic code in the chip corresponds to the registered ID code for the vehicle.**




The system is automatically set when the key is removed from the ignition switch. The indicator light will start flashing to show the system is set.

If any of the following indicator conditions occurs, contact your Toyota dealer.

- ◀The indicator light stays on except when the theft deterrent system is setting or activating. (See "Theft deterrent system" on page 30 in this Section.)
- ◀The indicator light does not start flashing when the key is removed from the ignition switch.
- ◀The indicator light flashes inconsistently.

Inserting the registered key in the ignition switch automatically cancels the system, which enables the engine to start. The indicator light will go off.

For your Toyota dealer to make you a new key with built-in transponder chip, your dealer will need your key number and master key. However, there is a limit to the number of additional keys your Toyota dealer can make for you.

**If you make your own duplicate key, you will not be able to cancel the system or start the engine.**

***NOTICE***

***Do not modify, remove or disassemble the engine immobilizer system. If any unauthorized changes or modifications are made, proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.***

**For vehicles sold in U.S.A.**

**FCC ID: MOZRI-21BTY**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**⚠ CAUTION**

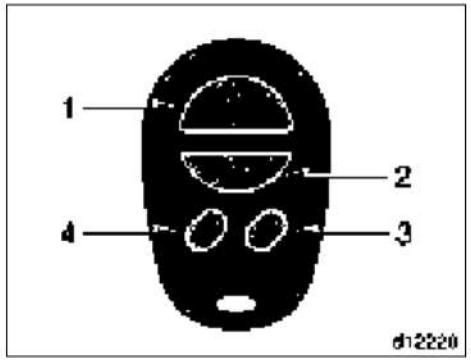
**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

**For vehicles sold in Canada**

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

## Wireless remote control—




1. Lock switch
2. Unlock switch
3. Alarm switch
4. Trunk lid open switch

**The wireless remote control system is designed to lock or unlock both doors, open the trunk lid or activate the alarm from a distance within approximately 1 m (3 ft.) of the vehicle.**

When you operate any switch, push it slowly and securely.

The wireless remote control transmitter is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions in order not to cause damage to the transmitter.

- ◀Do not leave the transmitter in places where the temperature becomes high such as on the dashboard.
- ◀Do not disassemble it.
- ◀Avoid knocking it hard against other objects or dropping it.
- ◀Avoid putting it in water.

You can use up to 4 wireless remote control transmitters for the same vehicle. Contact your Toyota dealer for detailed information.

If the wireless remote control transmitter does not actuate the doors or alarm, or operate from a normal distance:

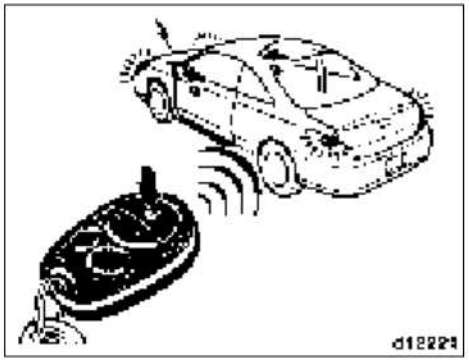
- ◀Check for closeness to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
- ◀The battery may have been consumed. Check the battery in the transmitter. To replace the battery, see "—Replacing battery" on page 19.

If you lose your transmitter, contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible to avoid the possibility of theft, or an accident. (See "If you lose your wireless remote control transmitter" on page 276 in Section 4.)

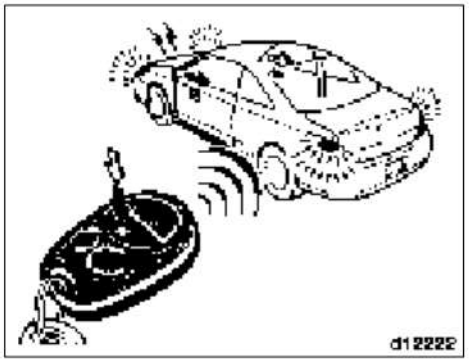
This complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## —Locking and unlocking doors




Locking operation




Unlocking operation

**To lock and unlock both doors, push the switches of the transmitter slowly and securely.**

To lock: Push the lock switch. Both doors are locked simultaneously. At this time one beep will be heard, and the turn signal lights will flash once.

Check to see that the doors are securely locked.

If either door is not securely closed, locking cannot be performed by the lock switch and a beep will sound continuously for 10 seconds. However, if the key is in the ignition, a beep will not sound.

To stop the beep, close both doors securely or push the unlock switch.

To unlock: Push the unlock switch once to unlock the driver's door alone. Pushing the switch twice within 3 seconds unlocks passenger's door simultaneously. Each time the unlock switch is pushed, two beeps will be heard, and the turn signal lights will flash twice.

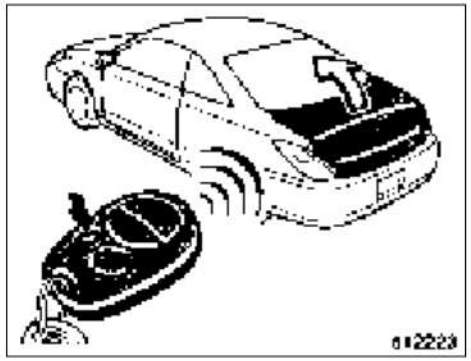
Coupe—When unlocking a door when both doors are locked, the interior light and ignition switch light come on. The lights remain on for about 15 seconds unless either door is opened and closed. (For further information, see "Interior light" on page 122 and "Ignition switch light and quarter trim courtesy light" on page 122 in Section 1-5.)

Convertible—When unlocking a door when both doors are locked, the ignition switch light, quarter trim courtesy light and personal lights come on. The lights remain on for about 15 seconds unless either door is opened and closed. (For further information, see "Ignition switch light and quarter trim courtesy light" on page 122 and "Personal lights" on page 123 in Section 1-5.)

You have 30 seconds to open a door after using the wireless remote unlock feature. If a door is not opened by then, both doors will be automatically locked again and one beep will be heard.

If the lock or unlock switch is kept pushed in, the locking or unlocking operation is not repeated. Release the switch and then push again.

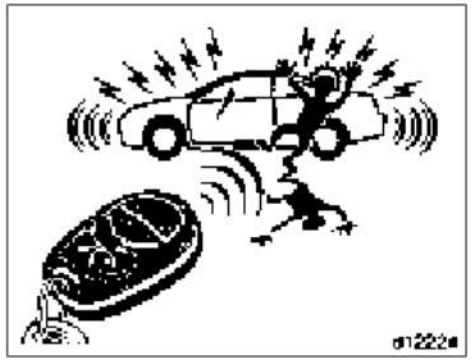
### —Opening trunk lid



**To open the trunk lid, push the switch of the transmitter for 1 second.**

If the key is in the ignition, the trunk lid cannot be opened by the trunk lid open switch.

### —Activating alarm



**Pushing the switch blows the horn intermittently and flashes the headlights, tail lights, turn signal lights, and interior light (coupe) or personal lights (convertible).**

The alarm switch is used to deter vehicle theft when you witness anyone attempting to break into or damage your vehicle.

The alarm will last for one minute. To stop alarm midway, push the switch once again, unlock a door with transmitter, or turn the ignition key from the "LOCK" to "ON" position.

The alarm does not work when the ignition key is in the "ON" position.

### —Switching beep sound

You can switch the beep on and off. (The beep is on initially and after battery replacement.)

To switch the beep on and off:

With the driver's door opened—

1. Insert the ignition key and remove it.
2. Within 5 seconds, insert the ignition key again and turn it to the "ON" position.
3. After 10 seconds, push any switch on the transmitter twice within 10 seconds. Two beep sounds inform you that the program has been switched on or off.

If this procedure is not followed exactly, the beep will not operate as expected.

Check the beep ON/OFF operation by pushing the transmitter switch after you finish this procedure. If the beep does not operate as expected, repeat this procedure from step 1.

## —Replacing battery

For replacement, use a CR2032 lithium battery or equivalent.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Special care should be taken to prevent small children from swallowing the removed transmitter battery or components.**

***NOTICE***

- ***When replacing the transmitter battery, be careful not to lose the components.***
- ***Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by a Toyota dealer.***
- ***Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.***

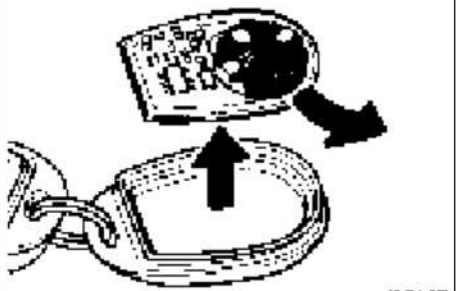
Replace the transmitter battery by following these procedures:

1




1. Using a coin or equivalent, open the transmitter case.

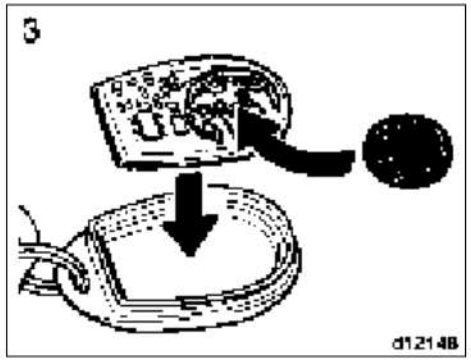
2




2. Remove the circuit board, then remove the discharged transmitter battery.

***NOTICE***

- ***Take care not to damage the circuit board.***
- ***Do not bend the terminals.***




3. Put in a new transmitter battery with positive (+) side up. Install the circuit board into the transmitter case.

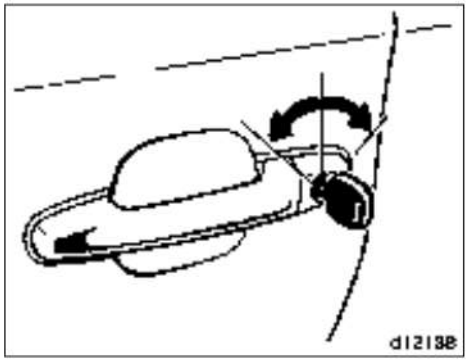
Close the transmitter case securely.

**NOTICE**

- ***Make sure the positive side and negative side of the transmitter battery are faced correctly.***
- ***Do not replace the battery with wet hands. Water may cause unexpected rust.***
- ***Do not touch or move any components inside the transmitter, or it may interfere with proper operation.***
- ***Be careful not to bend the electrode when inserting the transmitter battery and that dust or oils do not adhere to the transmitter case.***
- ***Close the transmitter case securely.***

After replacing the battery, check that the transmitter operates properly. If the transmitter still does not operate properly, contact your Toyota dealer.

## Side doors—




### LOCKING AND UNLOCKING WITH KEY

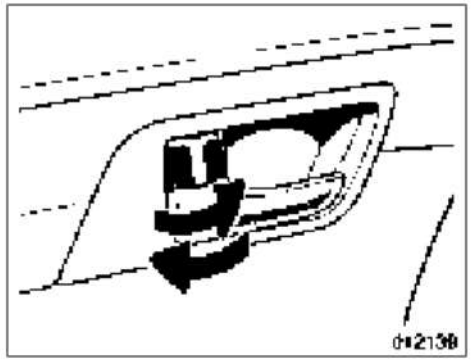
**Insert the key into the keyhole and turn it.**

To lock: Turn the key forward.
To unlock: Turn the key backward.

Passenger's door locks simultaneously with the driver's door. Turning the key once will unlock the driver's door and twice in succession will unlock passenger's door.

Coupe—When unlocking a door when both doors are locked, the interior light and ignition switch light will come on and remain on for about 15 seconds before fading out. (For further information, see "Interior light" on page 122 and "Ignition switch light and quarter trim courtesy light" on page 122 in Section 1-5.)

Convertible—When unlocking a door when both doors are locked, the ignition switch light, quarter trim courtesy light and personal lights will come on and remain on for about 15 seconds before fading out. (For further information, see "Ignition switch light and quarter trim courtesy light" on page 122 and "Personal lights" on page 123 in Section 1-5.)



**LOCKING AND UNLOCKING WITH INSIDE LOCK KNOB**

**Move the lock knob.**

To lock: Push the knob forward.
To unlock: Pull the knob backward.

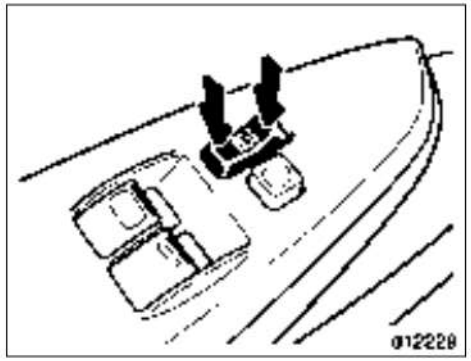
The doors can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock knobs are in the locked position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

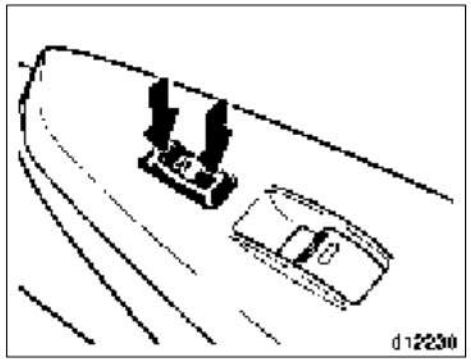
**Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving. The doors will open and an accident may occur. Toyota strongly recommends that all children be placed in the rear seat of the vehicle.**

Closing the door with the lock knob in the lock position will also lock the door. Be careful not to lock your keys in the vehicle.

The door cannot be locked when either door is open and the key is in the ignition.




Driver's side




Passenger's side

**LOCKING AND UNLOCKING WITH POWER DOOR LOCK SWITCH**

**Push the switch.**

To lock: Push the switch down on the front side.
To unlock: Push the switch down on the rear side.

Operating the switch simultaneously locks or unlocks both doors.

If you do either of the following, no door can be unlocked with the power door lock switch.

- Lock both doors with the key or wireless remote control transmitter when both doors are closed.
- Open the driver's door or passenger's door and move the inside lock knobs of both doors to the lock position, then close the doors.

The power door lock switch can be reset in the following ways.

- Turn the ignition key to "ON".
- Unlock both doors with the key or wireless remote control transmitter.
- Unlock the driver's door or passenger's door with the inside lock knob, and then unlock both doors with the power door lock switch.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Before driving, be sure that the doors are closed and locked, especially when small children are in the vehicle. Along with the proper use of seat belts, locking the doors helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out from the vehicle in an accident. It also helps prevent the doors from being opened unintentionally.**

## —Automatic door locking and unlocking functions

### AUTOMATIC DOOR LOCKING

**You can set or cancel the following automatic door locking function:**

**◀Locking linked with the shift position (vehicles with automatic transmission only)**

All doors are automatically locked when the selector lever is moved out of "P" position.

Be sure to apply the parking brake when performing the following operations.

**To set the locking linked with the shift position:**

1. Close all doors and turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
2. Shift the selector lever to the "P" position.
3. Within 10 seconds of turning the ignition switch to the "ON" position, press and hold the driver's side power door lock switch in the lock position for 5 seconds and then release.

   The doors will be locked and unlocked to indicate that the function is set.

To cancel the function, do the above operation again.

### AUTOMATIC DOOR UNLOCKING

**You can select the following functions:**

**◀Unlocking linked with the ignition switch**

All doors are automatically unlocked when the driver's door is opened within 10 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position, or the key is removed.

**◀Unlocking linked with the shift position (vehicles with automatic transmission only)**

All doors are automatically unlocked when the selector lever is moved to "P" position.

**You can set or cancel the automatic door unlocking functions:**

Be sure to apply the parking brake when performing the following operations.

**To select the unlocking linked with the ignition switch:**

1. Close all doors and turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
2. Shift the selector lever from "P" to the "N" position.
3. Within 10 seconds of turning the ignition switch to the "ON" position, press and hold the driver's side power door lock switch in the unlock position for 5 seconds and then release.

   The doors will be locked and unlocked to indicate that the function is set.

To cancel the function, do the above operation again.

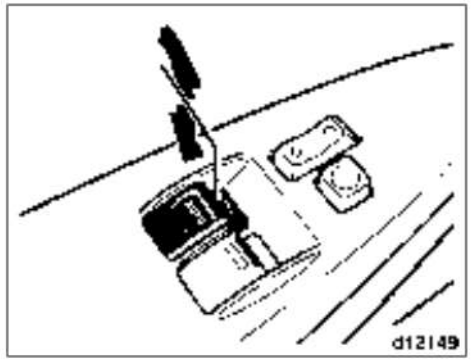
**To select the unlocking linked with the shift position:**

1. Close all doors and turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
2. Shift the selector lever to the "P" position.
3. Within 10 seconds of turning the ignition switch to the "ON" position, press and hold the driver's side power door lock switch in the unlock position for 5 seconds and then release.

   The doors will be locked and unlocked to indicate that the function is set.

To cancel the function, do the above operation again.

## Power windows




**The windows can be operated with the switch on each door.**

The power windows work when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

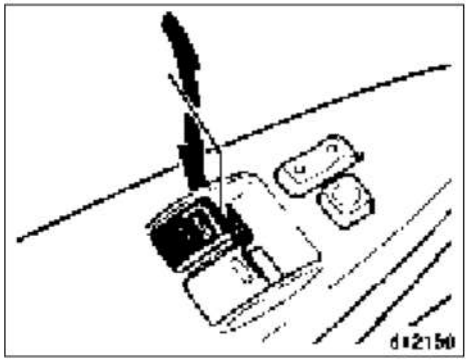
**Key off operation:** Both windows work for 43 seconds even after the ignition switch is turned off. They stop working when either door is opened.

**OPERATING THE DRIVER'S WINDOW**

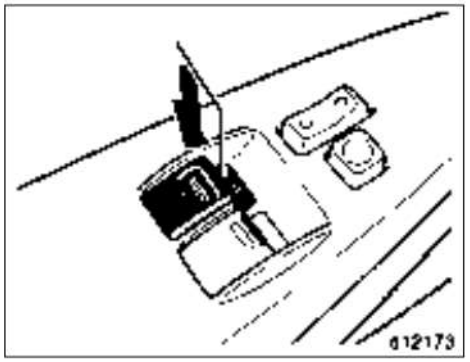
**Use the switch on the driver's door.**

**Normal operation:** The window moves as long as you hold the switch.

To open: Lightly push down the switch.
To close: Lightly pull up the switch.




**Coupe**




**Convertible**

**Automatic operation:**

Coupe—Push the switch completely down or pull it completely up, and then release it. The window will fully open or close. To stop the window partway, lightly move the switch in the opposite direction and then release it.

Convertible—Push the switch completely down and then release it. The window will fully open. To stop the window partway, lightly pull the switch up and then release it.

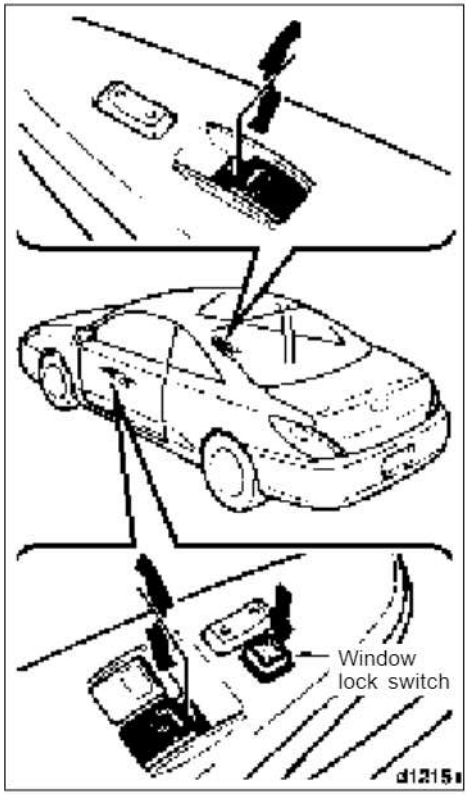
**Jam protection function (coupe):**

During automatic closing operation or key off closing operation, the window stops and opens half way if something gets caught between the window and body.

If the window receives a strong impact, this function may work even if nothing is caught.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.**
- **The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window is fully closed.**



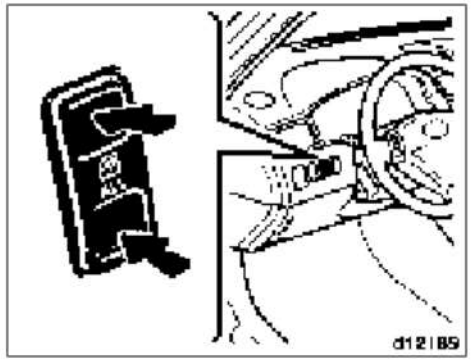
**OPERATING THE PASSENGER'S WINDOW**

**Use the switch on the passenger's door. The driver's door also has a switch that controls the passenger's window.**

The window moves as long as you hold the switch.

To open: Push down the switch.
To close: Pull up the switch.

If you push in the window lock switch on the driver's door, the passenger's window cannot be operated.




**OPERATING THE ALL WINDOW CONTROL SWITCH (convertible)**

**Both side windows and quarter windows can be operated simultaneously with the all window control switch.**

The windows move as long as you hold the switch.

To open: Push on the lower side of the switch
To close: Push on the upper side of the switch. The side windows will open slightly before closing if they are not fully opened.

If the side windows stop partway, release the switch and push it again after a moment, or operate the side power window switches on the doors.

**INITIALIZATION OF THE DRIVER'S POWER WINDOW (coupe)**

If the battery is disconnected or run down, the driver's power window may not operate automatically and the jam protection will not function correctly after you reconnect, replace or recharge the battery. At this time, the "AUTO" indicator light on the switch will flash. In any of these cases, you should initialize the power window.

To initialize the power window

1. Push down the power window switch and lower the window halfway.
2. Pull up the switch until the window closes and hold the switch for at least one second.

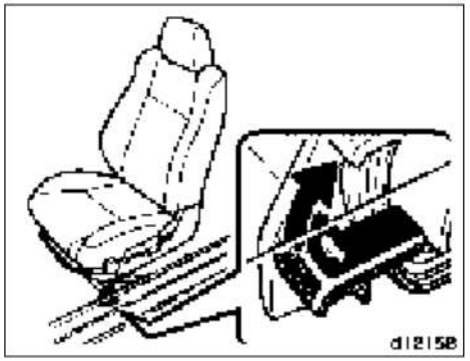
Make sure that the window opens and closes automatically. If the power window cannot be operated properly, have it checked by your Toyota dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**To avoid serious personal injury, you must do the following.**

- **Before you close the power windows, always make sure there is nobody around the power windows. You must also make sure the heads, hands and other parts of the bodies of all occupants are kept completely inside the vehicle. If someone's neck, head or hands get caught in a closing window, it could result in death or serious injury. When anyone closes the power windows, make sure he or she operates the windows safely.**
- **When small children are in the vehicle, never let them use the power window switches without supervision. Use the window lock switch to prevent them from making unexpected use of the switches.**
- **Be sure to remove the ignition key when you leave your vehicle.**
- **Never leave anyone (particularly a small child) alone in your vehicle, especially with the ignition key still inserted. Otherwise, he/she could use the power window switches and get trapped in a window. Unattended person (particularly a small child) can be involved in a serious accident.**

## Trunk lid—




**To open the trunk lid, pull up on the lock release lever.**

See "—Stowage precautions" on page 244 in Section 2 for precautions when loading luggage.

To close the trunk lid, lower it and press down on it. After closing the trunk lid, try pulling it up to make sure it is securely closed.

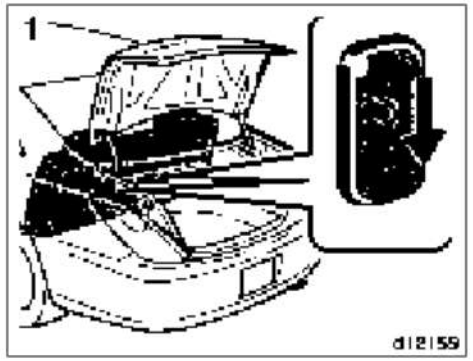
To deactivate this lock release lever from opening the trunk lid, see "—Luggage security system" described below.

The trunk lid can be opened with the wireless remote control transmitter, see "—Opening trunk lid" on page 18 in this Section.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Keep the trunk lid closed while driving. This not only keeps the luggage from being thrown out but also prevents exhaust gases from entering the vehicle.**

## —Luggage security system

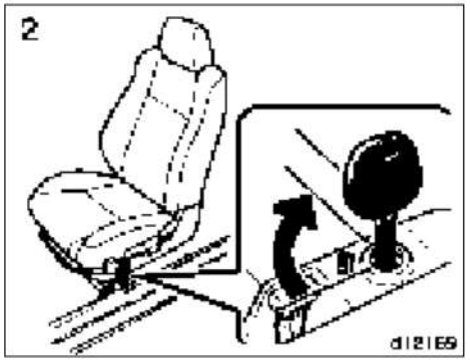



**This system prevents someone (with the sub key) from gaining access to the trunk by folding down a rear seat or using the trunk lid lock release lever.**

**To protect valuables stored in the trunk, do the following procedure.**

1. **Coupe—Open the trunk lid and push down the security lock levers to lock the rear seatbacks.**

After locking the rear seatbacks, try folding them down to make sure they are securely locked, otherwise someone could get into the trunk by folding down a rear seat.



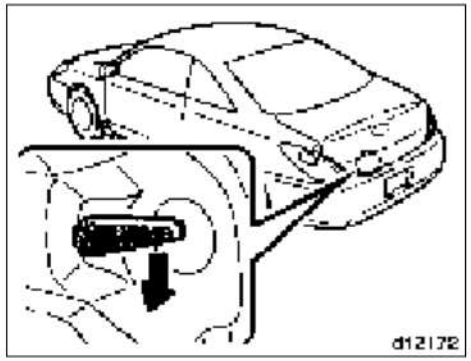

2. **Close the trunk lid. Insert the master key into the keyhole and turn it to the "LOCK" direction to deactivate the trunk lid lock release lever.**

After the operation, try pulling up the trunk lid lock release lever to make sure it is locked.

***NOTICE***

***Implement the above steps to maximize security of the luggage in the trunk whenever the vehicle is unattended.***

### —Internal trunk release handle



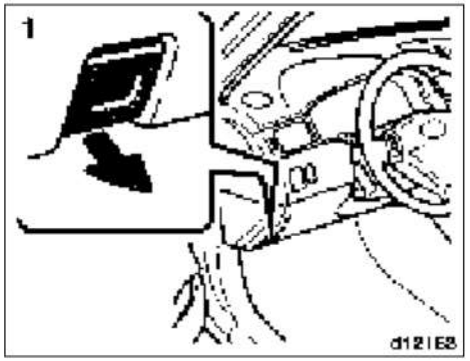

**If a person is locked in the trunk, he/she can pull down the phosphorescent handle on the inside of trunk lid to open the trunk lid.**

The phosphorescent (glow-in-the-dark) handle will continue to glow for a time after the trunk lid is closed. Exposing the handle to stronger light will cause it to glow longer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Always lock the trunk lid and all doors, and keep away the vehicle keys out of children's reach.**
- **Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Unsupervised children may lock themselves in the vehicle or trunk and suffer serious injuries or death.**

### Hood

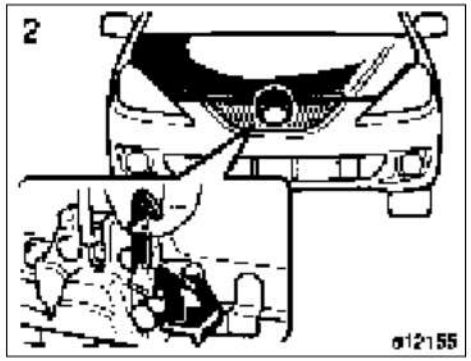



**To open the hood:**

1. **Pull the hood lock release lever. The hood will spring up slightly.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Before driving, be sure that the hood is closed and securely locked. Otherwise, the hood may open unexpectedly while driving and an accident may occur.**




**2. In front of the vehicle, pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.**

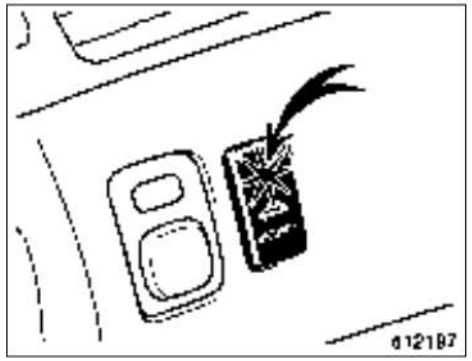
Before closing the hood, check to see that you have not forgotten any tools, rags, etc. Then lower the hood and make sure it locks into place. If necessary, press down gently on the front edge to lock it.

## Theft deterrent system




**To deter vehicle theft, the system is designed to sound an alarm if any of the doors, trunk or hood is forcibly unlocked or the battery terminal is disconnected and then reconnected when the vehicle is locked.**

The alarm blows the horn intermittently and flashes the headlights, tail lights and turn signal lights, and turns on the interior light.




**SETTING THE SYSTEM**

1. Turn the ignition key to the "LOCK" position and remove the key.

The indicator light will start flashing when the key is removed from the ignition switch. (See "Engine immobilizer system" on page 14 for details.)

2. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle.
3. Close and lock both doors, trunk and hood.

The indicator light will remain on when both doors, trunk and hood are closed and locked.

The system will automatically be set after 30 seconds. When the system is set, the indicator light will start flashing again.

4. After making sure the indicator light starts flashing, you may leave the vehicle.

Never leave anyone in the vehicle when you set the system, because unlocking from the inside will activate the system.

**CANCELLING THE SYSTEM**

The system will be cancelled by the following ways.

- Any of the doors are unlocked with the key or wireless remote control.
- The trunk is opened with the wireless remote control transmitter.
- Turn the ignition key to the "ON" position.

If the tail lights come on for 2 seconds, the theft deterrent system has been alarmed. Check to see if there is any abnormality with your vehicle.

**WHEN THE SYSTEM IS SET**

**Activating the system**

The system will sound the alarm under the following conditions:

- If any of the doors are forcibly unlocked or opened, or if the trunk or hood is forcibly opened without the key or wireless remote control transmitter
- If the battery terminal is disconnected and then reconnected
- If the ignition is hotwired

The indicator light will come on when the system is activated.

If any of the door is unlocked without the key or wireless remote control transmitter and the key is not in the ignition switch, all the doors will be automatically locked again.

After one minute, the alarm will automatically stop and the indicator light will starts flashing again.

**Reactivating the alarm**

Once set, the system automatically resets the alarm after the alarm stops.

The alarm will activate again under the same circumstances described in "Activating the system".

**Stopping the alarm**

The alarm will be stopped by the following three ways:

- Turn the ignition key from the "LOCK" to "ON" position.
- Unlock any of the doors with the key or wireless remote control transmitter.
- Open the trunk with the wireless remote control transmitter.

These ways cancel the system at the same time.

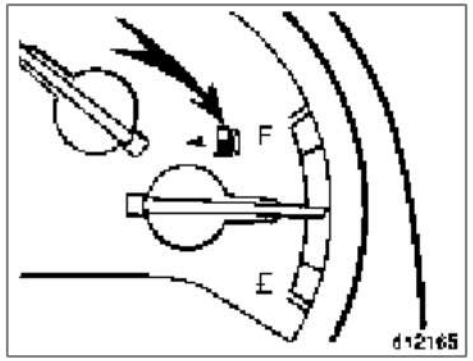
**If the battery becomes discharged due to the vehicle being unused for a long time, etc.,** when the battery is recharged or replaced, the system will give the alarm. If this happens, immediately unlock any of the doors with the key or the wireless remote control transmitter, and the alarm will stop.

**TESTING THE SYSTEM**

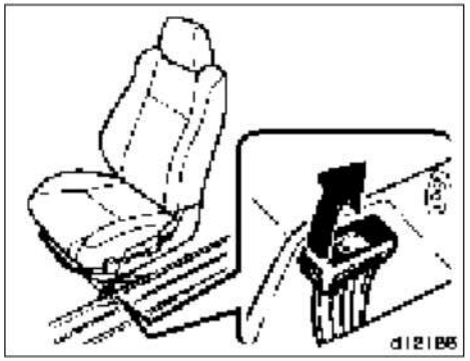
1. Open both windows.
2. Set the system as described above. The doors should be locked with the key or wireless remote control transmitter. Be sure to wait until the indicator light goes off or starts flashing.
3. Unlock any door from the inside. The system should activate the alarm.
4. Stop the alarm as described above.
5. Repeat this operation for the other doors, trunk and hood. When testing the hood, also check that the system is activated when the battery terminal is disconnected and then reconnected.

If the system does not work properly, have it checked by your Toyota dealer.

## Fuel tank cap




**This indicates that the fuel filler door is on the left side of your vehicle.**



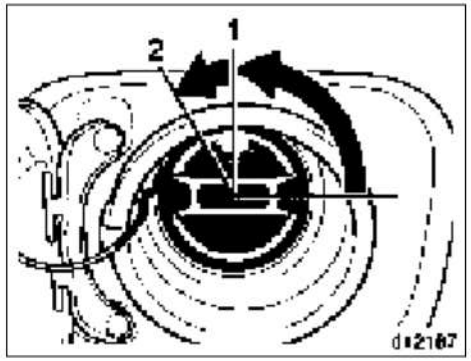

**1. To open the fuel filler door, pull the lever up.**

**When refueling, turn off the engine.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

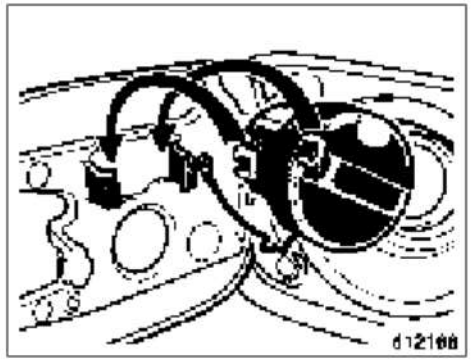
**◀Do not smoke, cause sparks or allow open flames when refueling. The fumes are flammable.**

**◀When opening the cap, do not remove the cap quickly. In hot weather, fuel under pressure could cause injury by spraying out of the filler neck if the cap is suddenly removed.**




**2. To remove the fuel tank cap, turn the cap counterclockwise by 90 degrees (to the pressure point 1), and then turn it an additional 30 degrees (to point 2). Pause slightly before removing it.**

It is not unusual to hear a slight swoosh when the cap is opened.



**3. The removed cap can be stored on the back side of the fuel filler door.**

Position the cap so that the hooks point to the left and right, and set it in the receptacle on the back side of the door.

**When installing the cap, turn the cap clockwise until you hear a click. When you hear the click, the cap is fully closed.**

If the cap is not installed securely, the malfunction indicator lamp comes on. Make sure the cap is tightened securely.

The indicator lamp goes off after driving several times. If the indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

**⚠ CAUTION**

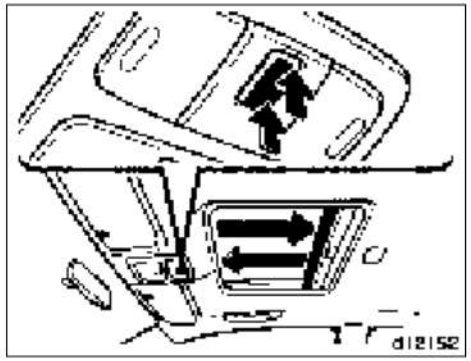
**◀Make sure the cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.**

**◀Use only a genuine Toyota fuel tank cap for replacement. It is designed to regulate fuel tank pressure.**

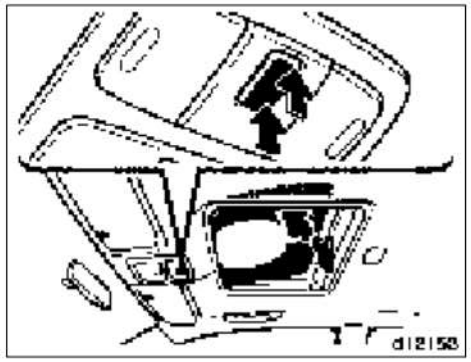
***NOTICE***

***To prevent damage to the cap, apply force only in the turning direction to the cap. Do not pull or pry it.***

## Electric moon roof




**Sliding operation**




**Tilting operation**

**To operate the moon roof, use the switch between the personal lights.**

The moon roof works when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

The sun shade can be opened or closed by hand.

**Sliding operation—**

To open: Push and hold the switch for 1 second on the "SLIDE OPEN" side.

The roof will open and stop partway 50 mm (2.0 in.) from the fully opened position. When you push the "SLIDE OPEN" side again, the moon roof will open fully. To stop the roof partway, push the switch on either the "SLIDE OPEN" or "TILT UP" side briefly.

As driving with the moon roof opened fully will cause wind throbs, we recommend you to drive with the moon roof partway 50 mm (2.0 in.) from the fully opened position.

The sun shade will be opened together with the roof.

To close: Push and hold the switch for 1 second on the "TILT UP" side.

The roof will fully close automatically. To stop the roof partway, push the switch on either the "SLIDE OPEN" or "TILT UP" side briefly.

**Tilting operation—**

To tilt up: Push and hold the switch for 1 second on the "TILT UP" side.

The roof will fully tilt up automatically. To stop the roof partway, push the switch on either the "SLIDE OPEN" or "TILT UP" side briefly.

To tilt down: Push and hold the switch for 1 second on the "SLIDE OPEN" side.

The roof will fully tilt down automatically. To stop the roof partway, push the switch on either the "SLIDE OPEN" or "TILT UP" side briefly.

**Key off operation:** If both front doors are closed, the moon roof works for 43 seconds even after the ignition switch is turned off. It stops working when either door is opened.

**Jam protection function:**

If something gets caught between the moon roof and frame during closing operation, the moon roof stops and opens half way.

If the moon roof receives a strong impact, this function may work even if nothing is caught.

**If the battery is disconnected or run down,** the moon roof may not operate automatically and the jam protection will not function correctly after you reconnect, replace or recharge the battery. In any of these cases, you should initialize the moon roof.

To initialize the moon roof, push and hold the moon roof switch on the "TILT UP" side, the moon roof will tilt all the way up and then tilt down a little automatically.

Make sure that the moon roof opens and closes automatically. If the moon roof cannot be operated properly, have it checked by your Toyota dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**To avoid serious personal injury, you must do the following.**

- **While the vehicle is moving, always keep the heads, hands and other parts of the bodies of all occupants away from the roof opening. Otherwise, they could be seriously injured if the vehicle stops suddenly or if the vehicle is involved in an accident.**
- **Before you close the moon roof, always make sure there is nobody around the moon roof. You must also make sure nobody places his or her head, hands and other parts of the body in the roof opening. If someone's neck, head or hands get caught in the closing roof, it could result in death or serious injury. When anyone closes the moon roof, first make sure it is safe to do so.**
- **Be sure to remove the ignition key when you leave your vehicle.**
- **Never leave anyone (particularly a small child) alone in your vehicle, especially with the ignition key still inserted. Otherwise, he/she could use the moon roof switch and get trapped in the roof opening. Unattended person (particularly a small child) can be involved in a serious accident.**
- **Never sit on top of the vehicle around the roof opening.**
- **Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.**
- **The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof is fully closed.**

## Convertible top—
## —Convertible top precautions

**⚠ CAUTION**

- When raising or lowering the convertible top, keep hands clear from the hinges of the top side rails and any part of the top linkage.
- Do not stop operating the switch in the middle of operation unless otherwise required. The roof will be gradually lowered, resulting in personal injury and damage to the convertible top mechanism.
- Do not open or close the convertible top when the wind is strong.
- The vehicle should never be driven with the convertible top partially lowered. Make sure the top has been either fully latched to the windshield frame or fully lowered before driving.
- While the vehicle is moving with the convertible top opened, nobody should stand up on the seat, sit on the rear seat seatback or lean over it. Otherwise, they could be seriously injured if the vehicle stops suddenly or if the vehicle is involved in an accident.

- Before you raise the convertible top, always make sure there is nobody near the top. You must also make sure nobody places his or her head, hands and other parts of the body on the convertible top. If someone's neck, head or hands get caught in the closing top, it could result in death or serious injury. When anyone raises the convertible top, first make sure it is safe to do so.
- Be sure to remove the ignition key when you leave your vehicle.
- Never leave anyone (particularly a small child) alone in your vehicle, especially with the ignition key still inserted. Otherwise, he/she could use the convertible top control switch and get trapped in the convertible top opening. Unattended person (particularly a small child) can be involved in a serious accident.

***NOTICE***

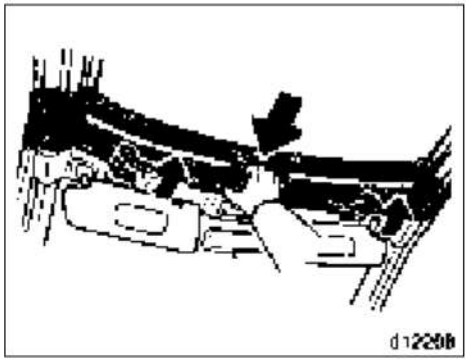
- *Make sure there are no items or packages between the rear seatback and the convertible top storage area when raising or lowering the convertible top. Even small items may interfere with convertible top operation and can cause damage.*
- *Do not sit or place excessive weight on the convertible top; when the top is up or down, damage to the top may result.*
- *To prevent from damaging the convertible top material, do not raise or lower the convertible top when the temperature is below 0°C (32°F) or the convertible top is frozen. If necessary to do so, warm the vehicle in a heated garage prior to operating the convertible top mechanism.*
- *Do not lower the convertible top if the top is damp or wet. Possible interior water damage, water stains or mildew of the top material may result.*

- ***When the convertible top is lowered, keep the rear window defogger turned off to avoid damage to the convertible top.***
- ***Do not open or close the convertible top repeatedly within a short time. If the motor prevention circuit activates, the side windows operation is disabled. In this case, operate the switch again after a while.***
- ***Do not sit or apply excessive load on the rear seat seatback when the convertible top is lowered. This may cause damage.***

### —Before operating the convertible top

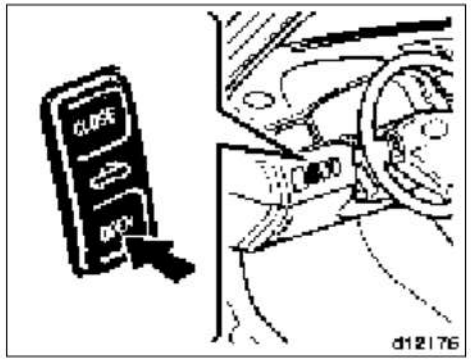
1. Park your vehicle on level ground.
2. Make sure the parking brake is applied firmly and the automatic transmission selector lever is in the "P" position.
3. Start the engine.

### —Lowering the convertible top



**1. Lower the sun visors. Pull down the convertible top by grasping the handle under the convertible top. And pull the latch handles fully backward.**

Visually check that the hooks of latch handles are unhooked.




**2. Push and hold the convertible top control switch on the "OPEN" side until the convertible top is completely lowered. Raise the sun visors.**

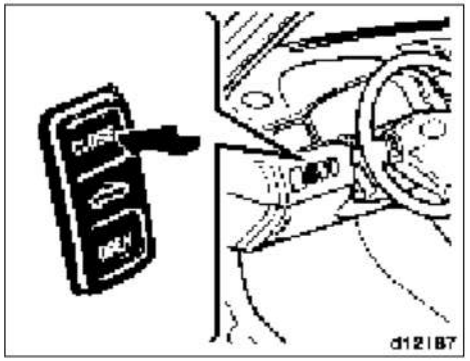
The side windows and quarter windows will go completely down when the convertible top control switch is pressed on the "OPEN" side.

If you push the switch intermittently, the side windows may not go completely down.

You can conceal the lowered convertible top by covering it with the top boot. For instructions about how to use the top boot, see "—Using the top boot" on page 39 in this Section.

If the convertible top does not lower during switch operation, see "If the convertible top does not rise or lower" on page 274 in Section 4 for instructions.

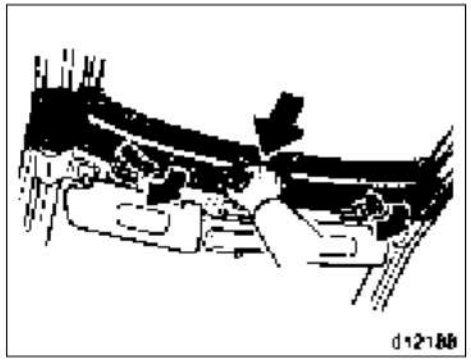
## —Raising the convertible top




**1. Lower the sun visors. Push the convertible top control switch on the "CLOSE" side until the top stops moving.**

The side windows go partially down and quarter windows go completely down when the windows are closed and the convertible top control switch is pressed on the "CLOSE" side.

If the convertible top does not rise during switch operation, see "If the convertible top does not rise or lower" on page 274 in Section 4 for instructions.

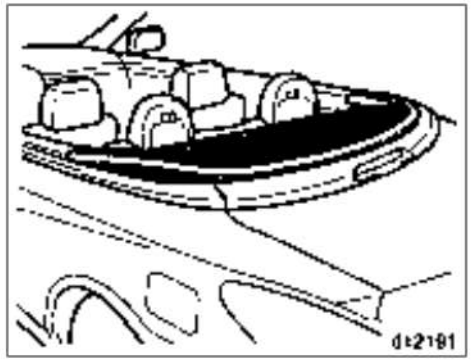


2. **Pull down the convertible top by grasping the handle under the convertible top. Push the latch handles fully forward until they are hooked.**

Visually check that the latch handles are fully seated in the strikers. Also, pull on the convertible top side rails to make sure the top is securely hooked.

3. **Raise the side windows, quarter windows and sun visors.**

## —Using the top boot

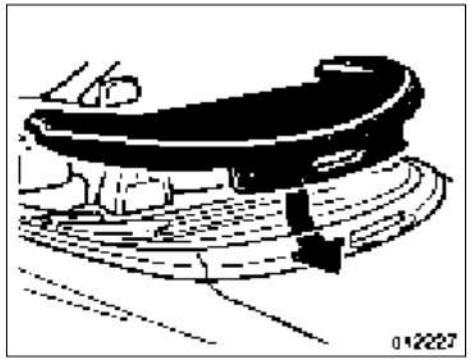


**The top boot is used to conceal the lowered convertible top.**

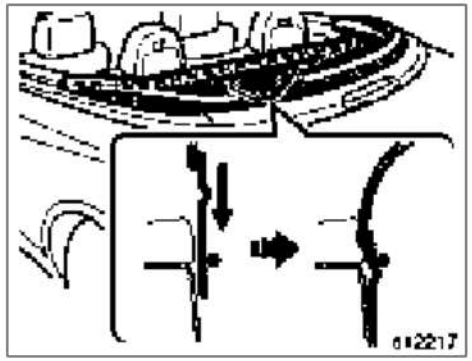


The top boot is folded as shown in the illustration and stored in the trunk.

When using it, take it out and unfasten the straps holding the top boot. Then unfold the boot and fasten the straps again.

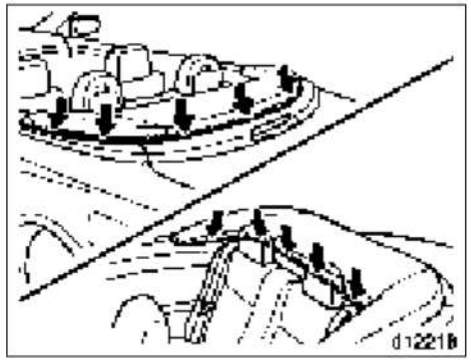


1. **Insert the top boot rear retainer underside of the body molding and place the top boot over the lowered convertible top. Keep the edge of the top boot above the body molding.**

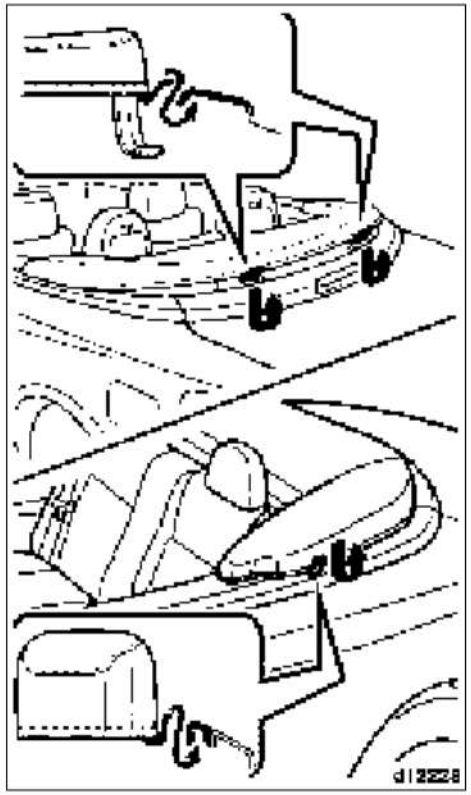


2. **Insert the top boot front retainer between the rear seatback and anchor bar.**

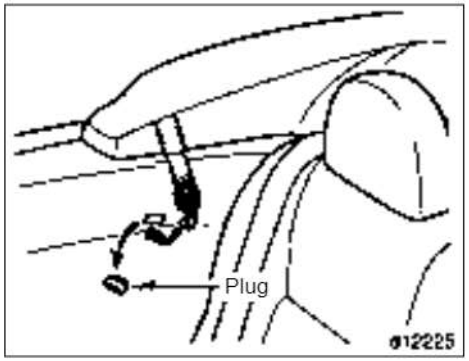
Make sure the top boot retainer protrusions are under the bar.



3. **Tuck the top boot edge under the body molding, behind the rear seatback and under the quarter trims until the edge seems are hidden.**




4. **Hook the tabs at the rear and sides of the top boot to the quarter trim edge.**




5. **Remove the plugs from the plugholes on the inside of the quarter trim and hook the straps into the plugholes.**

Store the plugs in a safe place until needed again.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Make sure the top boot is securely fixed. Otherwise the boot may be caught by the wind and fly off.**

When removing the top boot, do the above procedures in the reverse order.

# SECTION 1- 3

## OPERATION OF INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

### Occupant restraint systems

Seats ..... 44
Front seats ..... 44
Fold- down rear seat ..... 49
Seat heaters ..... 50
Head restraints ..... 51
Seat belts ..... 52
SRS airbags ..... 61
Child restraint ..... 85

## Seats

While the vehicle is being driven, all vehicle occupants should have the seatback upright, sit well back in the seat and properly wear the seat belts provided.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Do not drive the vehicle unless the occupants are properly seated. Do not allow any passengers to sit on top of a folded-down seatback, or in the luggage compartment or cargo area. Persons not properly seated and/or not properly restrained by seat belts can be severely injured in the event of emergency braking or a collision.
- During driving, do not allow any passengers to stand up or move around between seats. Otherwise, severe injuries can occur in the event of emergency braking or a collision.

## Front seats—
## —Front seat precautions

**Driver seat**

**⚠ CAUTION**

The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration ("NHTSA") advises:

Since the risk zone for driver airbag is the first 50—75 mm (2—3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
- If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

Front passenger seat

**⚠ CAUTION**

The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.

Front seats (with SRS side airbags)

**⚠ CAUTION**

The SRS side airbags are installed in the driver and front passenger seats. Observe the following precautions.

- Do not lean against the front door when the vehicle is in use, since the side airbag inflates with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, you may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the area where the side airbags inflate. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, causing death or serious injury.
- Do not modify or replace the seats or upholstery of the seats equipped with side airbags. Such change may prevent the side airbag system from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbag system to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.

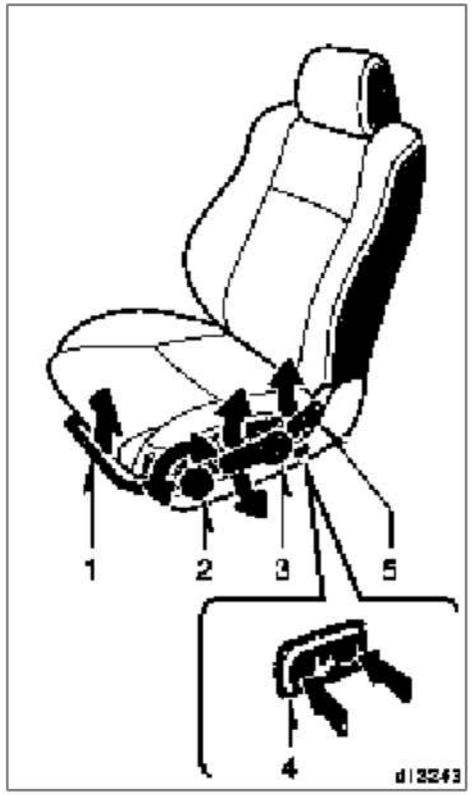
—Seat adjustment precautions

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Be careful that the seat does not hit a passenger or luggage.
- After adjusting the seat position, release the lever and try sliding the seat forward and backward to make sure it is locked in position.
- After adjusting the seatback, push your body back against the seat to make sure the seat is locked in position.
- Do not put objects under the seats. Otherwise, the objects may interfere with the seat-lock mechanism or unexpectedly push up the seat position adjusting lever and the seat may suddenly move, causing the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

## —Adjusting front seats (manual seat)

◀While adjusting the seat, do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts. Otherwise, your hands or fingers may be caught and injured.




**1. SEAT POSITION ADJUSTING LEVER**

**Hold the center of the lever and pull it up. Then slide the seat to the desired position with slight body pressure and release the lever.**

**2. SEAT CUSHION ANGLE ADJUSTING KNOB**

**Turn the knob either way.**

**3. SEAT CUSHION HEIGHT ADJUSTING LEVER**

**Pull up or push down the lever.**

**4. SEAT LUMBAR SUPPORT ADJUSTING SWITCH**

**Push the switch on either side.**

The amount of lumbar support will change while the switch is pushed.

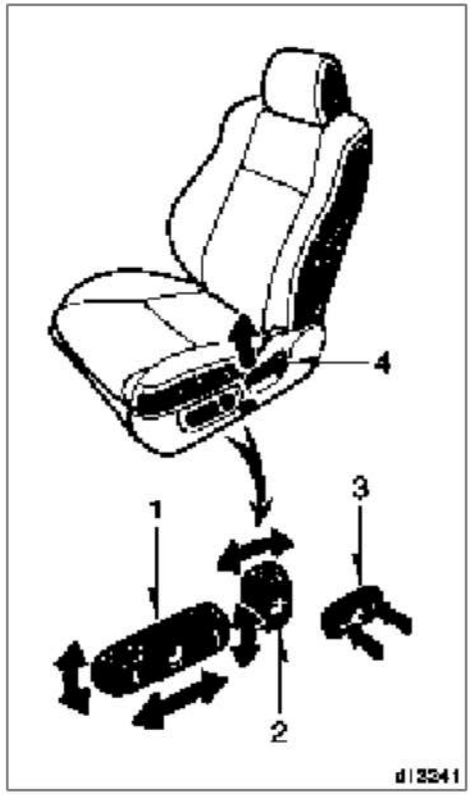
**5. SEATBACK ANGLE ADJUSTING LEVER**

**Lean forward and pull the lever up. Then lean back to the desired angle and release the lever.**

## —Adjusting front seats (power seat)

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Avoid reclining the seatback any more than needed. The seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger are sitting up straight and well back in the seats. If you are reclined, the lap belt may slide past your hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt. In the event of a frontal collision, the more the seat is reclined, the greater the risk of death or personal injury.**




**1. SEAT POSITION AND SEAT CUSHION HEIGHT ADJUSTING SWITCH**

**Move the control switch in the desired direction.**

Releasing the switch will stop the seat at that position.

Do not place anything under the front seats, as this might interfere with the seat movement.

**2. SEATBACK ANGLE ADJUSTING SWITCH**

**Move the control switch in the desired direction.**

Releasing the switch will stop the seatback at that position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Avoid reclining the seatback any more than needed. The seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger are sitting up straight and well back in the seats. If you are reclined, the lap belt may slide past your hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt. In the event of a frontal collision, the more the seat is reclined, the greater the risk of death or personal injury.**

**3. SEAT LUMBAR SUPPORT ADJUSTING SWITCH**

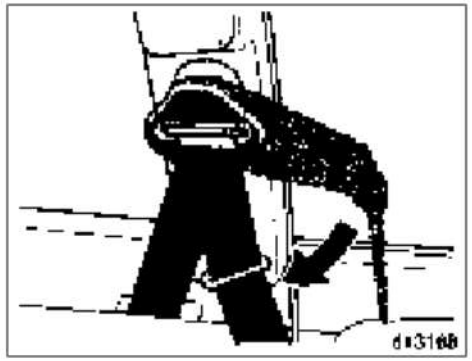
**Push the switch on either side.**

The amount of lumbar support will change while the switch is pushed.

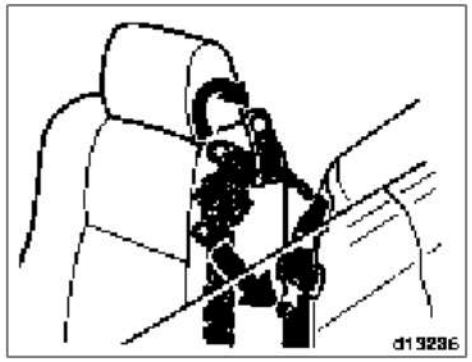
**4. SEATBACK LOCK RELEASE LEVER**

This lever uses for the rear seat entry. For details, see "—Moving front seats for rear seat entry" described below.

**—Moving front seats for rear seat entry**



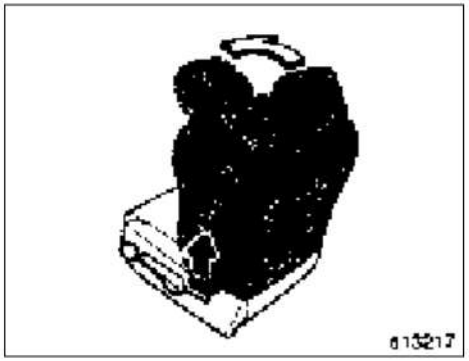
Coupe



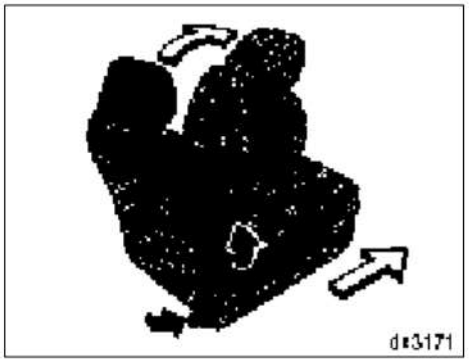
Convertible

**Coupe—Before access to the rear seat, push the seat belt hanger down as far as it will go when it is in the raised position.**

**Convertible—Before access to the rear seat, remove the seat belt from the seat belt guide.**



From the driver's side



From the front passenger's side

**From the driver's side—**

**Pull up the seatback angle adjusting lever (manual seat) or seatback lock release lever (power seat), and incline the seatback.**

After passengers are in, lift the seatback.

**From the front passenger's side—**

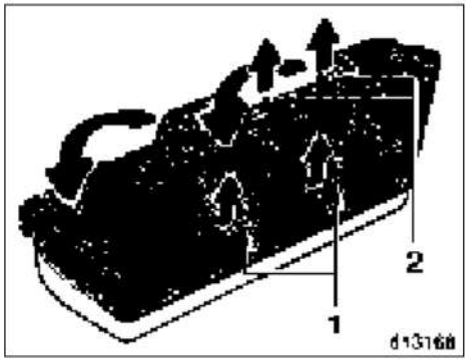
**Pull up the seatback angle adjusting lever or press the lock release pedal behind the seatback, and move the seat to the front most position.**

After passengers are in, lift the seatback and return the seat until it locks.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **After putting back the seat, try pushing the seat forward and rearward to make sure it is secured in place.**
- **Never allow anyone to rest their foot on the lock release pedal behind the front passenger seatback while the vehicle is moving.**

## Fold-down rear seat (coupe)

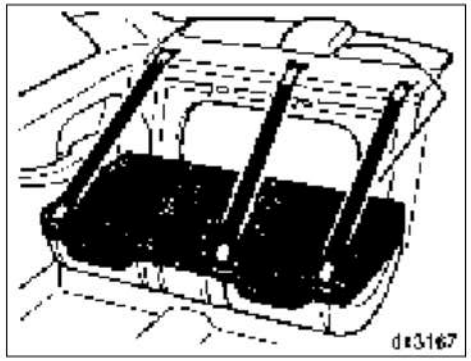



1. **Pull up the seatback security lock lever (1) to the unlock position.**
2. **Pull up the lock release button (2).**
3. **Fold down the seatback.**

Each seatback can be folded separately.

***NOTICE***

***To prevent damage to the lock release button, do not fold down the seatback by pulling the lock release button.***




This will enlarge the trunk as far as the seatbacks. See "—Stowage precautions" on page 244 in Section 2 for precautions when loading luggage.

***NOTICE***

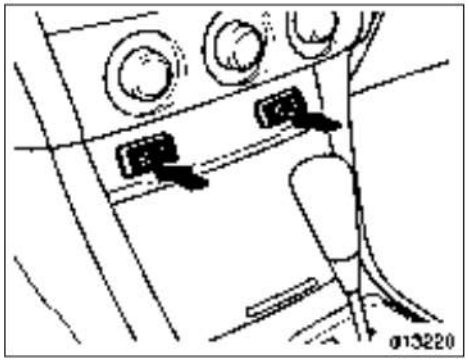
***Make sure the luggage loaded in the enlarged trunk will not damage the webbing of the rear seat belts when the seatback is folded down.***

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When returning the seatback to the upright position, observe the following precautions in order to prevent personal injury in a collision or sudden stop:**

- **Make sure the seatback is securely locked by pushing forward and rearward on top of the seatback and that the red mark at the button on top of the seatback cannot be seen. Failure to do so will prevent the seat belt from operating properly.**
- **Make sure the seat belts are not twisted or caught in the seatback and are arranged in the proper position and are ready to use.**

## Seat heaters




**To turn on the seat heater, push the switch. At this time, the indicator light will illuminate to indicate the seat heater is operating.**

**To turn off the seat heater, push the switch once again.**

The key must be in the "ON" position to operate seat heaters.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Occupants must use caution when operating the seat heater because it may make them feel too hot or cause burns at low temperatures (erythema, varicella). Use extra caution for;

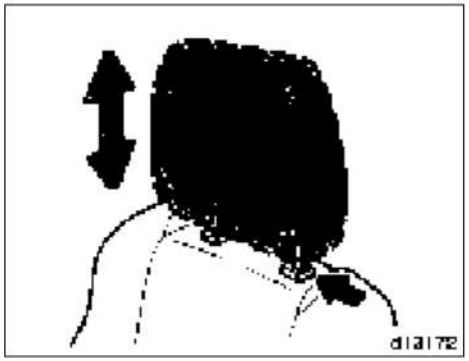
- Babies, small children, elderly persons, sick persons or persons with physical disabilities
- Persons who have delicate skin
- Persons who are exhausted
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs which induce sleep (sleeping drug, cold remedy, etc.)

To prevent the seat overheating, do not use the seat heater with a blanket, cushion, or other insulating objects which cover the seat.

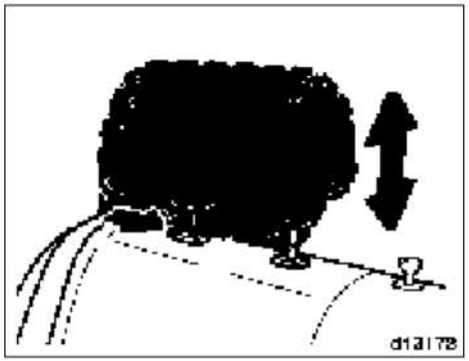
***NOTICE***

- *Do not put unevenly weighed objects on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.*
- *When cleaning the seats, do not use organic substances (paint thinner, benzine, alcohol, gasoline, etc.). They may damage the heater and seat surface.*
- *To prevent the battery from becoming discharged, turn the switch off when the engine is not running.*

## Head restraints




Front




Rear (coupe)

**For your safety and comfort, adjust the head restraint before driving.**

To raise: Pull it up.
To lower: Push it down while pressing the lock release button.

The head restraint is most effective when it is close to your head. Therefore, using a cushion on the seatback is not recommended.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Adjust the center of the head restraint so that it is closest to the top of your ears.**
- **After adjusting the head restraint, make sure it is locked in position.**
- **Do not drive with the head restraints removed.**

## Seat belts—
## —Seat belt precautions

Toyota strongly urges that the driver and passengers in the vehicle be properly restrained at all times with the seat belts provided. Failure to do so could increase the chance of injury and/or the severity of injury in accidents.

The seat belts provided for your vehicle are designed for people of adult size, large enough to properly wear them.

**Child.** Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belts. See "Child restraint" on page 85 in this Section for details.

If a child is too large for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and must be restrained using the vehicle's seat belt. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.

If a child must sit in the front seat, the seat belts should be worn properly. If an accident occurs and the seat belts are not worn properly, the force of the rapid inflation of the airbag may cause death or serious injury to the child.

Do not allow any children to stand up or kneel on either rear or front seats. An unrestrained child could suffer serious injury or death during emergency braking or a collision. Also, do not let the child sit on your lap. Holding a child in your arms does not provide sufficient restraint.

**Pregnant woman.** Toyota recommends the use of a seat belt. Ask your doctor for specific recommendations. The lap belt should be worn securely and as low as possible over the hips and not on the waist.

**Injured person.** Toyota recommends the use of a seat belt. Depending on the injury, first check with your doctor for specific recommendations.

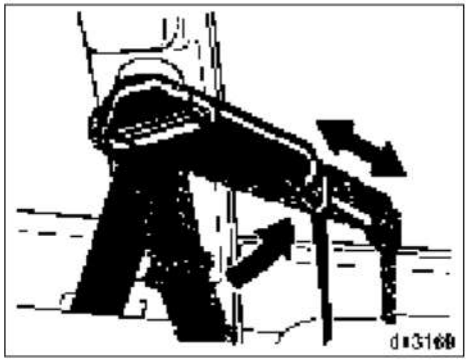
**⚠ CAUTION**

Persons should ride in their seats properly wearing their seat belts whenever the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer serious bodily injury or death in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

When using the seat belts, observe the following:

- Use the belt for only one person at a time. Do not use a single belt for two or more people—even children.
- Avoid reclining the seatback any more than needed. The seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger are sitting up straight and well back in the seats. If you are reclined, the lap belt may slide past your hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt. In the event of a frontal collision, the more the seat is reclined, the greater the risk of death or personal injury.
- Be careful not to damage the belt webbing or hardware. Take care that they do not get caught or pinched in the seat or doors.
- Inspect the belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Damaged parts should be replaced. Do not disassemble or modify the system.
- Keep the belts clean and dry. If they need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Never use bleach, dye, or abrasive cleaners, or allow them to come into contact with the belt—they may severely weaken the belts. (See "Cleaning the interior" on page 282 in Section 5.)
- Replace the belt assembly (including bolts) if it has been used in a severe impact. The entire assembly should be replaced even if damage is not obvious.

## —Fastening front and rear seat belts



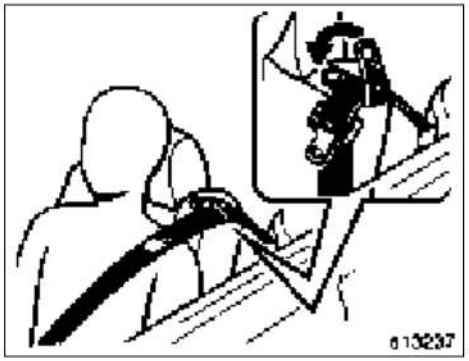
**USING FRONT SEAT BELT HANGERS (coupe)**

**Raise the front seat belt hanger until it locks before you fasten the front seat belt. Then adjust the length of the hanger by pulling or pushing it.**

You will hear a click when the seat belt hanger locks in raised position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Make sure the seat belt hanger is secured in the raised position before you fasten the seat belt. If it is not, the seat belt may not work properly.**



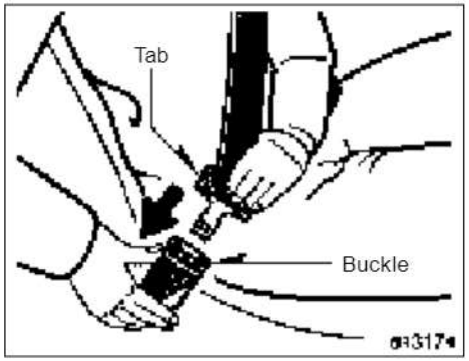
**USING FRONT SEAT BELT GUIDES (convertible)**

**The seat belt guide helps keep the seat belt in its proper position. The guide can also be used to reach the seat belt tab easily.**

To use the seat belt guide, detach the hanger magnet. Place the seat belt through the guide and reattach the magnets.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned securely across the shoulder, but kept away from neck. Use the seat belt guide to position the belt if necessary. Failure to properly position the belt may reduce the amount of protection in an accident and could lead to serious injuries in a collision.**
- **Always make sure that the belt webbing is not twisted and runs freely through the guide when using it.**
- **Always adjust the seat belt webbing snugly, adjust the seat belt guide and seat position to assure proper fit and comfort of your seat belt.**




**Adjust the seat as needed and sit up straight and well back in the seat. To fasten your belt, pull it out of the retractor and insert the tab into the buckle.**

You will hear a click when the tab locks into the buckle.

The seat belt length automatically adjusts to your size and the seat position.

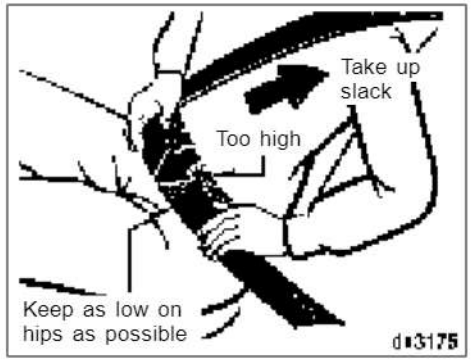
The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It also may lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend, and you can move around freely.

When a passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and is then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system securely. (For details, see "Child restraint" on page 85 in this Section.) To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more.

If the seat belt cannot be pulled out of the retractor, firmly pull the belt and release it. You will then be able to smoothly pull the belt out of the retractor.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the belt is not twisted.**
- **Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent you from properly latching the tab and buckle.**
- **If the seat belt does not function normally, immediately contact your Toyota dealer. Do not use the seat until the seat belt is fixed, because it cannot protect an adult occupant or your child from injury.**

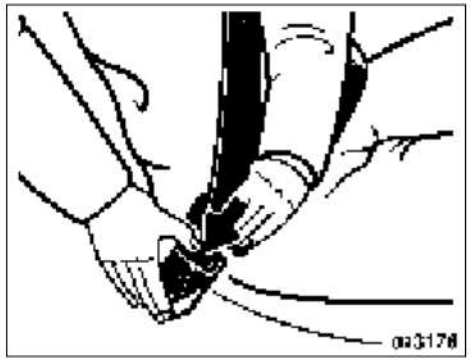



**Adjust the position of the lap and shoulder belts.**

Position the lap belt as low as possible on your hips—not on your waist, then adjust it to a snug fit by pulling the shoulder portion upward through the latch plate.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause serious injuries due to sliding under the lap belt during a collision or other unintended event. Keep the lap belt positioned as low on hips as possible.**
- **Do not place the shoulder belt under your arm.**



**To release the belt, press the buckle release button and allow the belt to retract.**

If the belt does not retract smoothly, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Then make sure it remains untwisted as it retracts.

## —Seat belt extender

If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Toyota dealer free of charge.

Please contact your local Toyota dealer to order the proper required length for the extender. Bring the heaviest coat you expect to wear for proper measurement and selection of length. Additional ordering information is available at your Toyota dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When using the seat belt extender, observe the following precautions. Failure to follow these instructions could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt restraint system in case of an accident, increasing the chance of personal injury.**

- **Remember that the extender provided for you may not be safe when used on a different vehicle, for another person, or at a different seating position than the one originally intended.**

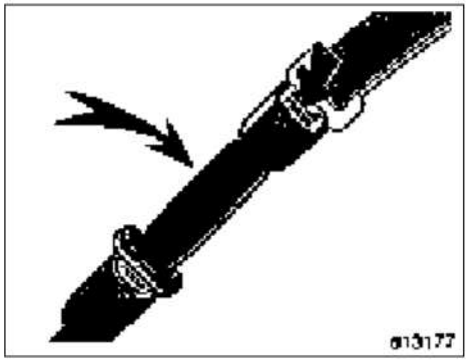


- **If the seat belt extender has been connected to the driver's seat belt buckle without wearing the seat belt when using the extender in the driver's seat, the SRS driver's airbag system will judge that the driver wears the seat belt even if not wearing it. In this case, the driver's airbag may not activate correctly, causing death or serious injury in the event of collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.**

◀Make sure the front passenger occupant classification indicator light indicates "ON" when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the indicator light indicates "OFF", disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, then reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the indicator light indicates "ON". If you use the seat belt extender while the indicator light indicates "OFF", the front passenger airbag and side airbag on the front passenger side may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of collision.

◀Be sure to wear the seat belt without the seat belt extender if you can fasten the seat belt without the extender.

◀Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of collision.



**To connect the extender to the seat belt, insert the tab into the seat belt buckle so that the "PRESS" signs on the buckle release buttons of the extender and the seat belt are both facing outward as shown.**

You will hear a click when the tab locks into the buckle.

When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt. This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and extender itself.

As far as the seat belt extender on the front passenger side is concerned, do not fail to disconnect the extender from the seat belt after the above operation in order to activate the front passenger airbag correctly when getting into the vehicle next time.

When not in use, remove the extender and store in the vehicle for future use.

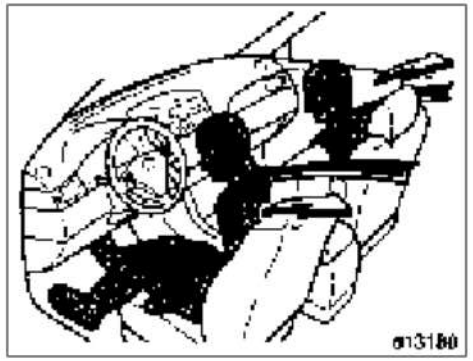
**⚠ CAUTION**

**◀After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder portions of the belt and the seat belt extender are not twisted.**

**◀Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent you from properly latching the tab and buckle.**

**◀If the seat belt does not function normally, immediately contact your Toyota dealer. Do not use the seat until the seat belt is fixed, because it cannot protect an adult occupant or your child from injury.**

## —Seat belt pretensioners

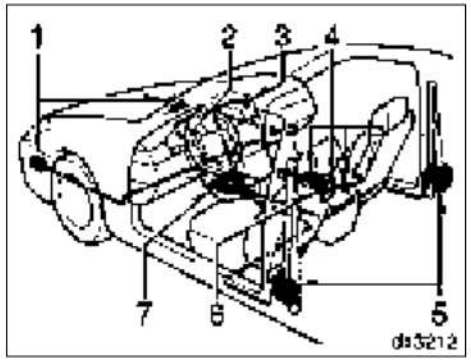


**The driver and front passenger seat belt pretensioners are designed to be activated in response to a severe frontal impact.**

When the sensor detects a severe frontal impact, the front seat belts are quickly drawn back by the retractors so that the belts snugly restrain the occupants.

The front passenger's seat belt pretensioner will not activate if no passenger is detected in the front passenger seat by the front passenger occupant classification system. However, the front passenger's seat belt pretensioner may activate if luggage is put on the seat, or the seat belt is buckled up regardless of the presence of an occupant in the seat. (As for the front passenger occupant classification system, see "—Front passenger occupant classification system" on page 81 in this Section.)

The seat belt pretensioners and SRS airbags may not operate together in all collisions.




The seat belt pretensioner system consists mainly of the following components and their locations are shown in the illustration.

1. Front airbag sensors
2. SRS warning light
3. Front passenger occupant classification indicator light
4. Front passenger occupant classification system (ECU and sensors)
5. Seat belt pretensioner assemblies
6. Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch
7. Airbag sensor assembly

The seat belt pretensioners are controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and airbag sensor.

When the seat belt pretensioners are activated, an operating noise may be heard and a small amount of non-toxic gas may be released. This does not indicate that a fire is occurring. This gas is normally harmless.

Once the seat belt pretensioners have been activated, the seat belt retractors remain locked.

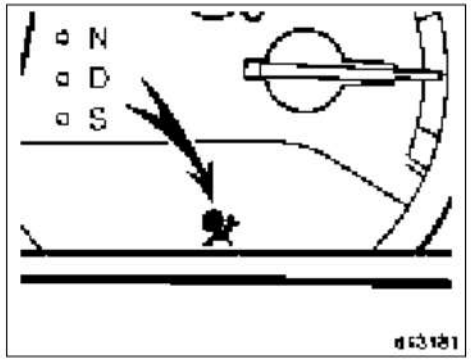
**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not modify, remove, strike or open the seat belt pretensioner assemblies, airbag sensor or surrounding area or wiring. Failure to follow these instructions may prevent the seat belt pretensioners from activating correctly, cause sudden operation of the system or disable the system, which could result in death or serious injury. Consult your Toyota dealer about any repair and modification.**

***NOTICE***

***Do not perform any of the following changes without consulting your Toyota dealer. Such changes can interfere with proper operation of the seat belt pretensioners in some cases.***

- ***Installation of electronic devices such as a mobile two-way radio, cassette tape player or compact disc player***
- ***Repairs on or near the front seat belt retractor assemblies***
- ***Modification of the suspension system***
- ***Modification of the front end structure***
- ***Attachment of a grille guard (bull bar, kangaroo bar, etc.), snowplow, winches or any other equipment to the front end***
- ***Repairs made on or near the front fenders, front end structure or console***

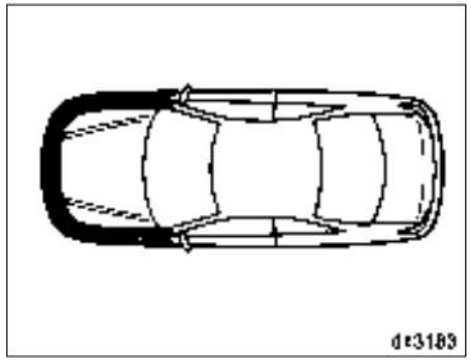



**This indicator comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. It goes off after about 6 seconds. This means the seat belt pretensioners are operating properly.**

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side airbag sensors, side and curtain shield airbag sensors, curtain shield airbag sensors, driver's seat position sensor, driver's seat belt buckle switch, front passenger occupant classification system and indicator light, front passenger's seat belt buckle switch, seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, warning light, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (For details, see "Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers" on page 131 in Section 1- 6.)

If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners. Contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

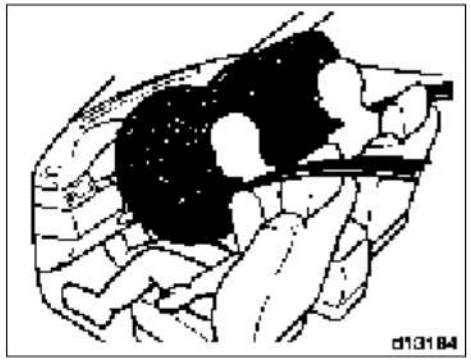
- When the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, the light does not come on or remains on for more than 6 seconds.
- The light comes on or flashes while driving.
- If any seat belt does not retract or cannot be pulled out due to a malfunction or activation of the relevant seat belt pretensioner.
- The seat belt pretensioner assembly or surrounding area has been damaged.



In the following cases, contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible:

- The front of the vehicle (shaded in the illustration) was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the seat belt pretensioners to operate.
- Either seat belt pretensioner assembly or surrounding area is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

## SRS airbags—
## —SRS driver airbag and front passenger airbag




**The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags are designed to provide further protection for the driver and front passenger in addition to the primary safety protection provided by the seat belts.**

In response to a severe frontal impact, the SRS front airbags work together with the seat belts to help reduce injury by inflating. The SRS front airbags help reduce injuries mainly to the driver's or front passenger's head or chest caused by hitting the vehicle interior.

The SRS front passenger airbag will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front passenger airbag may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is buckled up, regardless of the presence of an occupant in the seat. (As for the front passenger occupant classification system, see "—Front passenger occupant classification system" on page 81 in this Section.)

Always wear your seat belt properly.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**◀The SRS front airbag system is designed only as a supplement to the primary protection of the driver and front passenger seat belt systems. The driver and front passenger can be killed or seriously injured by the inflating airbags if they do not wear the available seat belts properly. During sudden braking just before a collision, an unrestrained driver or front passenger can move forward into direct contact with or close proximity to the airbag which may then deploy during the collision. To ensure maximum protection in an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. Wearing a seat belt properly during an accident reduces the chances of death or serious injury or being thrown out of the vehicle. For instructions and precautions concerning the seat belt system, see "Seat belts" on page 52 in this Section.**

**◀Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by the deploying airbags. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Toyota strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seat of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seat is the safest for infants and children. For instructions concerning the installation of a child restraint system, see “Child restraint” on page 85 in this Section.**

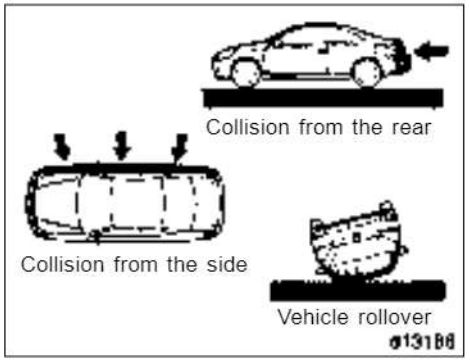
**The SRS front airbags are designed to deploy in severe (usually frontal) collisions where the magnitude and duration of the forward deceleration of the vehicle exceeds the designed threshold level.**

The SRS front airbags will deploy if the severity of the impact is above the designed threshold level, comparable to an approximate 25 km/h (15 mph) collision when the vehicle has the impact straight into a fixed barrier that does not move or deform.

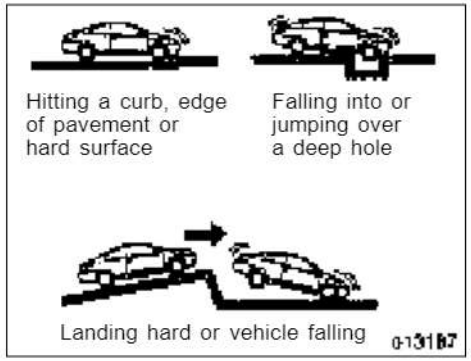
However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides”, or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).

It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the designed threshold level, the SRS front airbags and the seat belt pretensioners may not activate together.

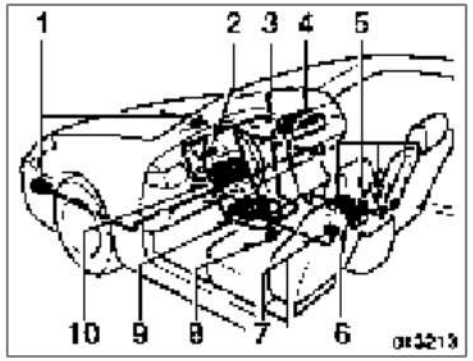
Always wear your seat belts properly.




**The SRS front airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.**




**The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.**




The SRS front airbag system consists mainly of the following components, and their locations are shown in the illustration.

1. Front airbag sensors
2. SRS warning light
3. Front passenger occupant classification indicator light
4. Airbag module for front passenger (airbag and inflator)
5. Front passenger occupant classification system (ECU and sensors)
6. Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch
7. Driver's seat belt buckle switch
8. Driver's seat position sensor
9. Airbag sensor assembly
10. Airbag module for driver (airbag and inflator)

The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and airbag sensor.

The front airbag sensors constantly monitor the forward deceleration of the vehicle. If an impact results in a forward deceleration beyond the designed threshold level, the system triggers the airbag inflators. At this time a chemical reaction in the inflators very quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the forward motion of the occupants. The front airbags then quickly deflate, so that there is no obstruction of the driver's vision should it be necessary to continue driving.

When the airbags inflate, they produce a loud noise and release some smoke and residue along with non-toxic gas. This does not indicate a fire. This smoke may remain inside the vehicle for some time, and may cause some minor irritation to the eyes, skin or breathing. Be sure to wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent any potential skin irritation with soap and water. If you can safely exit from the vehicle, you should do so immediately.

Deployment of the airbags happens in a fraction of a second, so the airbags must inflate with considerable force. While the system is designed to reduce serious injuries, primarily to the head and chest, it may also cause other, less severe injuries to the face, chest, arms and hands. These are usually in the nature of minor burns or abrasions and swelling, but the force of a deploying airbag can cause more serious injuries, especially if an occupant's hands, arms, chest or head is in close proximity to the airbag module at the time of deployment. This is why it is important for the occupant to: avoid placing any object or part of the body between the occupant and the airbag module; sit straight and well back into the seat; wear the available seat belt properly; and sit as far as possible from the airbag module, while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

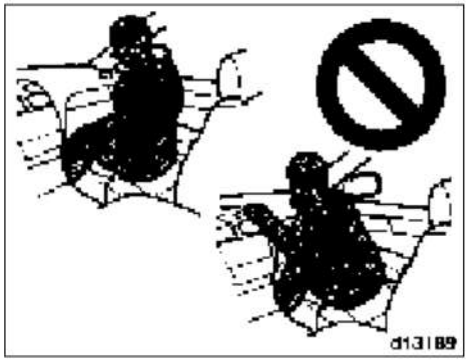
Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) may be hot for several minutes after deployment, so do not touch! The airbags inflate only once. The windshield may be damaged by absorbing some of the force of the inflating airbag.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**The driver or front passenger who is too close to the steering wheel or dashboard during airbag deployment can be killed or seriously injured. Toyota strongly recommends that:**

- **The driver sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel while still maintaining control of the vehicle.**
- **The front passenger sit as far back as possible from the dashboard.**
- **All vehicle occupants be properly restrained using the available seat belts.**

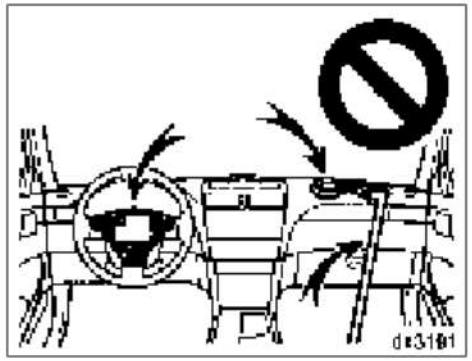
**For instructions and precautions concerning the seating position, see "—Front seat precautions" on page 44 in this Section.**




- **Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard when the vehicle is in use, since the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Anyone who is up against, or very close to, an airbag when it inflates, can be killed or seriously injured. Sit up straight and well back in the seat, and always use your seat belt properly.**



- Toyota strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seat of the vehicle and be properly restrained.
- Do not hold a child on your lap or in your arms. Use a child restraint system in the rear seat. For instructions concerning the installation of a child restraint system, see "Child restraint" on page 85 in this Section.



- Do not put anything or any part of your body on or in front of the dashboard or steering wheel pad that houses the front airbag system. They might restrict inflation or cause death or serious injury as they are projected rearward by the force of the deploying airbags. Likewise, the driver and front passenger should not hold objects in their arms or on their knees.

- Do not modify or remove any wiring. Do not modify, remove, strike or open any components such as the steering wheel pad, steering wheel, column cover, dashboard near the front passenger airbag, front passenger airbag cover, front passenger airbag or airbag sensor assembly. Doing so may prevent the front airbag system from activating correctly, cause sudden activation of the system or disable the system, which could result in death or serious injury.

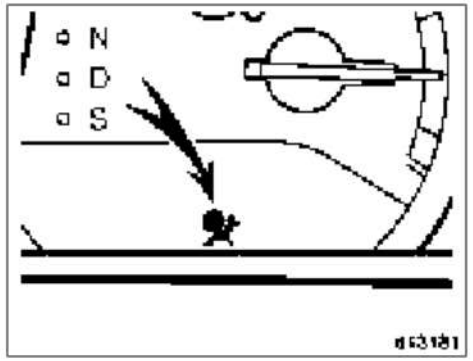
Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury. Consult your Toyota dealer about any repair and modification.

If you wish to modify your vehicle for a person with physical disability, consult your Toyota dealer. It may dangerously interfere with the **SRS** front airbags operation.

**NOTICE**

*Do not perform any of the following changes without consulting your Toyota dealer. Such changes can interfere with proper operation of the SRS front airbag system in some cases.*

- *Installation of electronic devices such as a mobile two-way radio, cassette tape player or compact disc player*
- *Modification of the suspension system*
- *Modification of the front end structure*
- *Attachment of a grille guard (bull bar, kangaroo bar, etc.), snowplow, winches or any other equipment to the front end*
- *Repairs made on or near the front fenders, front end structure, console, steering column, steering wheel, front passenger's seat or dashboard near the front passenger airbag*



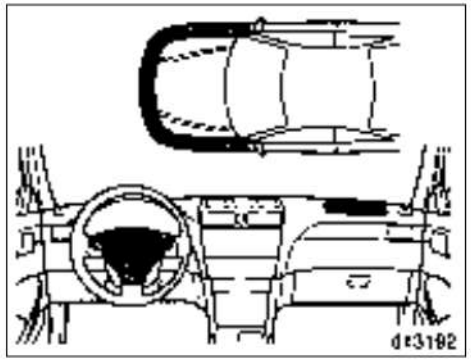

**This indicator comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. It goes off after about 6 seconds. This means the SRS front airbags are operating properly.**

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side airbag sensors, side and curtain shield airbag sensors, curtain shield airbag sensors, driver's seat position sensor, driver's seat belt buckle switch, front passenger occupant classification system and indicator light, front passenger's seat belt buckle switch, seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, warning light, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (For details, see "Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers" on page 131 in Section 1-6.)

If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners. Contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

- When the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, the light does not come on or remains on for more than 6 seconds.
- The light comes on or flashes while driving.

The SRS warning light will come on and front passenger occupant classification indicator light will indicate "OFF" if there is a malfunction in the front passenger occupant classification system.



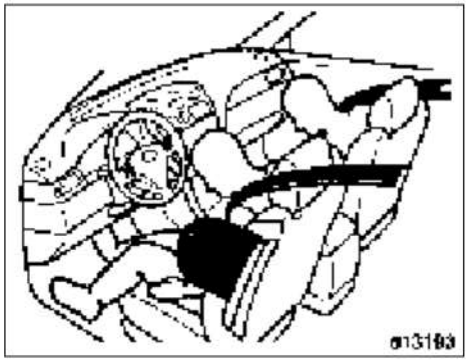
In the following cases, contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible:

- The SRS front airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle (shaded in the illustration) was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags to inflate.
- The pad section of the steering wheel or front passenger airbag cover (shaded in the illustration) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

**NOTICE**

***Do not disconnect the battery cables before contacting your Toyota dealer.***

## —SRS side airbags



**The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) side airbags are designed to provide further protection for the driver and front passenger in addition to the primary safety protection provided by the seat belts.**

In response to a severe side impact, the SRS side airbags work together with the seat belts to help reduce injury by inflating. The SRS side airbags help to reduce injuries mainly to the driver's or front passenger's chest.

The SRS side airbag on the passenger seat will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the side airbag on the passenger seat may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is buckled up regardless of the presence of the occupant in the seat. (As for the front passenger occupant classification system, see "—Front passenger occupant classification system" on page 81 in this Section.)

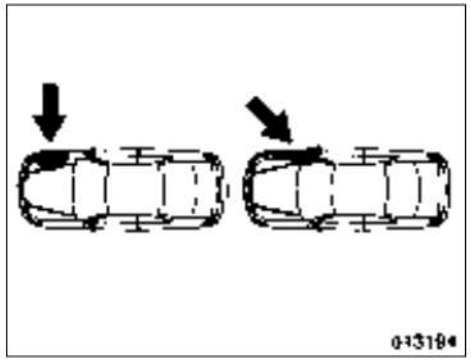
Always wear your seat belt properly.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**◀The SRS side airbag system is designed only as a supplement to the primary protection of the driver and front passenger seat belt systems. To ensure maximum protection in an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. Wearing a seat belt properly during an accident reduces the chances of death or serious injury or being thrown out of the vehicle. For instructions and precautions concerning the seat belt system, see "Seat belts" on page 52 in this Section.**

**◀Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by the deploying airbags. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Toyota strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are the safest for infants and children. For instructions concerning the installation of a child restraint system, see "Child restraint" on page 85 in this Section.**

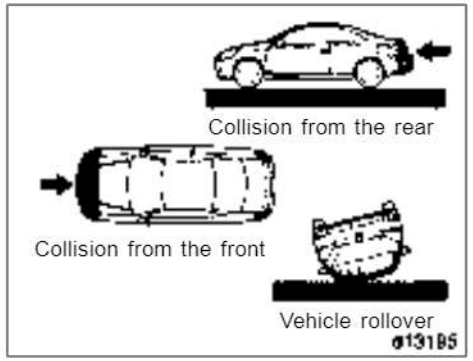
**◀Do not allow anyone to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the front door or the area of the seat from which the SRS side airbag deploys even if he/she is a child seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbag inflates, and the impact of the deploying airbag could cause death or serious injury to the occupant.**



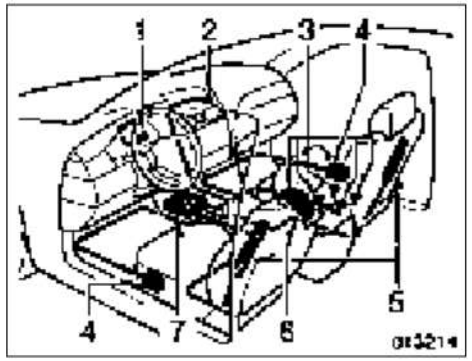
**The SRS side airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment as shown in the illustration.**

The SRS side airbags are designed to inflate when the passenger compartment area suffers a severe impact from the side.

Always wear your seat belts properly.




**The SRS side airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a front or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.**




The SRS side airbag system consists mainly of the following components, and their locations are shown in the illustration.

1. SRS warning light
2. Front passenger occupant classification indicator light
3. Front passenger occupant classification system (ECU and sensors)
4. Side airbag sensors
5. Side airbag modules (airbag and inflator)
6. Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch
7. Airbag sensor assembly

The SRS side airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and airbag sensor.

In a severe side impact, the side airbag sensor triggers the side airbag inflators. At this time a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the lateral motion of the occupants.

When the airbags inflate, they produce a fairly loud noise and release some smoke and residue along with non-toxic gas. This does not indicate a fire. This smoke may remain inside the vehicle for some time, and may cause some minor irritation to the eyes, skin or breathing. Be sure to wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent any potential skin irritation with soap and water. If you can safely exit from the vehicle, you should do so immediately.

Deployment of the airbags happens in a fraction of a second, so the airbags must inflate with considerable force. While the system is designed to reduce serious injuries, it may also cause minor burns or abrasions and swelling.

Front seats may be hot for several minutes, but the airbags themselves will not be hot. The airbags are designed to inflate only once.

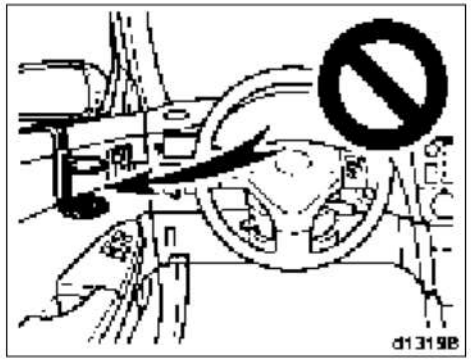
**⚠ CAUTION**

**SRS side airbags inflate with considerable force. To reduce the possibility of death or serious injury when they inflate, the driver and front passenger must:**

- **Wear their seat belts properly.**
- **Remain properly seated with their backs upright and against the seats at all times.**




- **Do not allow anyone to lean against the front door when the vehicle is in use, since the side airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, he/she may be killed or be seriously injured. Special care should be taken especially when you have a small child in the vehicle.**
- **Sit up straight and well back in the seat, distributing your weight evenly in the seat. Do not apply excessive weight to the outer side of the seats on vehicles with side airbags.**




◀Do not attach a cup holder or any other device or object on or around the door. When the side airbag inflates, the cup holder or any other device or object will be thrown with great force or the side airbag may not activate correctly, resulting in death or serious injury. Likewise, the driver and front passenger should not hold objects in their arms or on their knees.

◀Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the side airbags inflate. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, causing death or serious injury.

◀Do not modify or replace the seats or upholstery of the seats with side airbags. Such changes may prevent the side airbag system from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.

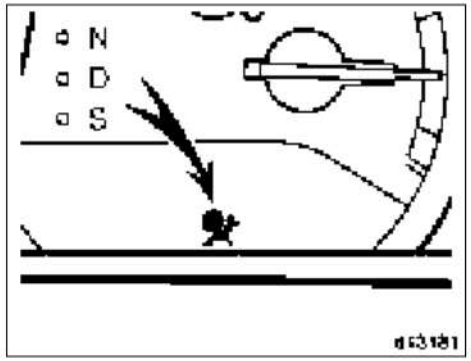
Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury. Consult your Toyota dealer about any repair and modification.

If you wish to modify your vehicle for a person with physical disability, consult your Toyota dealer. It may dangerously interfere with the SRS side airbags operation.

***NOTICE***

*Do not perform any of the following changes without consulting your Toyota dealer. Such changes can interfere with proper operation of the SRS side airbag system in some cases.*

- *Installation of electronic devices such as a mobile two-way radio, cassette tape player or compact disc player*
- *Modification of the suspension system*
- *Modification of the side structure of the passenger compartment*
- *Repairs made on or near the console or front seat*



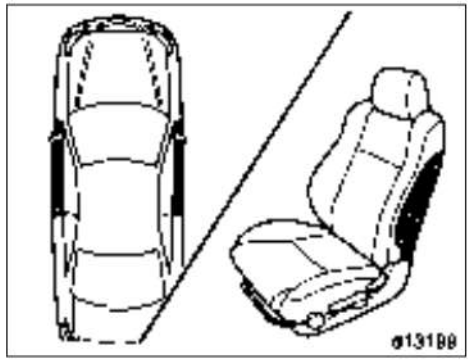

**This indicator comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. It goes off after about 6 seconds. This means the SRS side airbags are operating properly.**

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side airbag sensors, driver's seat position sensor, driver's seat belt buckle switch, front passenger occupant classification system and indicator light, front passenger's seat belt buckle switch, seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, warning light, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (For details, see "Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers" on page 131 in Section 1-6.)

If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners. Contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

- When the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, the light does not come on or remains on for more than 6 seconds.
- The light comes on or flashes while driving.

The SRS warning light will come on and front passenger occupant classification indicator light will indicate "OFF" if there is a malfunction in the front passenger occupant classification system.



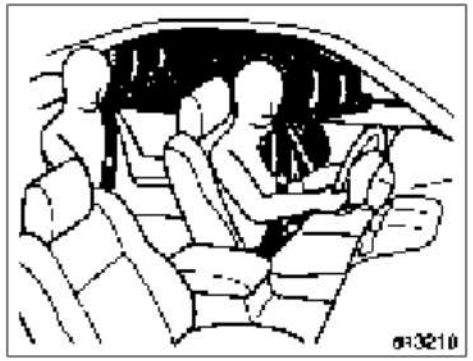
In the following cases, contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible:

- Any of the SRS side airbags have been inflated.
- The portion of the doors (shaded in the illustration) was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags to inflate.
- The surface of the seats with the SRS side airbag (shaded in the illustration) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

## —SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags

**NOTICE**

***Do not disconnect the battery cables before contacting your Toyota dealer.***



**The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) side airbags and curtain shield airbags are designed to provide further protection for the driver, front passenger and rear outside passengers in addition to the primary safety protection provided by the seat belts.**

In response to a severe side impact, the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags work with the seat belts to help reduce injury by inflating. The SRS side airbags help reduce injuries mainly to the driver's or front passenger's chest and the SRS curtain shield airbags help reduce injuries mainly to the driver's, front passenger's or rear outside passenger's head.

The SRS side airbag on the passenger seat will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the side airbag on the passenger seat may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is buckled up regardless of the presence of the occupant in the seat. (As for the front passenger occupant classification system, see "—Front passenger occupant classification system" on page 81 in this Section.)

The SRS curtain shield airbag on the passenger side are activated even with no passenger in the front seat or rear outside seat.

The SRS curtain shield airbags may activate even when the side airbags are not activated.

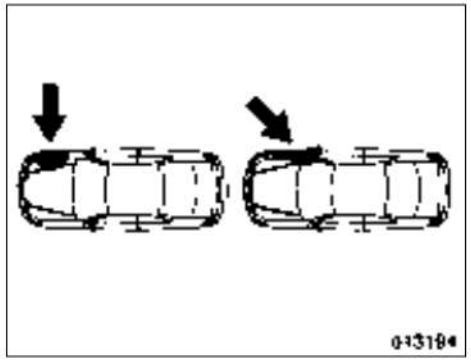
Always wear your seat belt properly.

**⚠ CAUTION**

◀The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system is designed only as a supplement to the primary protection of the driver, front passenger and rear outside passenger seat belt systems. To ensure maximum protection in an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. Wearing a seat belt properly during an accident reduces the chances of death or serious injury or being thrown out of the vehicle. For instructions and precautions concerning the seat belt system, see "Seat belts" on page 52 in this Section.

◀Do not allow anyone to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, pillar, rear pillar or roof side rail from which the SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag deploy even if he/she is a child seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate, and the impact of the deploying airbag could cause death or serious injury to the occupant.

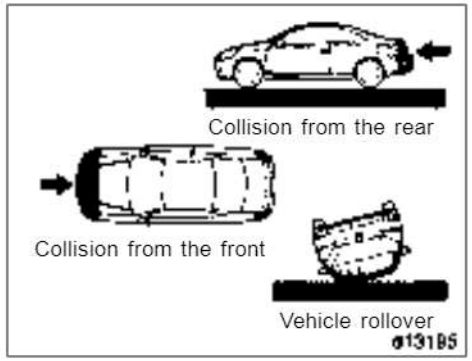
◀Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by the deploying airbags. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Toyota strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are the safest for infants and children. For instructions concerning the installation of a child restraint system, see "Child restraint" on page 85 in this Section.



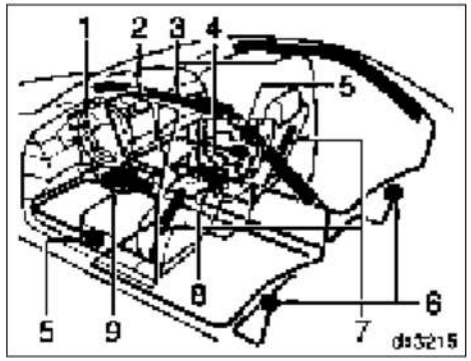
**The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment as shown in the illustration.**

The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are designed to inflate when the passenger compartment area suffers a severe impact from the side.

Always wear your seat belts properly.




**The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a front or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.**




The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system consists mainly of the following components, and their locations are shown in the illustration.

1. SRS warning light
2. Front passenger occupant classification indicator light
3. Curtain shield airbag modules (airbag and inflator)
4. Front passenger occupant classification system (ECU and sensors)
5. Side and curtain shield airbag sensors
6. Curtain shield airbag sensors
7. Side airbag modules (airbag and inflator)

8. Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch
9. Airbag sensor assembly

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and airbag sensor.

In a severe side impact, the side and curtain shield airbag sensor and/or the curtain shield airbag sensor trigger(s) the side airbag inflators and/or the curtain shield airbag inflators. At this time a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the lateral motion of the occupants.

When the airbags inflate, they produce a fairly loud noise and release some smoke and residue along with non-toxic gas. This does not indicate a fire. This smoke may remain inside the vehicle for some time, and may cause some minor irritation to the eyes, skin or breathing. Be sure to wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent any potential skin irritation with soap and water. If you can safely exit from the vehicle, you should do so immediately.

Deployment of the airbags happens in a fraction of a second, so the airbags must inflate with considerable force. While the system is designed to reduce serious injuries, it may also cause minor burns or abrasions and swelling.

Front seats as well as parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rail may be hot for several minutes, but the airbags themselves will not be hot. The airbags are designed to inflate only once.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate with considerable force. To reduce the possibility of death or serious injury when they inflate, the driver, front passenger and rear outside passengers must:**

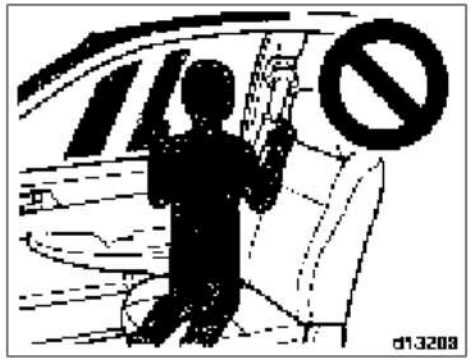
- **Wear their seat belts properly.**
- **Remain properly seated with their backs upright and against the seats at all times.**



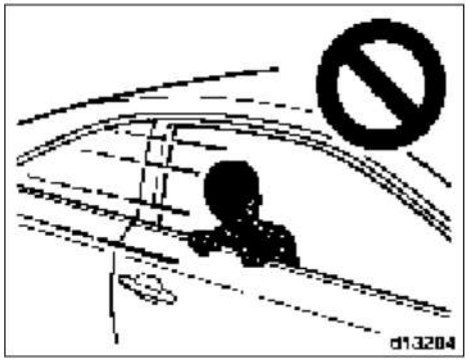

- **Do not allow anyone to lean against the door when the vehicle is in use, since the side airbag and curtain shield airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, he/she may be killed or seriously injured. Special care should be taken especially when you have a small child in the vehicle.**
- **Sit up straight and well back in the seat, distributing your weight evenly in the seat. Do not apply excessive weight to the outer side of the seats with a side airbag, and to the front pillar, rear pillar and roof side rail with a curtain shield airbag.**



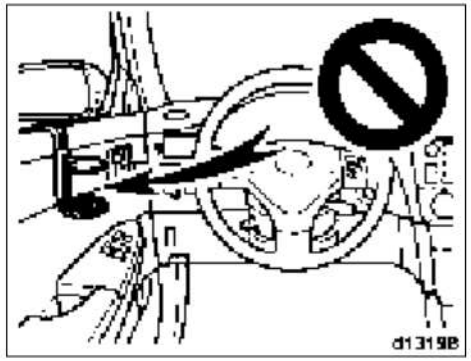

◀Do not allow anyone to get his/her head closer to the area where the side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate, since these airbags could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, he/she may be killed or seriously injured. Special care should be taken especially when you have a small child in the vehicle.



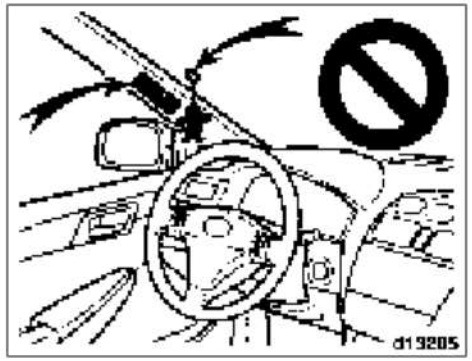

◀Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat, facing the passenger's side door, since the side airbag and curtain shield airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, he/she may be killed or seriously injured. Special care should be taken especially when you have a small child in the vehicle.




◀Do not allow anyone to get his/her head or hands out of windows since the curtain shield airbags could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, he/she may be killed or seriously injured. Special care should be taken especially when you have a small child in the vehicle.




- Do not attach a cup holder or any other device or object on or around the door. When the side airbag inflates, the cup holder or any other device or object will be thrown with great force or the side airbag may not activate correctly, resulting in death or serious injury. Likewise, the driver and front passenger should not hold objects in their arms or on their knees.




- Do not attach a microphone or any other device or object around the area where the curtain shield airbag activates such as on the windshield glass, side door glass, front and rear pillars, roof side rail and assist grips. When the curtain shield airbag inflates, the microphone or other device or object will be thrown away with great force or the curtain shield airbag may not activate correctly, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not hook a hanger, heavy or sharp pointed objects on the coat hook. If the curtain shield airbag inflates, those items will be thrown away with great force or the curtain shield airbag may not activate correctly, resulting in death or serious injury. When you hang clothes, hang them on the coat hook directly.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the side airbags inflate. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, causing death or serious injury.
- Do not modify or replace the seats or upholstery of the seats with side airbags. Such changes may prevent the side airbag system from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.

◀Do not disassemble or repair the front and rear pillars and roof side rails containing the curtain shield airbags. Such changes may disable the system or cause the curtain shield airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.

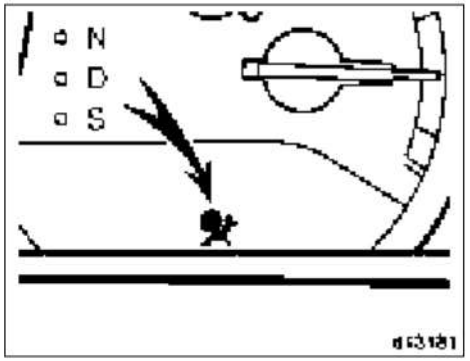
Failure to follow these instructions can result in death or serious injury. Consult your Toyota dealer about any repair and modification.

If you wish to modify your vehicle for a person with physical disability, consult your Toyota dealer. It may dangerously interfere with the **SRS** side airbags and curtain shield airbags operation.

***NOTICE***

*Do not perform any of the following changes without consulting your Toyota dealer. Such changes can interfere with proper operation of the **SRS** side airbag and curtain shield airbag system in some cases.*

- *Installation of electronic devices such as a mobile two-way radio, cassette tape player or compact disc player*
- *Modification of the suspension system*
- *Modification of the side structure of the passenger compartment*
- *Repairs made on or near the console or front seat*



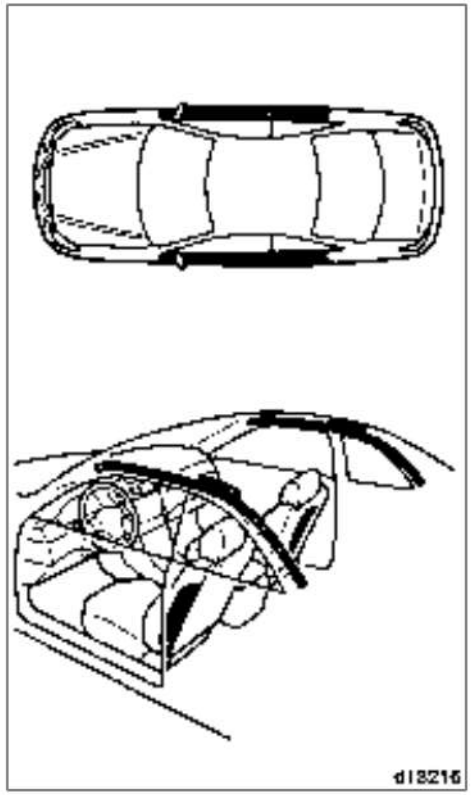

This indicator comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "**ON**" position. It goes off after about 6 seconds. This means the **SRS** side airbags and curtain shield airbags are operating properly.

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side and curtain shield airbag sensors, curtain shield airbag sensors, driver's seat position sensor, driver's seat belt buckle switch, front passenger occupant classification system and indicator light, front passenger's seat belt buckle switch, seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, warning light, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (For details, see "Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers" on page 131 in Section 1-6.)

If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners. Contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

- ◀When the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, the light does not come on or remains on for more than 6 seconds.
- ◀The light comes on or flashes while driving.

The SRS warning light will come on and front passenger occupant classification indicator light will indicate "OFF" if there is a malfunction in the front passenger occupant classification system.




In the following cases, contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible:

- ◀Any of the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags have been inflated.
- ◀The portion of the doors (shaded in the illustration) was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.
- ◀The surface of the seats with the SRS side airbag (shaded in the illustration) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.
- ◀The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside (shaded in the illustration) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

**NOTICE**

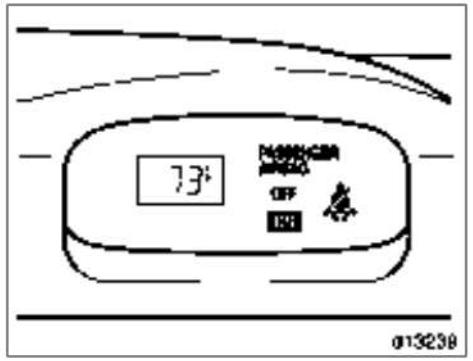
***Do not disconnect the battery cables before contacting your Toyota dealer.***

## —Front passenger occupant classification system

**Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions 1—4 in the table on page 83 and based on these conditions activates or deactivates front passenger airbags. The system monitors the weight and load on the front passenger seat, and the seat belt buckle switch to determine conditions 1—4.**

**In order for the system to detect the conditions correctly, do not do any of the following:**

- ◀Apply a heavy load to the front passenger seat or equipment (e.g. seatback pocket).
- ◀Attach a commercial seatback table, etc. to the front passenger seat seatback.
- ◀Put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the seatback from the rear passenger seat.




**The front passenger occupant classification indicator light indicates the actuation of the front passenger airbag, side airbag on the front passenger seat and front passenger's seat belt pretensioner.**

The indicator light will indicate "OFF" when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position with the condition 2 in the table shown below.

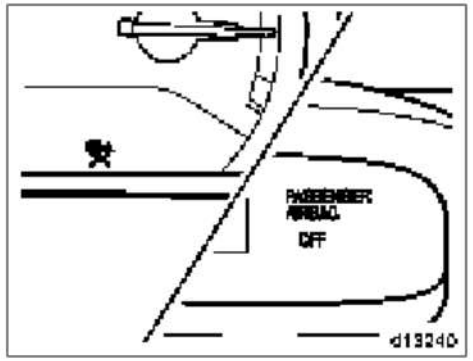
If the front passenger occupant classification system determines that a person of adult size sits in the front passenger seat but the "OFF" indicator is illuminated, one of the following is likely to have occurred:

- ◀A rear passenger lifts the front passenger seat cushion with their legs.
- ◀Objects are placed under the front passenger seat.
- ◀The front passenger seatback is in contact with the rear seat.

To ensure the system correctly detects an adult sitting in the front passenger seat, make sure the above do not occur.

Make sure that the "ON" indicator is illuminated when an adult is seated in the front passenger seat. If the "OFF" indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the "OFF" indicator still remains illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the rear seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.

The front passenger occupant classification indicator light will indicate "ON" and "OFF" when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. After about four seconds, it will go off. After that, the front passenger occupant classification system operates and judges whether to indicate "ON" or "OFF".




The SRS warning light will come on and front passenger occupant classification indicator light will indicate "OFF" if there is a malfunction in the front passenger occupant classification system.

**Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system**

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Condition detected by the front passenger occupant classification system</td><td colspan="3">Indicator/warning light</td><td colspan="4">Devices</td></tr>
<tr><td>Front passenger occupant classification indicator light</td><td>SRS warning light</td><td>Front passenger's seat belt reminder light</td><td>Front passenger airbag</td><td>Side airbag on the front passenger seat</td><td>Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side</td><td>Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner</td></tr>
<tr><td>1. Adult*1</td><td>"ON"</td><td>Off</td><td>Flashing*4</td><td colspan="4">Activated</td></tr>
<tr><td>2. Child*2 or child restraint system*3</td><td>"OFF"</td><td>Off</td><td>Flashing*4</td><td colspan="2">Deactivated</td><td rowspan="3">Activated</td><td>Activated</td></tr>
<tr><td>3. Unoccupied</td><td>Not illuminated</td><td>Off</td><td>Off</td><td colspan="2">Deactivated</td><td>Deactivated</td></tr>
<tr><td>4. There is a malfunction in the system</td><td>"OFF"</td><td>On</td><td>Off</td><td colspan="2">Deactivated</td><td>Activated</td></tr>
</table>

*1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.

*2: When a larger child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique or posture.

*3: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A forward-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (See "Child restraint" on page 85 in this Section as for installing the child restraint system.)

*4: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.

**⚠ CAUTION**

To avoid potential death or serious injury when the front passenger occupant classification system does not detect the conditions correctly, observe the following.

- Make sure the front passenger occupant classification indicator light indicates "ON" when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the indicator light indicates "OFF", disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, then reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the indicator light indicates "ON". If you use the seat belt extender while the indicator light indicates "OFF", the front passenger airbag and side airbag on the front passenger side may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of collision.
- Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a rear seat. This may cause the "OFF" indicator to be illuminated, which indicates that the passenger's airbags will not deploy in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the rear seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touches the rear seat.

  Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.
- If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the occupant classification indicator light should indicate "ON". If the "OFF" indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the "OFF" indicator still remains illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the rear seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.
- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Make sure the front passenger's seat belt tab has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.
- Do not apply a heavy load to the front seat or equipment (e.g. seatback pocket).
- Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the rear passenger seat.
- Do not let a rear passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.
- Child restraint systems installed on the rear seat should not contact the front seatbacks.

◀When it is unavoidable to install the forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (As for the installation order, see "—Installation with seat belt" on page 88 in this Section.)

◀Do not remove the front seats.

◀Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction of the detection system. In this case, contact your Toyota dealer immediately.

The front passenger occupant classification indicator light may indicate "ON" (the front passenger airbag and side airbag on the front passenger seat may deploy) even if observing the above cautions, when a child sits in, or a forward-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat. Refer to all the cautions in "SRS airbags" on page 61 and "Child restraint" on page 85 in this Section.

## Child restraint— —Child restraint precautions

**Toyota strongly urges the use of appropriate child restraint systems for children.**

The laws of all 50 states in the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of a child restraint system.

Your vehicle conforms to SAEJ1819.

If a child is too large for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and must be restrained using the vehicle's seat belt. See "Seat belts" on page 52 in this Section for details.

**⚠ CAUTION**

◀For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.

◀Toyota strongly urges use of a proper child restraint system which conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.

◀Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the front passenger occupant classification indicator light indicates "OFF". In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.

◀A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible even if the front passenger occupant classification indicator light indicates "OFF", because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.

◀Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillar or roof side rail from which the side airbags or curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.

◀Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of collision.

◀Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

## —Child restraint system

**A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt. You must carefully consult the manufacturer's instructions which accompany the child restraint system.**

To provide proper restraint, use a child restraint system following the manufacturer's instructions about the appropriate age and size of the child for the child restraint system.

Install the child restraint system correctly following the instructions provided by its manufacturer. General directions are also provided under the following illustrations.

The child restraint system should be installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.

When not using the child restraint system, keep it secured with the seat belt or place it in the trunk or somewhere other than the passenger compartment. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

## —Types of child restraint system

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types depending on the child's age and size.

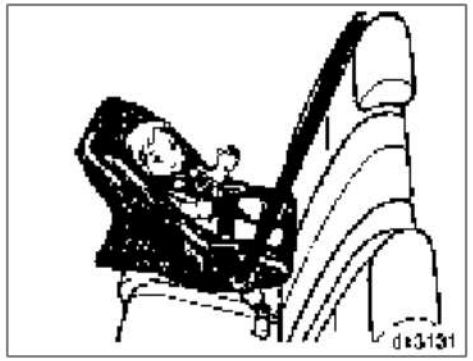
(A) Infant seat
(B) Convertible seat
(C) Booster seat

Install the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.

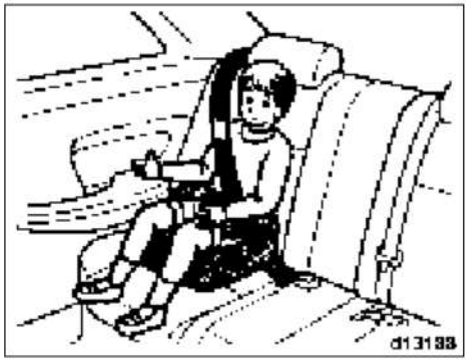
Your vehicle has anchor brackets for securing the top strap of a child restraint system.

For instructions about how to use the anchor bracket, see "—Using a top strap" on page 98 (for coupe) and 100 (for convertible) in this Section.

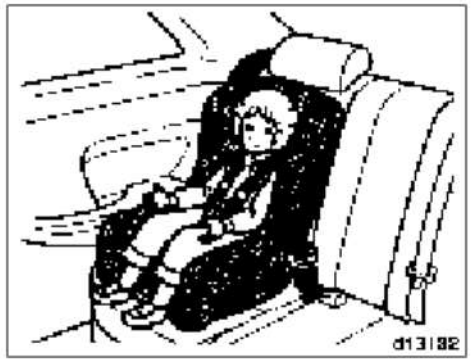
The child restraint lower anchorages approved for your vehicle may also be used. See "—Installation with child restraint lower anchorages" on page 102 (for coupe) and 103 (for convertible) in this Section.




**(A) Infant seat**

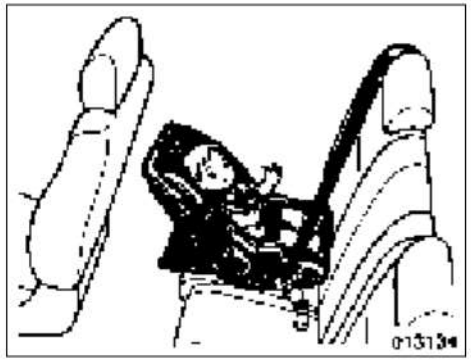



**(C) Booster seat**




**(B) Convertible seat**

—Installation with seat belt



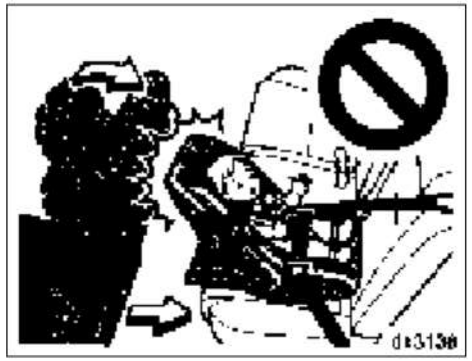
(A) INFANT SEAT INSTALLATION

An infant seat must be used in rear-facing position only.



**⚠ CAUTION**

◀Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the front passenger occupant classification indicator light indicates "OFF". In the event of an accident, the impact of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag could cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.



◀Do not install a child restraint system on the rear seat if it interferes with the lock mechanism of the front seats. Otherwise, the child or front seat occupant(s) may be killed or seriously injured in case of sudden braking or a collision.

◀If the driver's seat position does not allow sufficient space for safe installation, install the child restraint system on the rear right seat. Child restraint system installed on the rear seat should not contact the front seatbacks.



1. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the infant seat following the instructions provided by its manufacturer and insert the tab into the buckle taking care not to twist the belt. Keep the lap portion of the belt tight.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder portions of the belt are not twisted.**
- **Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent your child from properly latching the tab and buckle.**
- **If the seat belt does not function normally, it cannot protect your child from death or serious injury. Contact your Toyota dealer immediately. Do not install the child restraint system on the seat until the seat belt is fixed.**

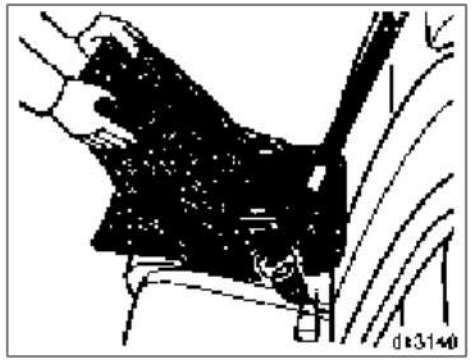


2. Fully extend the shoulder belt to put it in the lock mode. When the belt is then retracted even slightly, it cannot be extended.

To hold the infant seat securely, make sure the belt is in the lock mode before letting the belt retract.

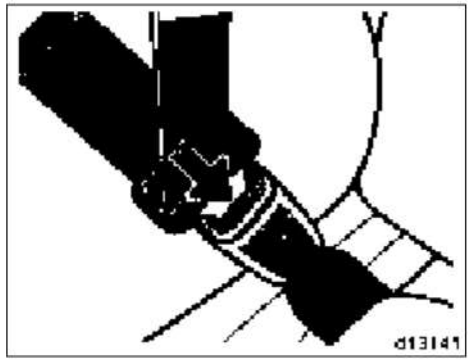


3. While pressing the infant seat firmly against the seat cushion and seatback, let the shoulder belt retract as far as it will go to hold the infant seat securely.

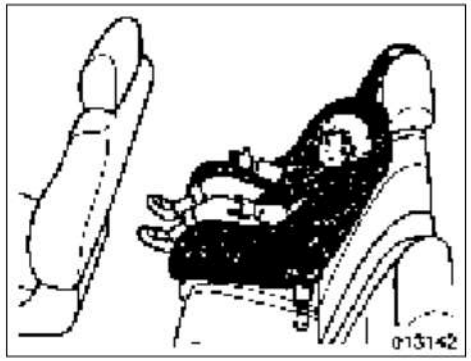


**⚠ CAUTION**

**Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.**



4. To remove the infant seat, press the buckle release button and allow the belt to retract completely. The belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or older child passenger.



**(B) CONVERTIBLE SEAT INSTALLATION**

**A convertible seat must be used in forward-facing or rear-facing position depending on the age and size of the child. When installing, follow the manufacturer's instructions about the applicable age and size of the child as well as directions for installing the convertible seat.**

Install the convertible seat on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. In order to activate the occupant classification system correctly, install the forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the following order:

1. Turn the ignition key to the "ON" position.
2. Move the front passenger seat to the rearward position.
3. Put the convertible seat on the front passenger seat without putting your weight on the front passenger seat.
4. Insert the seat belt tab into the seat belt buckle.
5. Fully extend the shoulder belt to put it in the lock mode. When the belt is then retracted even slightly, it cannot be extended. To hold the seat securely, make sure the belt is in the lock mode before letting the belt retract.
6. While pressing the convertible seat firmly against the seat cushion and seatback, let the shoulder belt retract as far as it will go to hold the convertible seat securely.

**⚠ CAUTION**

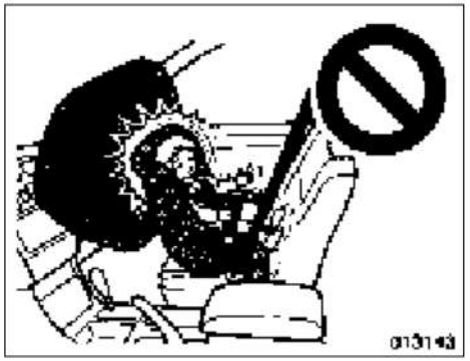
**Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.**

7. Put a child on the convertible seat and secure the child, complying with the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

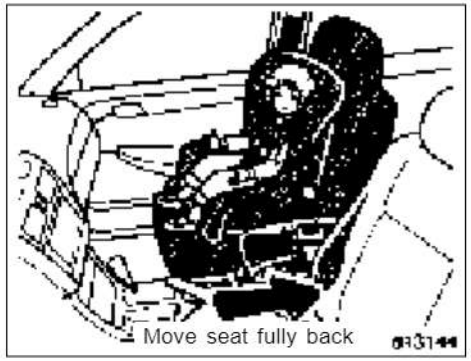
The occupant classification indicator light should indicate "OFF" when the ignition key is "ON" and the child is in the child restraint system after following these procedures. The "OFF" indicator indicates the SRS front passenger airbag and side airbag on the passenger side will not deploy. If the indicator light indicates "ON", remove the child restraint system and reinstall it with the ignition key in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position. If the indicator light still indicates "ON" when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, then the SRS front passenger airbag and side airbag on the passenger side may deploy in an accident. Do not drive the vehicle in this condition. Remove the child restraint system and contact your Toyota dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**◀Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A forward-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when unavoidable. If you must install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat, put the seat in its most rearward position, and install the forward-facing child restraint system in the proper order. Otherwise, the front passenger occupant classification system can not detect the presence of the child restraint system and the front passenger airbag and side airbag on the front passenger seat could deploy.**



**◀Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the front passenger occupant classification indicator light indicates "OFF". In the event of an accident, the impact of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag could cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.**




◀A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible even if the front passenger occupant classification indicator light indicates "**OFF**", because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.

◀Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillar or roof side rail from which the side airbags or curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



◀Do not install a child restraint system on the rear seat if it interferes with the lock mechanism of the front seats. Otherwise, the child or front seat occupant(s) may be killed or seriously injured in case of sudden braking or a collision.

◀If the driver's seat position does not allow sufficient space for safe installation, install the child restraint system on the rear right seat. Child restraint system installed on the rear seat should not contact the front seatbacks.




1. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the convertible seat following the instructions provided by its manufacturer and insert the tab into the buckle taking care not to twist the belt. Keep the lap portion of the belt tight.

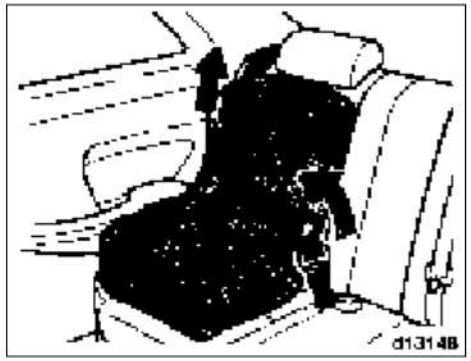
**⚠ CAUTION**

- **After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder portions of the belt are not twisted.**
- **Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent your child from properly latching the tab and buckle.**
- **If the seat belt does not function normally, it cannot protect your child from death or serious injury. Contact your Toyota dealer immediately. Do not install the child restraint system on the seat until the seat belt is fixed.**

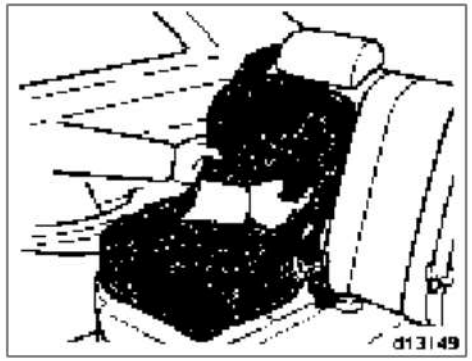



2. Fully extend the shoulder belt to put it in the lock mode. When the belt is then retracted even slightly, it cannot be extended.

To hold the convertible seat securely, make sure the belt is in the lock mode before letting the belt retract.

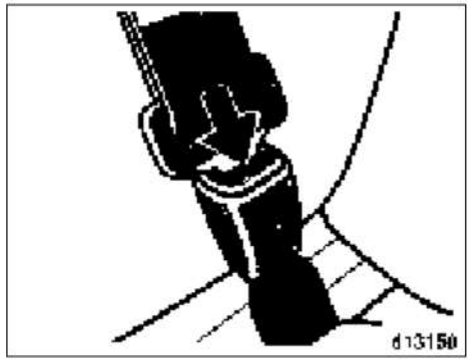



3. While pressing the convertible seat firmly against the seat cushion and seatback, let the shoulder belt retract as far as it will go to hold the convertible seat securely.

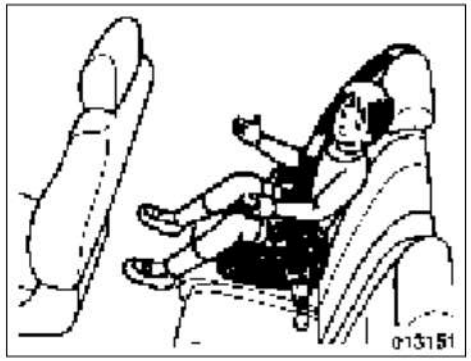



**⚠ CAUTION**

**Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.**

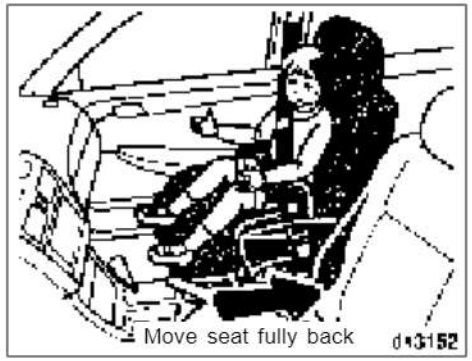



4. To remove the convertible seat, press the buckle release button and allow the belt to retract completely. The belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or older child passenger.



(C) BOOSTER SEAT INSTALLATION

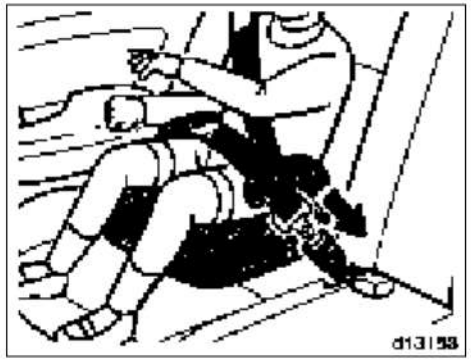
A booster seat must be used in forward-facing position only.




**⚠ CAUTION**

◀A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible even if the front passenger occupant classification indicator light indicates "OFF", because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.

◀Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillar or roof side rail from which the side airbags or curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbag and curtain shield airbag inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.




1. Sit the child on a booster seat. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the booster seat and across the child following the instructions provided by its manufacturer and insert the tab into the buckle taking care not to twist the belt.

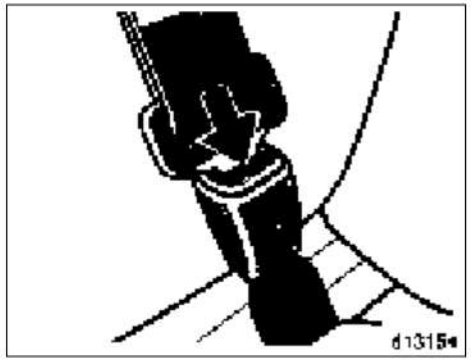
Make sure the shoulder belt is correctly across the child's shoulder and that the lap belt is positioned as low as possible on the child's hips. See "Seat belts" on page 52 in this Section for details.

**⚠ CAUTION**

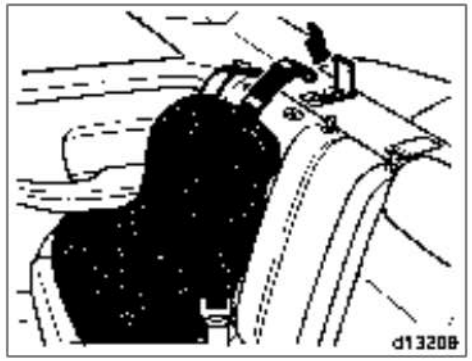
- **Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from child's neck, but not falling off child's shoulder. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured in case of sudden braking or a collision.**
- **Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause death or serious injuries due to sliding under the lap belt during a collision or other unintended event. Keep the lap belt positioned as low on a child's hips as possible.**
- **For child's safety, do not place the shoulder belt under child's arm.**
- **After inserting the tab, make sure the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder portions of the belt are not twisted.**
- **Do not insert coins, clips, etc. in the buckle as this may prevent your child from properly latching the tab and buckle.**

- **If the seat belt does not function normally, it cannot protect your child from death or serious injury. Contact your Toyota dealer immediately. Do not install the child restraint system on the seat until the seat belt is fixed.**

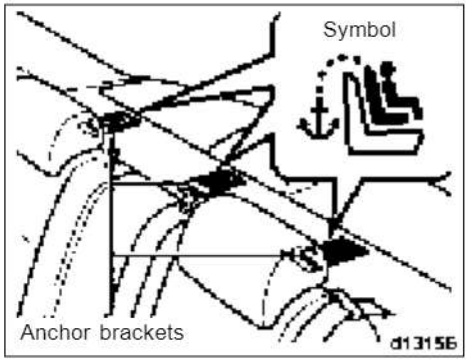
## —Using a top strap (coupe)




2. To remove the booster seat, press the buckle release button and allow the belt to retract.



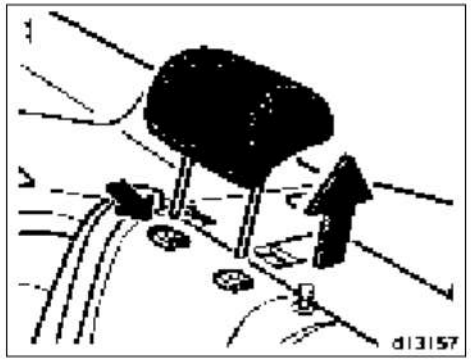

**Follow the procedure below for a child restraint system that requires the use of a top strap.**




Use the anchor bracket on the package tray behind the rear seat to attach the top strap.

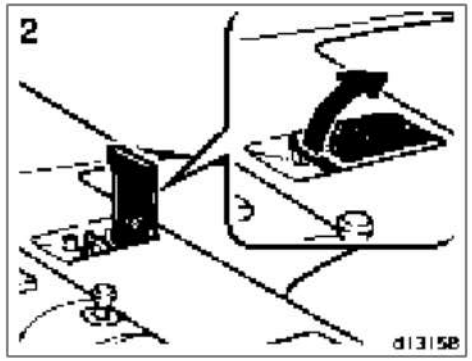
Anchor brackets are installed for each rear seating position.

This symbol indicates the location of the anchor brackets.

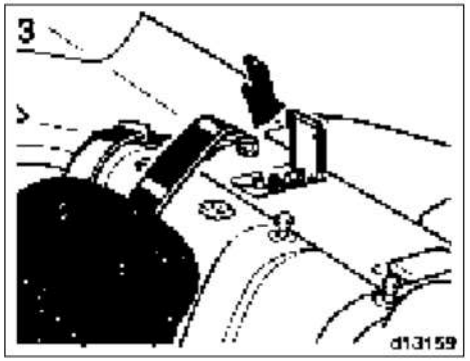



**TO USE THE ANCHOR BRACKET:**

1. **Outside anchor brackets only— Remove the head restraint.**




2. **Open the lid of the anchor bracket.**



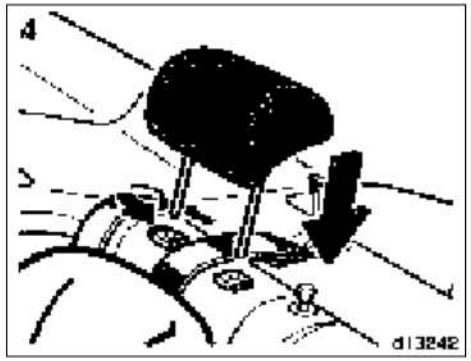

3. **Securely fasten the child restraint system with the seat belt.**

   **Latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.**

For instructions to install the child restraint system, see "Child restraint" on page 85 in this Section.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Make sure the top strap is securely latched, and check that the child restraint system is secure by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.**

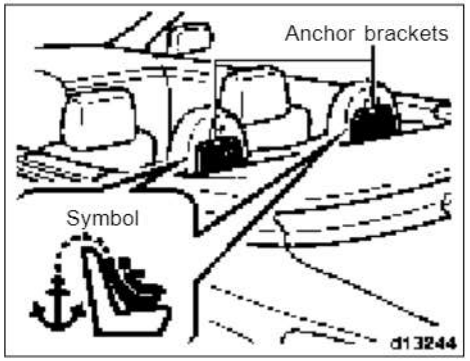



**4. Outside anchor brackets only—Replace the head restraint.**

**—Using a top strap (convertible)**



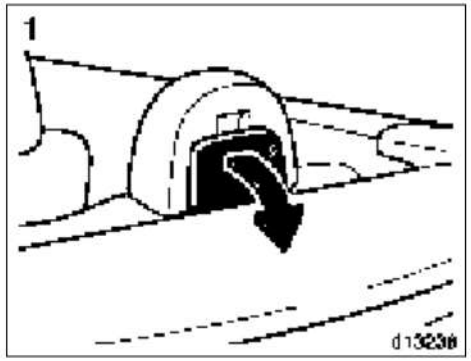

**Follow the procedure below for a child restraint system that requires the use of a top strap.**




Use the anchor bracket on the back of the rear seat head restraint to attach the top strap.

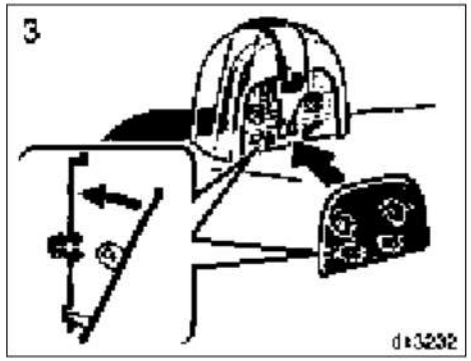
Anchor brackets are installed for each rear seating position.

This symbol indicates the location of the anchor brackets.










**TO USE THE ANCHOR BRACKET:**

1. **Carefully remove the head restraint rear cover from the top.**
2. **Securely fasten the child restraint system with the seat belt.**

   **Latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.**

For instructions to install the child restraint system, see "Child restraint" on page 85 in this Section.

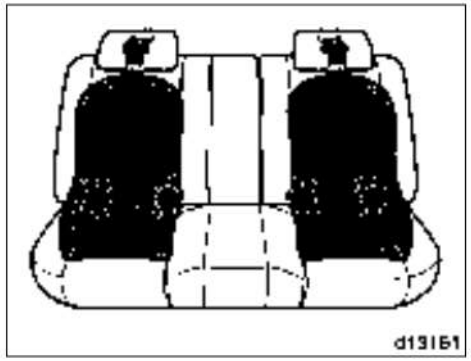
**⚠ CAUTION**

**Make sure the top strap is securely latched, and check that the child restraint system is secure by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.**

3. **Insert the lower hook into the hole on the head restraint and press the rear cover.**

Make sure the rear cover is securely locked by pulling it rearward lightly.

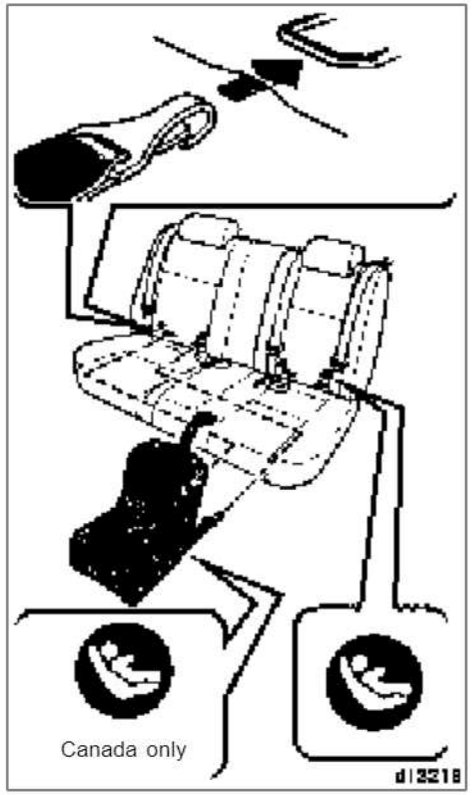
### —Installation with child restraint lower anchorages (coupe)



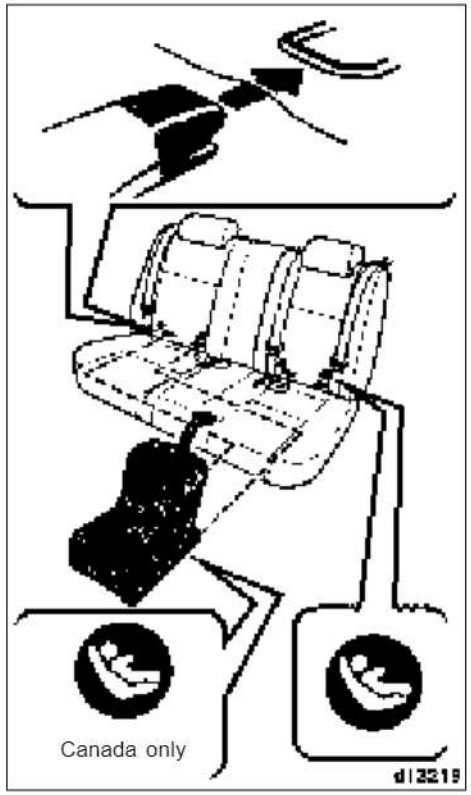

**Lower anchorages for the child restraint systems complying with the FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2 specifications are installed in the rear seat.**

The anchorages are installed in the gap between the seat cushion and seatback of both outside rear seats.

Child restraint systems complying with the FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specification can be fixed to these anchorages. In this case, it is not necessary to fix the child restraint system with a seat belt on the vehicle.




Type A




Type B

**CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM INSTALLATION**

1. **Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seatback slightly and confirm the position of the lower anchorages near the button on the seatback.**
2. **Type A—Latch the hooks of lower straps onto the anchorages and tighten the lower straps.**

   **Type B—Latch the buckles onto the anchorages.**

**For owners in Canada—**The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

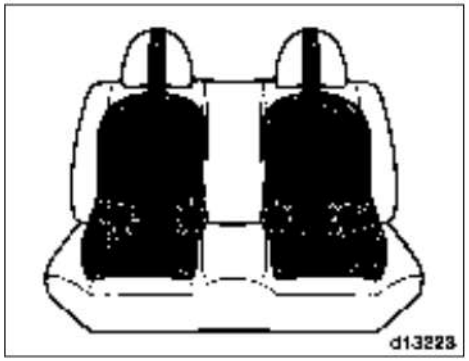
If your child restraint system has a top strap, it should be anchored. (For the installation of the top strap, see "—Using a top strap" on page 98 in this Section.)

For installation details, refer to the instruction manual equipped with each product.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **When using the lower anchorages for the child restraint system, be sure that there are no irregular objects around the anchorages or that the seat belt is not caught.**
- **Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.**
- **Do not install a child restraint system on the rear seat if it interferes with the lock mechanism of the front seats. Otherwise, the child or front seat occupant(s) may be killed or seriously injured in case of sudden braking or a collision.**

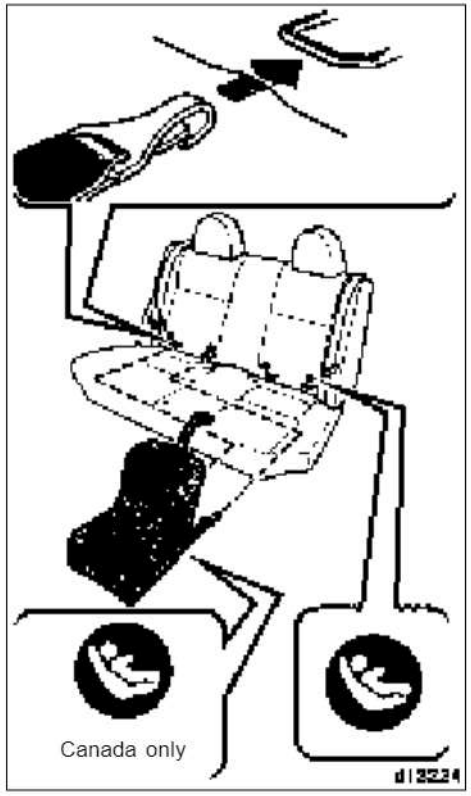
**—Installation with child restraint lower anchorages (convertible)**



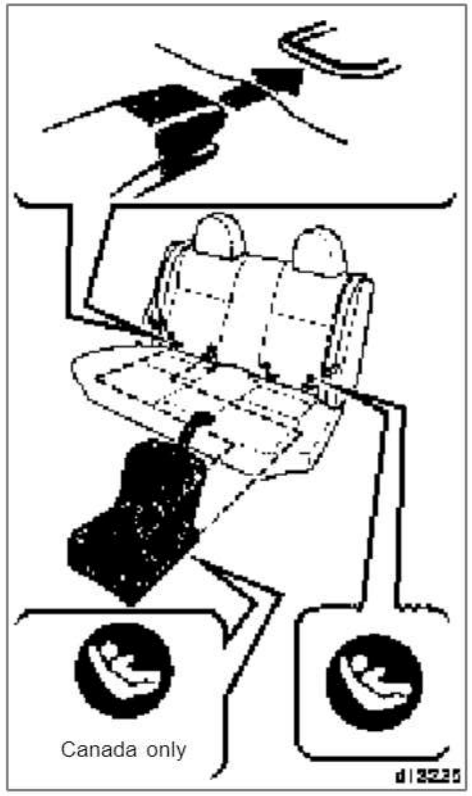

**Lower anchorages for the child restraint systems complying with the FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2 specifications are installed in the rear seat.**

The anchorages are installed in the gap between the seat cushion and seatback of both rear seats.

Child restraint systems complying with the FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specification can be fixed to these anchorages. In this case, it is not necessary to fix the child restraint system with a seat belt on the vehicle.




Type A




Type B

**CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM INSTALLATION**

1. **Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seatback slightly and confirm the position of the lower anchorages near the button on the seatback.**
2. **Type A—Latch the hooks of lower straps onto the anchorages and tighten the lower straps.**

   **Type B—Latch the buckles onto the anchorages.**

**For owners in Canada—**The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

If your child restraint system has a top strap, it should be anchored. (For the installation of the top strap, see "—Using a top strap" on page 100 in this Section.)

For installation details, refer to the instruction manual equipped with each product.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- When using the lower anchorages for the child restraint system, be sure that there are no irregular objects around the anchorages or that the seat belt is not caught.
- Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure. Follow all the installation instructions provided by its manufacturer.
- Do not install a child restraint system on the rear seat if it interferes with the lock mechanism of the front seats. Otherwise, the child or front seat occupant(s) may be killed or seriously injured in case of sudden braking or a collision.

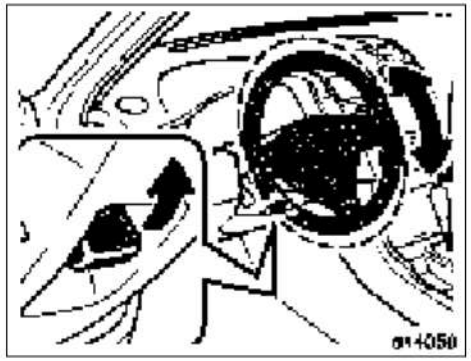
# SECTION 1- 4

## OPERATION OF INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

### Steering wheel and Mirrors

Tilt and telescopic steering wheel . . . . . 108
Outside rear view mirrors . . . . . 109
Anti- glare inside rear view mirror . . . . . 110
Auto anti- glare inside rear view mirror . . . . . 111
Sun visors . . . . . 112

## Tilt and telescopic steering wheel



**TILT STEERING WHEEL**

**To change the steering wheel angle, hold the steering wheel, pull the tilt lock release lever, tilt the steering wheel to the desired angle and release the lever.**

When the steering wheel is in a low position, it will spring up as you release the lock release lever.



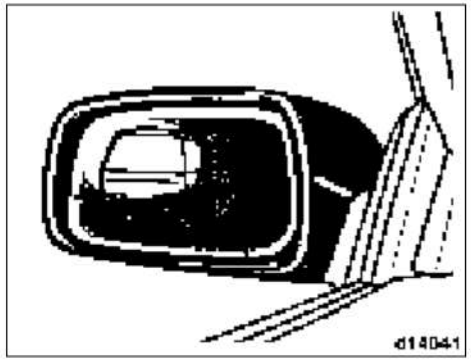
**TELESCOPIC STEERING WHEEL**

**To change the steering wheel column length, hold the steering wheel, push down the telescopic lock release lever, push or pull the steering wheel to the desired length and return the lever to its original position.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.**
- **After adjusting the steering wheel, try moving it up and down or forward and rearward to make sure it is locked in position.**

## Outside rear view mirrors—




**Adjust the mirror so that you can just see the side of your vehicle in the mirror.**

Be careful when judging the size or distance of any object seen in the outside rear view mirror on the passenger's side because it is a convex mirror. Any object seen in a convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than when seen in a flat mirror.

With auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror—

When the inside rear view mirror darkens in automatic function mode, the driver's outside rear view mirror also darkens to reduce the reflection of the headlights of the following vehicle. For details, see "Auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror" on page 111 in this Section.

When you push the rear window defogger switch, the heater panels in the outside rear view mirrors will quickly clear the mirror surface. (See "Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers" on page 125 in Section 1-5.)

**⚠ CAUTION**

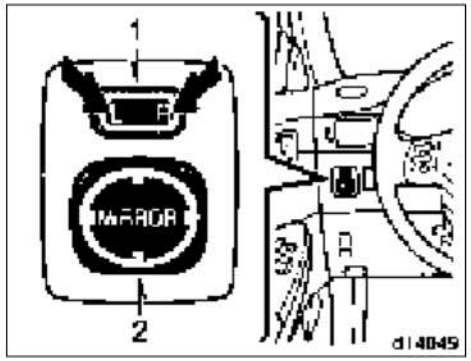
**◀Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.**

**◀Since the mirror surfaces can get hot, do not touch them when the defogger switch is on.**

***NOTICE***

***The outside rear view mirrors are fixed in place. Do not try to fold the mirrors. It may damage the mirrors.***

## —Power rear view mirror control




**To adjust a mirror, use the switches.**

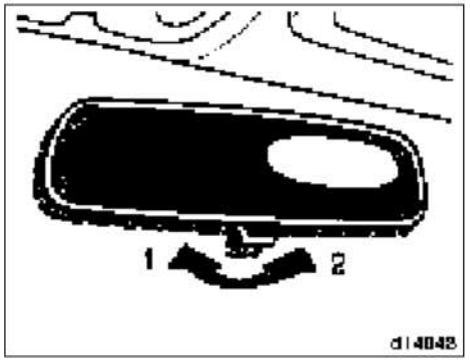
1. Master switch—To select the mirror to be adjusted
   Push the switch to "L" (left) or "R" (right).
2. Control switch—To move the mirror
   Push the switch in the desired direction.

Mirrors can be adjusted when the key is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

***NOTICE***

***If ice should jam the mirror, do not operate the control or scrape the mirror face. Use a spray de-icer to free the mirror.***

## Anti-glare inside rear view mirror




**Adjust the mirror so that you can just see the rear of your vehicle in the mirror.**

**To reduce glare from the headlights of the vehicle behind you during night driving, operate the lever on the lower edge of the mirror.**

Daylight driving—Lever at position 1

The reflection in the mirror has greater clarity at this position.

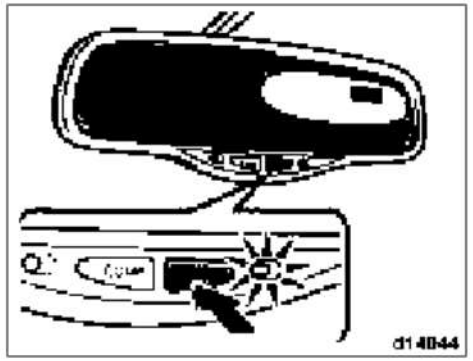
Night driving—Lever at position 2

Remember that by reducing glare you also lose some rear view clarity.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.**

## Auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror




**Adjust the mirror so that you can just see the rear of your vehicle in the mirror.**

**This mirror is equipped with auto anti-glare function. The function is designed to reduce glare from the headlights of the vehicle behind you during night driving.**

When the ignition key is inserted and turned on, the inside rear view mirror always turns on in the automatic function mode.

The indicator illuminates to show you that the function is on.

In automatic function mode, if the mirror detects light from the headlights of the vehicle behind you, the mirror surface darkens slightly to reduce the reflected light.

To turn off the automatic function, push the "MIRROR" switch.

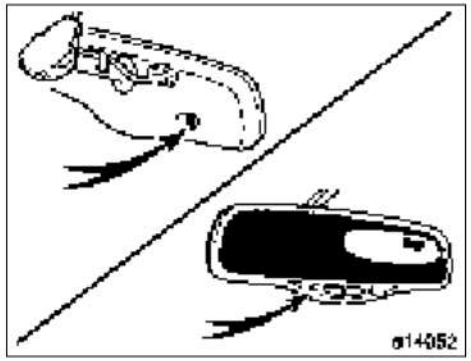
To turn on the automatic function again, push the "MIRROR" switch.

Adjust it before driving so that the rear view is in the best condition.

When the inside air temperature is low, it may take a little longer for the mirror to darken in response to the detection of headlights.

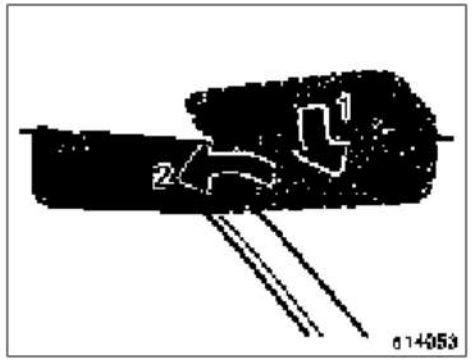
**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.**

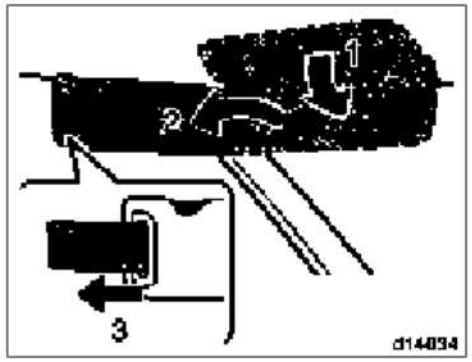



**To ensure correct functioning of anti-glare mirror sensors located on both sides of the mirror, do not touch or cover the sensors with your finger or a piece of cloth, etc.**

## Sun visors—




Coupe




Convertible

**To block out glare, move the sun visor.**

To block out glare from the front—Swing down the sun visor (position 1).

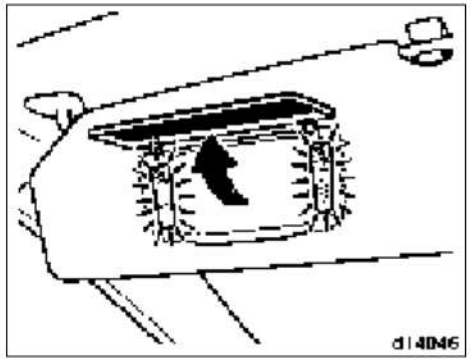
To block out glare from the side—Swing down the sun visor, remove it from the hook and swing it to the lateral side (position 2).

Convertible—If glare comes from obliquely behind you, extend the plate at the end of the visor (to position 3).

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Convertible—Do not extend the plate at the end of the sun visor when the visor is in the position 1. It can cover the anti-glare inside rear view mirror and obstruct the rear view.**

## —Vanity mirrors




**To use the vanity mirror, swing down the sun visor and open the cover.**

The vanity lights come on when you open the cover.

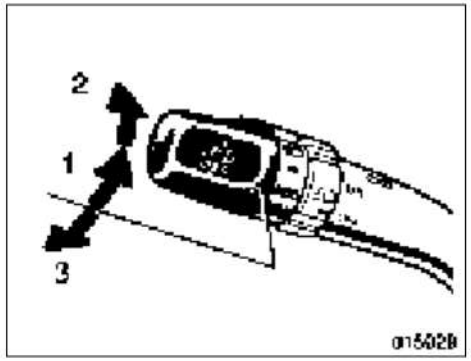
# SECTION 1- 5

## OPERATION OF INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

### Lights, Wipers and Defoggers

Headlights and turn signals ..... 116
Emergency flashers ..... 120
Instrument panel light control ..... 121
Front fog lights ..... 121
Interior light ..... 122
Ignition switch light and quarter trim courtesy light ..... 122
Personal lights ..... 123
Windshield wipers and washer ..... 124
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers ..... 125

## Headlights and turn signals (for the U.S.A.)




**HEADLIGHTS**

**Manual operation—**

**To turn on the following lights: Twist the headlight/turn signal lever knob.**

Position 1—Parking, tail, license plate, side marker and instrument panel lights

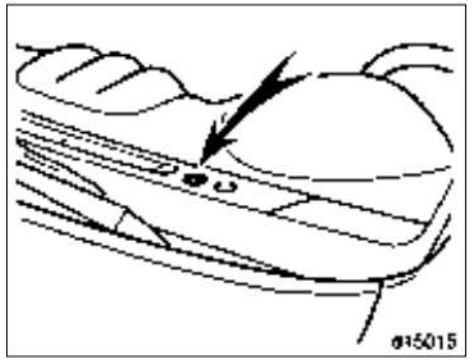
Position 2—Headlights and all of the above

**Automatic operation—**

**To turn on or off the lights automatically, twist the headlight/turn signal lever knob to the "AUTO" position when the ignition key is in the "ON" position.**

The headlights and/or all of the lights in position 1 automatically turn on or off depending on the darkness of the surroundings.

Manually twist the knob to the position 2 to turn on the headlights if they are needed immediately when entering a dark tunnel, parking structure, etc.




The automatic light control sensor is on the top of the driver's side instrument panel.

Do not place anything on the instrument panel, and/or do not affix anything on the windshield to block this sensor.

If you feel that the automatic light control comes into operation too early or too late, have the sensor adjusted by your Toyota dealer.

**Automatic light cut off system**

**Position 1 or "AUTO" position with the tail lights on—**

The lights automatically turn off when the driver's door is opened with the ignition key in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.

**Position 2 or "AUTO" position with the headlights on—**

The lights automatically turn off after 30 seconds when any of the doors or trunk lid is opened and closed with the ignition key in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.

If you want to turn off the lights immediately, push the "🔒" (lock) button on the wireless remote control transmitter twice. The lights also can be turned off immediately by pushing the "🔒" button on the wireless remote control transmitter with all the doors locked and the trunk lid closed.

If any of the doors or trunk lid is kept open, the lights automatically turn off after 20 minutes.

To turn on the lights again, turn the ignition key to the "ON" position or actuate the headlight switch. If you are going to park for over one week, make sure the knob is in the "AUTO" position.

***NOTICE***

***To prevent the battery from becoming discharged, do not leave the lights on for a long period when the engine is not running.***

**Daytime running light (DRL) system**

The Daytime Running Light (DRL) System can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. The DRL system can be helpful in many different driving conditions, but they can be especially helpful in the short periods after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will make your headlights come on at a reduced brightness when:

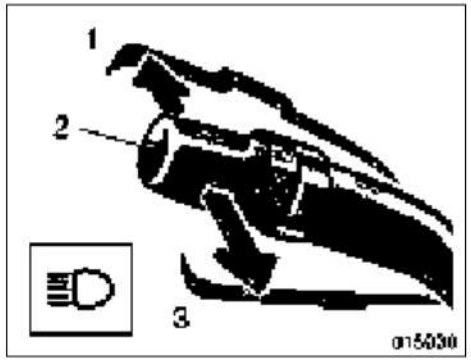
- The ignition is on with the engine running.
- The light switch is in the "AUTO" position.
- The parking brake is released.

To turn on the other exterior lights and instrument panel lights, twist the knob to position 1.

Twist the knob to position 2 to turn the headlights to full intensity for night driving.

To turn off the DRL system, twist the knob to position 3 ("DRL OFF") or turn the ignition switch off.

## Headlights and turn signals (for Canada)

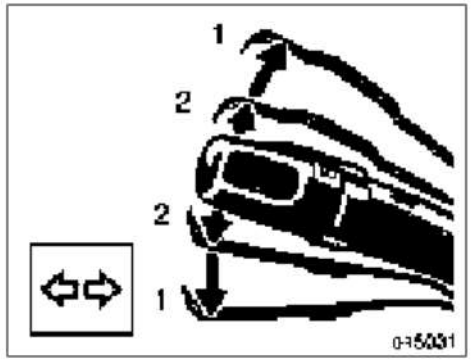



**High- Low beams—**For high beams, turn the headlights on and push the lever away from you (position 1). Pull the lever toward you (position 2) for low beams.

The headlight high beam indicator light (blue light) on the instrument panel will tell you that the high beams are on.

**Flashing the high beam headlights** (position 3)—Pull the lever all the way back. The high beam headlights turn off when you release the lever.

You can flash the high beam headlights even when the headlights are off.




**TURN SIGNALS**

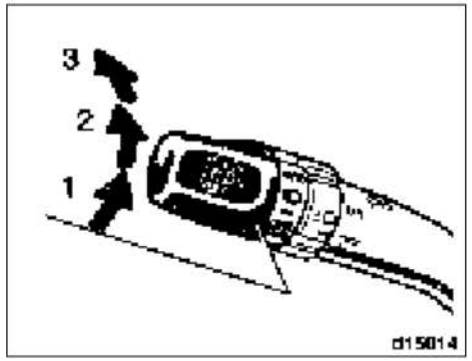
**To signal a turn, push the headlight/ turn signal lever up or down to position 1.**

The key must be in the "ON" position.

The lever automatically returns after you make a turn, but you may have to return it by hand after you change lanes.

To signal a lane change, move the lever up or down to the pressure point (position 2) and hold it.

If the turn signal indicator lights (green lights) on the instrument panel flash faster than normal, a front or rear turn signal bulb is burned out. See "Replacing light bulbs" on page 320 in Section 7- 3.




**HEADLIGHTS**

**To turn on the following lights: Twist the headlight/turn signal lever knob.**

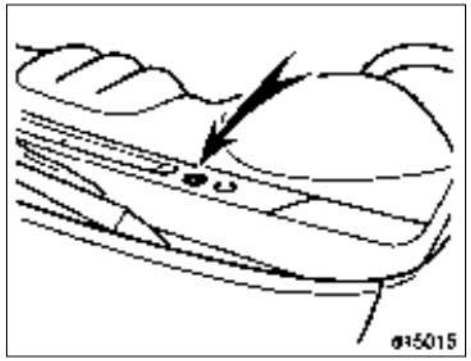
Position 1—Parking, tail, license plate, side marker and instrument panel lights

Position 2—Headlights and all of the above

Position 3 ("AUTO")—Headlights and/or all of the lights in the position 1

They automatically turn on or off depending on the darkness of the surroundings.

Manually twist the knob to the position 2 to turn on the headlights if they are needed immediately when entering a dark tunnel, parking structure, etc.



The automatic light control sensor is on the top of the driver's side instrument panel.

Do not place anything on the instrument panel, and/or do not affix anything on the windshield to block this sensor.

If you feel that the automatic light control comes into operation too early or too late, have the sensor adjusted by your Toyota dealer.

**Automatic light cut off system**

**Position 1 or position 3 with the tail lights on—**

The lights automatically turn off when the driver's door is opened with the ignition key in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.

**Position 2 or position 3 with the headlights on—**

The lights automatically turn off after 30 seconds when any of the doors or trunk lid is opened and closed with the ignition key in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.

If you want to turn off the lights immediately, push the "🔒" (lock) button on the wireless remote control transmitter twice. The lights also can be turned off immediately by pushing the "🔒" button on the wireless remote control transmitter with all the doors locked and the trunk lid closed.

If any of the doors or trunk lid is kept open, the lights automatically turn off after 20 minutes.

To turn on the lights again, turn the ignition key to the "ON" position or actuate the headlight switch. If you are going to park for over one week, make sure the headlight switch is off.

***NOTICE***

***To prevent the battery from becoming discharged, do not leave the lights on for a long period when the engine is not running.***

**Daytime running light (DRL) system**

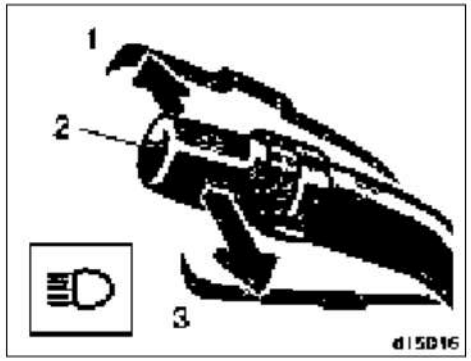
The Daytime Running Light (DRL) system can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. The DRL system can be helpful in many different driving conditions, but they can be especially helpful in the short periods after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will make your headlights come on at a reduced brightness when:

- The ignition is on with the engine running.
- The headlight switch is off.
- The parking brake is released.

To turn on the other exterior lights and instrument panel lights, twist the knob to the position 1.

Twist the knob to the position 2 to turn the headlights to full intensity for night driving.

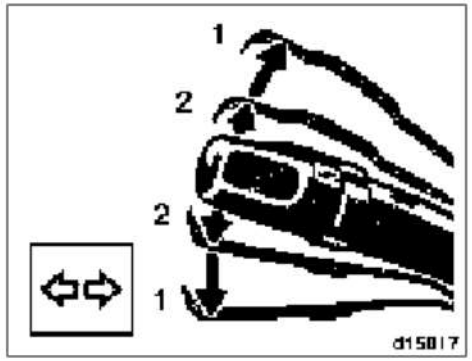



**High-Low beams**—For high beams, turn the headlights on and push the lever away from you (position 1). Pull the lever toward you (position 2) for low beams.

The headlight high beam indicator light (blue light) on the instrument panel will tell you that the high beams are on.

**Flashing the high beam headlights** (position 3)—Pull the lever all the way back. The high beam headlights turn off when you release the lever.

You can flash the high beam headlights with the knob turned to "OFF".




**TURN SIGNALS**

**To signal a turn, push the headlight/turn signal lever up or down to position 1.**

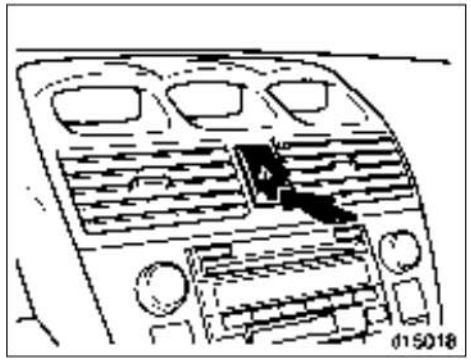
The key must be in the "ON" position.

The lever automatically returns after you make a turn, but you may have to return it by hand after you change lanes.

To signal a lane change, move the lever up or down to the pressure point (position 2) and hold it.

If the turn signal indicator lights (green lights) on the instrument panel flash faster than normal, a front or rear turn signal bulb is burned out. See "Replacing light bulbs" on page 320 in Section 7-3.

## Emergency flashers




**To turn on the emergency flashers, push the switch.**

All the turn signal lights will flash. To turn them off, push the switch once again.

Turn on the emergency flashers to warn other drivers if your vehicle must be stopped where it might be a traffic hazard.

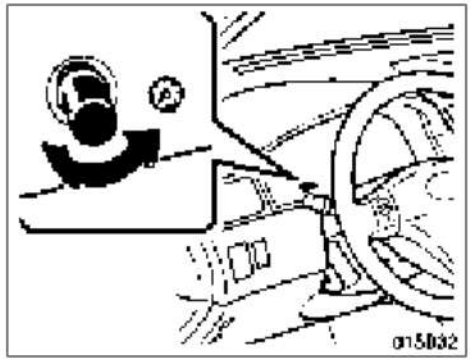
Always pull as far off the road as possible.

The turn signal light switch will not work when the emergency flashers are operating.

**NOTICE**

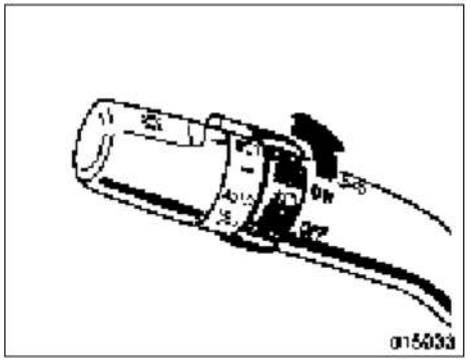
*To prevent the battery from becoming discharged, do not leave the switch on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.*

## Instrument panel light control



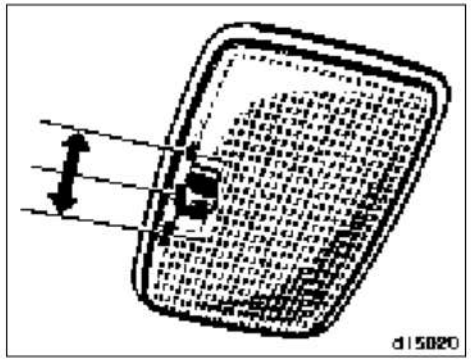

To adjust the brightness of the instrument panel lights, turn the knob.

## Front fog lights




To turn on the front fog lights, twist the band of the headlight and turn signal switch lever. They will come on only when the headlights are on low beam.

## Interior light




**To turn on the interior light, slide the switch.**

The interior light switch has the following positions:

"ON"—Keeps the light on all the time.

"OFF"—Turns the light off.

"DOOR"—Turns the light on while any door is opened.

**ILLUMINATED ENTRY SYSTEM**

When the switch is in the "DOOR" position, the interior light comes on and remains on for about 15 seconds before fading out in the following cases:

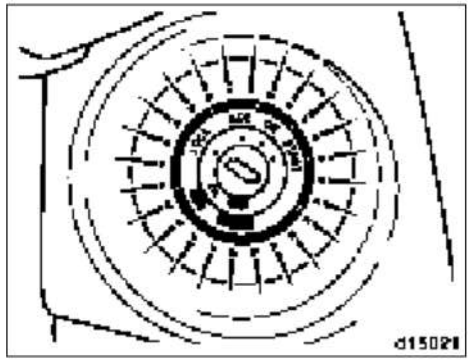
- Open and close any of the doors.
- Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK" position.
- Unlock a door when both doors are locked.

However, in the following cases, the light goes off immediately.

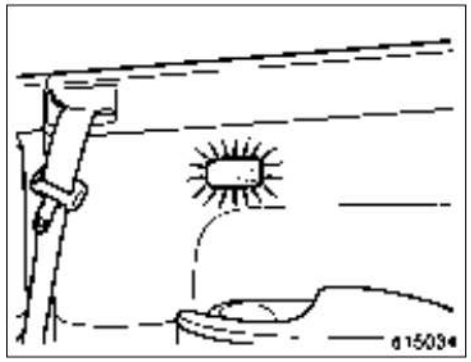
- Both doors are closed when the ignition key is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.
- Both doors are closed and locked.

To prevent the battery from becoming discharged, the lights will automatically turn off when the key is removed and the door is left opened with the switch at "DOOR" position for 20 minutes or more.

## Ignition switch light and quarter trim courtesy light




**Ignition switch light**




**Quarter trim courtesy light (convertible)**

**For easy access to the ignition switch, the ignition switch light comes on when any of the doors are opened or when the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK" position.**

Convertible—The quarter trim courtesy light also comes on under the same situation.

The lights remain on for about 15 seconds after both doors are closed.

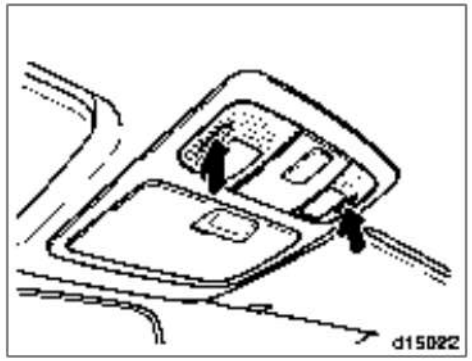
When unlocking a door while both doors are locked, the lights come on and remain on for about 15 seconds before fading out.

However, in the following cases, the light goes off immediately.

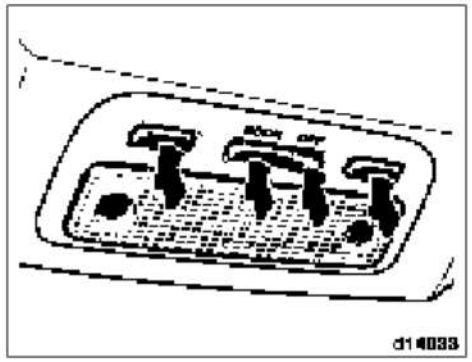
- ◀Both doors are closed when the ignition key is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.
- ◀Both doors are closed and locked.

To prevent the battery from becoming discharged, the light will automatically turn off when the key is removed and the door is left opened for 20 minutes or more.

## Personal lights




**Coupe**




**Convertible**

**Coupe—**

**To turn on the front personal light, push the lens. To turn the light off, push the lens once again.**

**Convertible—**

**To turn on the front personal light, push the outer switch. To turn the light off, push the switch once again.**

The personal lights switch have the following positions:

"DOOR"—Turn the lights on while any door is opened without pushing the outer switch. The lights go off when all the doors are closed.

"OFF"—Turn the lights on only when you push the outer switch.

**ILLUMINATED ENTRY SYSTEM (convertible)**

When the switch is in the "DOOR" position, the front personal lights come on and remain on for about 15 seconds before fading out in the following cases:

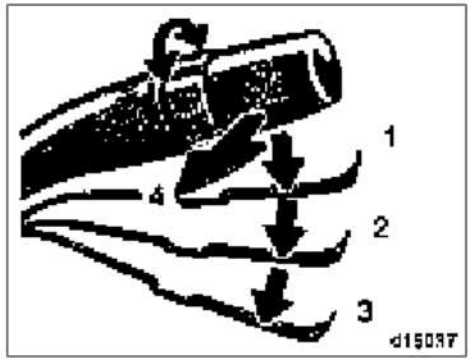
- Open and close any of the doors.
- Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK" position.
- Unlock a door when both doors are locked.

However, in the following cases, the lights go off immediately.

- Both doors are closed when the ignition key is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.
- Both doors are closed and locked.

To prevent the battery from becoming discharged, the lights will automatically turn off when the key is removed and the door is left opened with the switch at "DOOR" position for 20 minutes or more.

## Windshield wipers and washer




**To turn on the windshield wipers, move the lever to the desired setting.**

The key must be in the "ON" position.

| Lever position | Speed setting |
|---|---|
| Position 1 | Intermittent |
| Position 2 | Slow |
| Position 3 | Fast |
| Position 4 | Washer on |

With interval adjuster: The "INT" band lets you adjust the wiping time interval when the wiper lever is in the intermittent position (position 1). Twist the band upward to increase the time between sweeps, and downward to decrease it.

**To squirt washer fluid, pull the lever toward you (position 4).**

If the windshield wipers are off, they will operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

For instructions on adding washer fluid, see "Adding washer fluid" on page 319 in Section 7- 3.

In freezing weather, warm the windshield with the defroster before using the washer. This will help prevent the washer fluid from freezing on your windshield, which can block your vision.

***NOTICE***

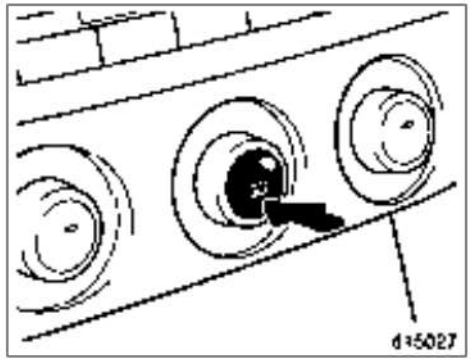
***Do not operate the wipers if the windshield is dry. It may scratch the glass.***

When waxing your vehicle, make sure that the washer nozzles do not become blocked. If a nozzle becomes blocked, contact your Toyota dealer to have the vehicle serviced.

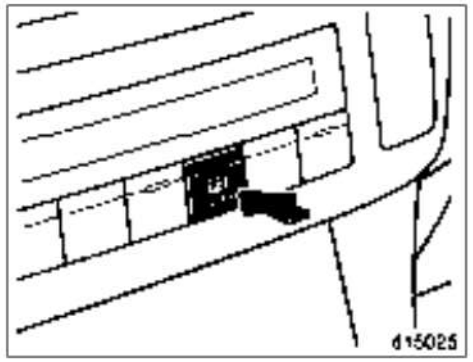
**NOTICE**

***If a nozzle becomes blocked, do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.***

## Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers




**With manual air conditioning controls**




**With automatic air conditioning controls**

**To defog or defrost the rear window, push the switch.**

The key must be in the "ON" position.

The thin heater wires on the inside of the rear window will quickly clear the surfaces. An indicator light will illuminate to indicate the defogger is operating.

With automatic air conditioning controls—Heater panels in the outside rear view mirrors will also quickly clear the surfaces.

Push the switch once again to turn the defogger off.

The system will automatically shut off after the defogger has operated about 15 minutes.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Since the mirror surfaces can get hot do not touch them when the defogger switch is on.**

Make sure you turn the defoggers off when the surfaces are clear. Leaving the defoggers on for a long time could cause the battery to discharge, especially during stop-and-go driving. The defoggers are not designed for drying rain water or for melting snow.

If the outside rear view mirrors are heavily coated with ice, use a spray de-icer before operating the switch.

**NOTICE**

- ***When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or connectors.***
- ***Convertible—When the convertible top is lowered, keep the rear window defogger turned off to avoid damage to the convertible top.***

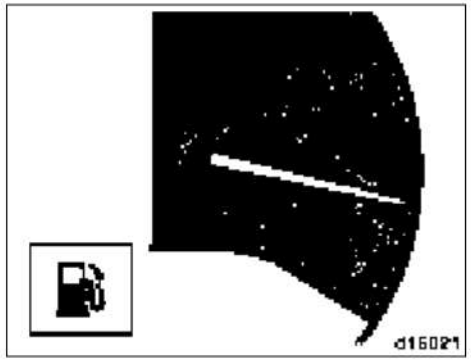
# SECTION 1- 6

# OPERATION OF INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

## Gauges, Meters and Service reminder indicators

Fuel gauge ..... 128
Engine coolant temperature gauge ..... 128
Tachometer ..... 129
Odometer and two trip meters ..... 129
Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers ..... 131

## Fuel gauge




**The gauge indicates the approximate quantity of fuel remaining in the tank when the ignition switch is on.**

Nearly full—Needle at "F"
Nearly empty—Needle at "E"

It is a good idea to keep the tank over 1/4 full.

The gauge remains on for about 10 minutes after the ignition switch is off.

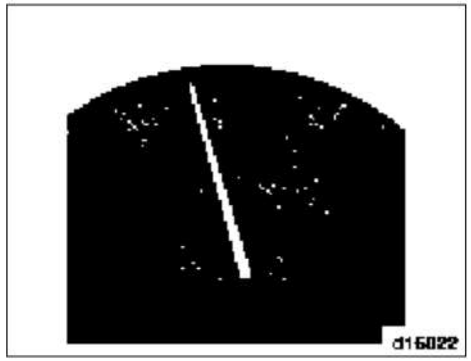
If the fuel level approaches "E" or the low fuel level warning light comes on, fill the fuel tank as soon as possible.

On inclines or curves, due to the movement of fuel in the tank, the fuel gauge needle may fluctuate or the low fuel level warning light may come on earlier than usual.

If the fuel tank is completely empty, the malfunction indicator lamp comes on. Fill the fuel tank immediately.

The indicator lamp goes off after driving several times. If the indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

## Engine coolant temperature gauge




**The gauge indicates the engine coolant temperature when the ignition switch is on. The engine operating temperature will vary with changes in weather and engine load.**

If the needle moves into the red zone, your engine is too hot. If your vehicle overheats, stop your vehicle and allow the engine to cool.

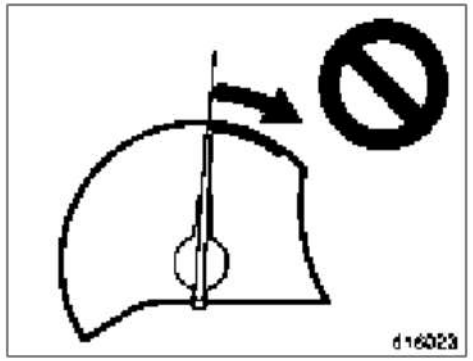
Your vehicle may overheat during severe operating conditions, such as:

- Driving up a long hill on a hot day.
- Reducing speed or stopping after high speed driving.
- Idling for a long period with the air conditioning on in stop-and-go traffic.

**NOTICE**

- *Do not remove the thermostat in the engine cooling system as this may cause the engine to overheat. The thermostat is designed to control the flow of coolant to keep the temperature of the engine within the specified operating range.*
- *Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. See "If your vehicle overheats" on page 260 in Section 4.*

## Tachometer



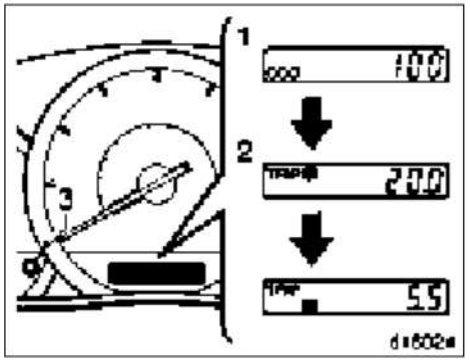
**The tachometer indicates engine speed in thousands of rpm (revolutions per minute). Use it while driving to select correct shift points and to prevent engine lugging and over-revving.**

Driving with the engine running too fast causes excessive engine wear and poor fuel economy. Remember, in most cases the slower the engine speed, the greater the fuel economy.

**NOTICE**

***Do not let the indicator needle get into the red zone. This may cause severe engine damage.***

## Odometer and two trip meters




**This meter displays the odometer and two trip meters when the ignition switch is on.**

1. Odometer—Shows the total distance the vehicle has been driven.
2. Two trip meters—Show two different distances independently driven since the last time each trip meter was set to zero.

   You can use one trip meter to calculate the fuel economy and the other to measure the distance on each trip. All trip meter data is cancelled if the electrical power source is disconnected.

3. Trip meter reset knob—Resets the two trip meters to zero, and also change the meter display.

   To change the meter display, quickly push and release the knob. The meter display changes in the order from the odometer to trip meter A to trip meter B, then back to the odometer each time you push.

   To reset the trip meter A to zero, display the meter A reading, then push and hold the knob until the meter is set to zero. The same process can be applied for resetting the trip meter B.

This display remains on for about 10 minutes after the ignition switch is off.

## Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers

| If the indicator or buzzer comes on... | | Do this. |
|---|---|---|
| (a) | BRAKE or  | If parking brake is off, stop immediately and contact Toyota dealer. |
| (b) |  (indicator and buzzer) | Fasten driver's seat belt. |
| (c) | PASSENGER  | Fasten front passenger's seat belt. |
| (d) |  | Stop and check. |
| (e) |  CHECK | Take vehicle to Toyota dealer. |
| (f) |  | Stop and check. |
| (g) |  | Fill up tank. |

| If the indicator or buzzer comes on... | | Do this. |
|---|---|---|
| (h) | **ABS** or  | Take vehicle to Toyota dealer. If brake system warning light is also on, stop immediately and contact Toyota dealer. |
| (i) |  | Close all doors. |
| (j) |  | Take vehicle to Toyota dealer immediately. |
| (k) |  | Adjust tire inflation pressure and turn off warning light by pushing reset switch for a few seconds. If warning light remains, contact Toyota dealer. |
| (l) |  | Add washer fluid. |
| (m) | **VSC** | Take vehicle to Toyota dealer. |
| (n) | **MAINT** | Replace engine oil. |
| (o) | Key reminder buzzer | Remove key. |

**(a) Brake System Warning Light**

This light comes on in the following cases when the ignition key is in the "ON" position.

◀**When the parking brake is applied...**

This light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position even after the parking brake is released.

◀**When the brake fluid level is low...**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**It is dangerous to continue driving normally when the brake fluid level is low.**

**Have your vehicle checked at your Toyota dealer in the following cases:**

- ◀The light does not come on even if the parking brake is applied when the ignition key is in the "ON" position.
- ◀The light does not come on even if the ignition key is turned on with the parking brake released.

A warning light turning on briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If either of the following conditions occurs, immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place and contact your Toyota dealer.**

- ◀**The light does not turn off even after the parking brake is released while the engine is running.**

  **In this case, the brakes may not work properly and your stopping distance will become longer. Depress the brake pedal firmly and bring the vehicle to an immediate stop.**
- ◀**The brake system warning light remains on together with the "ABS" warning light.**

  **In this case, not only the anti-lock brake system will fail but also the vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking.**

**(b) Driver's Seat Belt Reminder Light and Buzzer**

The light and buzzer act as a reminder to buckle up the driver's seat belt.

Once the ignition key is turned to "ON", the reminder light flashes and buzzer sounds if the driver's seat belt is not fastened. Unless the driver fastens the belt, the light continues flashing and the buzzer stops after about 4 to 8 seconds.

**(c) Front Passenger's Seat Belt Reminder Light**

The light acts as a reminder to have the front passenger buckle up the seat belt.

Once the ignition key is turned to "ON", the reminder light flashes if a passenger sits in the front passenger seat and does not fasten the seat belt.

If luggage or other load is placed on the front passenger seat, depending on its weight, the reminder light may flash.

**(d) Discharge Warning Light**

This light warns that the battery is being discharged.

If it comes on while you are driving, there is a problem somewhere in the charging system.

The engine ignition will continue to operate, however, until the battery is discharged. Turn off the air conditioning, blower, radio, etc., and drive directly to the nearest Toyota dealer or repair shop.

| *NOTICE* |
| --- |
| ***Do not continue driving if the engine drive belt is broken or loose.*** |

**(e) Malfunction Indicator Lamp**

**This lamp comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position and goes off after the engine starts. This means that the warning light system is operating properly.**

**If the lamp remains on, or the lamp comes on while driving, first check the following.**

◀Empty fuel tank

If the fuel tank is empty, refuel immediately.

◀Loose fuel tank cap

If the fuel tank cap is loose, securely tighten it.

These cases are temporary malfunctions. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after taking several driving trips.

If the lamp does not go off even after several trips, contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

**If the fuel tank is not empty or the fuel tank cap is not loose...**

◀There is a problem somewhere in the engine, emission control system, electronic throttle control system, automatic transmission electrical system or warning light system itself.

Contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

If engine speed does not increase when the accelerator pedal is depressed, there may be a problem somewhere in the electronic throttle control system.

At this time, vibration may occur. However, if you depress the accelerator pedal more firmly and slowly, you can drive your vehicle at low speeds. Have your vehicle checked by your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

Even if the abnormality of the electronic throttle control system is corrected during low speed driving, the system may not be recovered until the engine is stopped and the ignition key is turned to "ACC" or "LOCK" position.

| ⚠ CAUTION |
| --- |
| **Be especially careful to prevent erroneous pedal operation.** |

**Emissions inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs**

Your vehicle may not pass a state emission inspection if the malfunction indicator lamp remains on. Contact your Toyota dealer to check your vehicle's emission control system and OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) system before taking your vehicle for the inspection.

For details, see "Emissions Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) programs" on page 290 in Section 6.

**(f) Low Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light**

This light warns that the engine oil pressure is too low.

If it flickers or stays on while you are driving, pull off the road to a safe place and stop the engine immediately. Call a Toyota dealer or qualified repair shop for assistance.

The light may occasionally flicker when the engine is idling or it may come on briefly after a hard stop. There is no cause for concern if it then goes out when the engine is accelerated slightly.

The light may come on when the oil level is extremely low. It is not designed to indicate low oil level, and the oil level must be checked using the level dipstick.

**NOTICE**

***Do not drive the vehicle with the warning light on—even for one block. It may ruin the engine.***

**(g) Low Fuel Level Warning Light**

This light comes on when the fuel level in the tank becomes nearly empty. Fill up the tank as soon as possible.

On inclines or curves, due to the movement of fuel in the tank, the low fuel level warning light may come on earlier than usual.

**(h) "ABS" Warning Light**

**Vehicles without vehicle stability control system—**

The light comes on with the ignition key turned to the "ON" position. If the anti-lock brake system works properly, the light turns off after a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system malfunctions, the light comes on again.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system does not operate, but the brake system still operates conventionally.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system does not operate so that the wheels could lock up during a sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces.

**If either of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction somewhere in the components monitored by the warning light system. Contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.**

- The light does not come on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, or remains on.
- The light comes on while you are driving.

A warning light turning on briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If the "ABS" warning light remains on together with the brake system warning light, immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place and contact your Toyota dealer.**

**In this case, not only the anti-lock brake system will fail but also the vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking.**

**Vehicles with vehicle stability control system—**

The light comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. If the anti-lock brake system and the brake assist system work properly, the light turns off after a few seconds. Thereafter, if either of the systems malfunctions, the light comes on again.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system and the brake assist system do not operate, but the brake system still operates conventionally.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system does not operate so that the wheels could lock up during a sudden brake or braking on slippery road surfaces.

**If either of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction somewhere in the components monitored by the warning light system. Contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.**

- The light does not come on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, or remains on.
- The light comes on while you are driving.

A warning light turning on briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If the "ABS" warning light remains on together with the brake system warning light, immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place and contact your Toyota dealer.**

**In this case, not only the anti-lock brake system will fail but also the vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking.**

**(i) Open Door Warning Light**

This light remains on until all the doors are completely closed.

**(j) SRS Warning Light**

**This light will come on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. After about 6 seconds, the light will go off. This means the systems of the airbag and front seat belt pretensioner are operating properly.**

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side airbag sensors, side and curtain shield airbag sensors, curtain shield airbag sensors, driver's seat position sensor, driver's seat belt buckle switch, front passenger occupant classification system and indicator light, front passenger's seat belt buckle switch, seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, warning light, interconnecting wiring and power sources.

If either of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction somewhere in the parts monitored by the warning light system. Contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.

- When the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, the light does not come on or remains on for more than 6 seconds.
- The light comes on or flashes while driving.

**(k) Low Tire Pressure Warning Light**

This light warns that the tire inflation pressure of any one of the tires is critically low. The light comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. It goes off after a few seconds. This indicates that the low tire pressure warning system is functioning properly.

If the light comes on while driving, check if the tire inflation pressure is the specified level. (See "Tires" on page 330 in Section 8.) If the tire inflation pressure is low, adjust the pressure and then push the tire pressure warning system reset switch for 1 second and make sure the warning light goes off. If the tire pressure is normal, the low tire pressure warning system may not have been set correctly. In this case, the system needs to be initialized.

If the light still remains or blinks once every second, have the low tire pressure warning system checked at your Toyota dealer.

If the light blinks twice every second, the low tire pressure warning system needs to be initialized.

For details, see "Tire pressure warning system" on page 150 in Section 1-7.

**(l) Low Windshield Washer Fluid Level Warning Light**

The light warns that the windshield washer fluid level is too low. Add washer fluid at your earliest opportunity. (For instructions, see "Adding washer fluid" on page 319 in Section 7-3.)

**(m) "VSC" Warning Light**

The light warns that there is a problem somewhere in the vehicle stability control system or traction control system.

The light will come on when the ignition key is turned to "ON", and will go off after about a few seconds.

If the light comes on while driving, the system does not work. However, as conventional braking operates when applied, there is no problem to continue your driving.

In the following cases, contact your Toyota dealer:

- The warning light does not come on after the ignition key is turned to "ON".
- The warning light remains on after the ignition key is turned to "ON".
- The warning light comes on while driving.

The "TRAC OFF" indicator light will come on when the "VSC" warning light comes on even if the "TRAC OFF" switch is not pushed.

**(n) Engine Oil Replacement Reminder Light (for vehicles sold in U.S.A.)**

This light acts as a reminder to replace the engine oil.

This light will come on when the ignition key is turned to "ON" and will go off after about a few seconds.

When you drive for about 7200 km (4500 miles) after the engine oil replacement, this light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then flashes for about 12 seconds with the ignition key turned to the "ON" position. If you continue driving without replacing the engine oil, and if the distance driven exceeds 8000 km (5000 miles), the light will come on after the ignition key is turned to "ON" position. The light will remain on thereafter.

If the light is flashing, we recommend that you replace the engine oil at an early opportunity depending on the driving and road conditions. If the light comes on, replace it as soon as possible.

The system must be reset after the engine oil replacement. Reset the system by the following procedure:

1. Turn the ignition key to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position with the odometer reading shown. (For details, see "Odometer and two trip meters" on page 129 in this Section.)
2. Turn the ignition key to the "ON" position while holding down the trip meter reset knob.

Hold down the knob for at least 5 seconds. The odometer indicates "000000" and the light goes off.

If the system fails to reset, the light will continue flashing.

**(o) Key Reminder Buzzer**

This buzzer acts as a reminder to remove the key when you open the driver's door with the ignition key in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.

**CHECKING SERVICE REMINDER INDICATORS (except the low fuel level warning light and low windshield washer fluid level warning light)**

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Open one of the doors.
   The open door warning light should come on.
3. Close the door.
   The open door warning light should go off.
4. Turn the ignition key to "ON", but do not start the engine.
   All the service reminder indicators except the open door warning light should come on. The "ABS", "VSC" and low tire pressure warning lights, engine oil replacement reminder light, "TRAC OFF" and slip indicator lights go off after a few seconds. The SRS warning light goes off after about 6 seconds.

If any service reminder indicator or warning buzzer does not function as described above, have it checked by your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

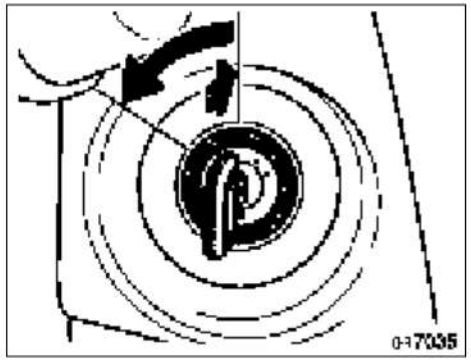
# SECTION 1- 7

## OPERATION OF INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

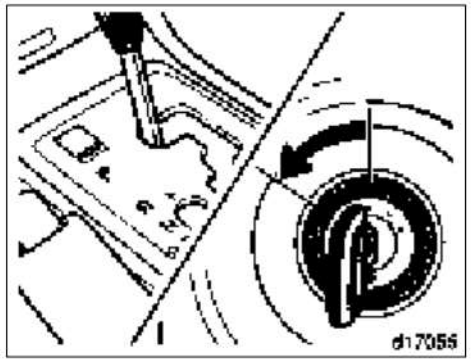
### Ignition switch, Transmission and Parking brake

Ignition switch . . . . . 140
Automatic transmission . . . . . 141
Manual transmission . . . . . 145
Traction control system . . . . . 146
Vehicle stability control system . . . . . 148
Tire pressure warning system . . . . . 150
Parking brake . . . . . 154
Cruise control . . . . . 154

## Ignition switch




With manual transmission




With automatic transmission

**"START"—Starter motor on. The key will return to the "ON" position when released.**

For starting tips, see page 247 in Section 3.

**"ON"—Engine on and all accessories on.**

This is the normal driving position.

**"ACC"—Accessories such as the radio operate, but the engine is off.**

If you leave the key in the "ACC" or "LOCK" position and open the driver's door, a buzzer will remind you to remove the key.

**"LOCK"—Engine is off and the steering wheel is locked. The key can be removed only at this position.**

With manual transmission—You must push in the key to turn the key from "ACC" to the "LOCK" position.

With automatic transmission—The selector lever must be put in the "P" position before turning the key from "ACC" to the "LOCK" position.

Once you remove the key, the engine immobilizer system is automatically set. (See "Engine immobilizer system" on page 14 in Section 1-2.)

**When starting the engine, the key may seem stuck at the "LOCK" position. To free it, first be sure the key is pushed all the way in, and then rock the steering wheel slightly while turning the key gently.**

It is not a malfunction if the needles on all meters and gauges move slightly when the key is turned to the "ACC", "ON" or "START" position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

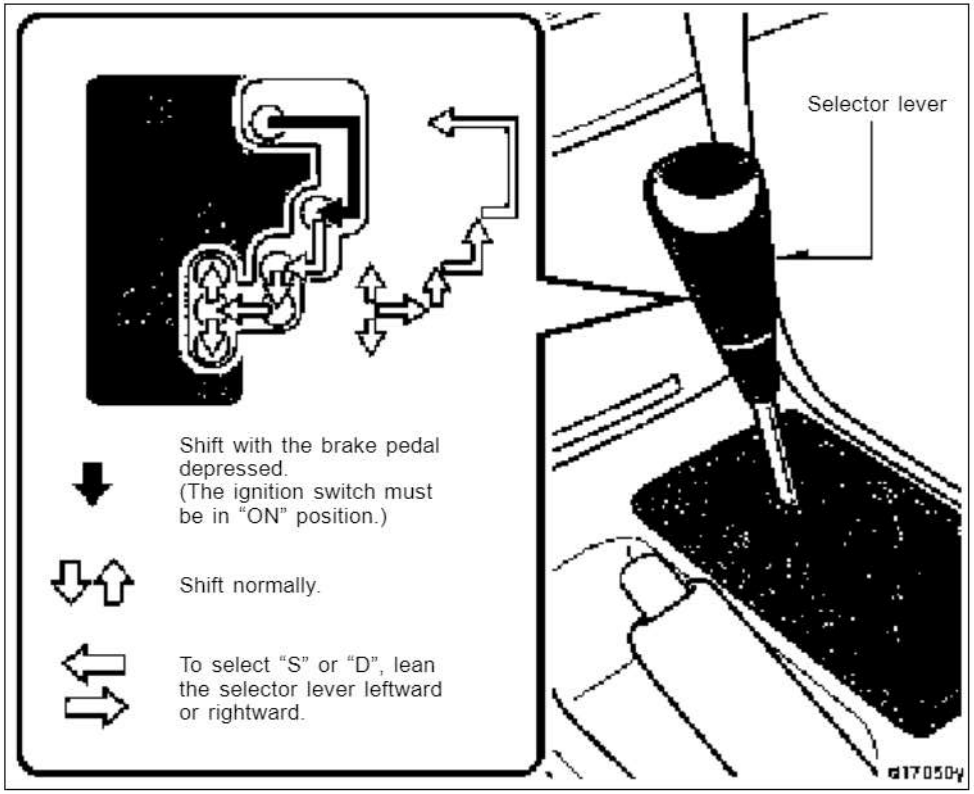
**For manual transmission:**

**Never remove the key when the vehicle is moving, as this will lock the steering wheel and result in loss of steering control.**

***NOTICE***

***Do not leave the key in the "ON" position if the engine is not running. The battery will discharge and the ignition could be damaged.***

## Automatic transmission




Your automatic transmission has a shift lock system to minimize the possibility of incorrect operation. This means you can only shift out of "P" position when the brake pedal is depressed (with the ignition switch in the "ON" position).

**(a) Selector lever**

The shift position is also displayed on the instrument cluster.

**P:** Parking, engine starting and key removal

**R:** Reverse

**N:** Neutral

**D:** Normal driving (shifting into overdrive)

**S:** "S" mode driving

**+:** Upshift range

**-:** Downshift range

**(b) Normal driving**

1. Start the engine as instructed in "How to start the engine" on page 248 in Section 3. The transmission must be in "P" or "N".
2. With your foot holding down the brake pedal, shift the selector lever to "D".

When the lever is in the "D" position, the automatic transmission system will select the most suitable gear for running conditions such as normal cruising, hill climbing, etc.

Always use the "D" position for better fuel economy and quieter driving. In this position, shifting into the overdrive gear is possible. If the engine coolant temperature is low, the transmission will not shift into the overdrive gear even in the "D" position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

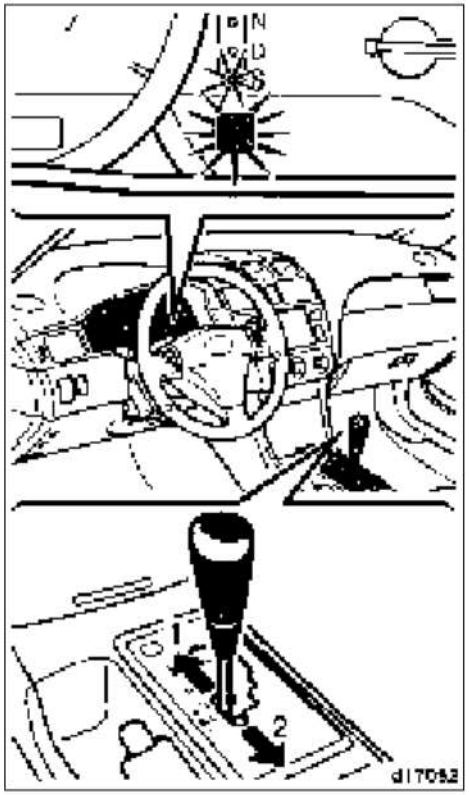
**Never put your foot on the accelerator pedal while shifting.**

3. Release the parking brake and brake pedal. Depress the accelerator pedal slowly for smooth starting.

**(c) Driving in "S" mode**

**You can change the shift range position in the "S" mode. The shift range position can be switched between 5 (fifth range) and 1 (first range) by moving the selector lever up to the "+" side or down to the "-" side. The first shift range position is 4 (fourth range) when the selector lever is shifted to the "S" position.**

The "S" mode indicator and the shift range position being used are shown on the instrument cluster.




**1: Upshift range**
**2: Downshift range**

**Shift range positions**

◀**"5" (Fifth range):**
The most suitable gear is selected automatically between first and overdrive (fifth) gears according to the vehicle speed or driving conditions.

◀**"4" (Fourth range):**
The most suitable gear is selected automatically between first and fourth gears according to the vehicle speed or driving conditions. Slight engine braking will be obtained on a downhill road. Smooth running with less shifting will be obtained on an uphill road.

◀**"3" (Third range):**
The most suitable gear is selected automatically between first and third gears according to the vehicle speed or driving conditions. This range is to be used when stronger engine braking is necessary.

◀**"2" (Second range):**
First or second gear will be selected automatically according to the vehicle speed or driving conditions. This range is to be used when engine braking stronger than that of the "3" range position is necessary.

◀**"1" (First range):**
The gear is fixed in first regardless of vehicle speed or driving conditions. This range is to be used when maximum engine braking is necessary.

If you attempt to downshift the transmission when it is not possible to downshift due to high vehicle speed, a warning tone sounds twice.

**Maximum allowable speeds**

To get on a highway or to pass slower traffic, maximum acceleration may be necessary. Make sure you observe the following maximum allowable speed in each range:

**2AZ-FE engine**

| range | km/h (mph) |
|---|---|
| 1 | 52 (32) |
| 2 | 94 (58) |
| 3 | 146 (90) |

**3MZ-FE engine**

| range | km/h (mph) |
|---|---|
| 1 | 47 (29) |
| 2 | 86 (53) |
| 3 | 133 (83) |

**NOTICE**

***Do not downshift if you are going faster than the maximum allowable speed for the next lower range.***

When the "S" mode indicator light does not come on even with the selector lever moved to the "S" position, there may be a problem somewhere in the system. Have your vehicle checked/repaired by your Toyota dealer as soon as possible. In this case, you can drive in the same condition as in the "D" position.

**(d) Using engine braking**

To use engine braking, you can downshift the transmission as follows:

◀When driving in the "D" position—
Shift the selector lever to "S" position.

When driving in the "5" range within the "S" position—
Move the selector lever down to the "-" side to select the "4" range.

The transmission will downshift to fourth range and engine braking will be enabled.

When the cruise control is being used, engine braking can not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled.

For decreasing the vehicle speed, see "Cruise control" on page 154 in this Section.

◀Move the selector lever down to the "-" side to select the "3" range. The transmission will downshift to third range when the vehicle speed drops down to or lower than the following speed, and stronger engine braking will be enabled.

2AZ-FE engine
..... 143 km/h (88 mph)
3MZ-FE engine
..... 129 km/h (80 mph)

◀Move the selector lever down to the "-" side to select the "2" range. The transmission will downshift to second range when the vehicle speed drops down to or lower than the following speed, and more powerful engine braking than that of the "3" range position will be enabled.

2AZ-FE engine
..... 91 km/h (56 mph)
3MZ-FE engine
..... 83 km/h (51 mph)

◀Move the selector lever down to the "-" side to select the "1" range. The transmission will downshift to first range when the vehicle speed drops down to or lower than the following speed, and maximum engine braking will be enabled.

2AZ-FE engine
..... 40 km/h (24 mph)
3MZ-FE engine
..... 39 km/h (24 mph)

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Be careful when downshifting on a slippery surface. Abrupt shifting could cause the vehicle to skid or spin.**

### (e) Backing up

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. With the brake pedal held down with your foot, shift the selector lever to the "R" position.

***NOTICE***

***Never shift into reverse while the vehicle is moving.***

### (f) Parking

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up fully to securely apply the parking brake.
3. With the brake pedal pressed down, shift the selector lever to the "P" position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Never attempt to move the selector lever into "P" position under any circumstances while the vehicle is moving. Serious mechanical damage and loss of vehicle control may result.**

### (g) Good driving practice

If the transmission repeatedly shifts up and down between third gear and overdrive when climbing a gentle slope, shift the selector lever into "S" position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.**

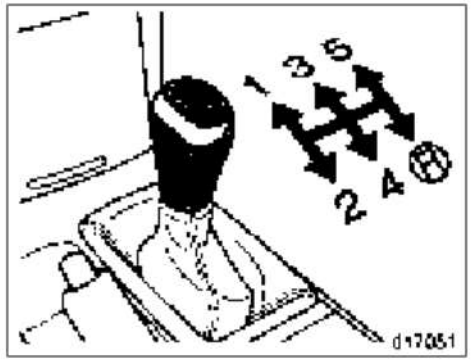
**NOTICE**

***Always use the brake pedal or the parking brake to hold the vehicle on an upgrade. Do not attempt to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal, as this can cause the transmission to overheat.***

**(h) If you cannot shift the lever out of "P" position**

If you cannot shift the selector lever from the "P" position even though the brake pedal is depressed, use the shift lock override button. For instructions, see "If you cannot shift automatic transmission selector lever" on page 274 in Section 4.

## Manual transmission




**The shift pattern is conventional as shown above.**

Press the clutch pedal down fully while shifting, and then release it slowly. Do not rest your foot on the pedal while driving, because it will cause clutch trouble. Do not use the clutch to hold the vehicle when stopped on an uphill grade—use the parking brake.

**Recommended shifting speeds**

The transmission is fully synchronized and upshifting or downshifting is easy.

For the best compromise between fuel economy and vehicle performance, you should upshift or downshift at the following speeds:

| gear | km/h (mph) |
|---|---|
| 1 to 2 or 2 to 1 | 24 (15) |
| 2 to 3 or 3 to 2 | 40 (25) |
| 3 to 4 or 4 to 3 | 64 (40) |
| 4 to 5 or 5 to 4 | 72 (45) |

Downshift to the appropriate gear if acceleration is needed when you are cruising below the above downshifting speeds.

Upshifting too soon or downshifting too late will cause lugging, and possibly pinging. Regularly revving the engine to maximum speed in each gear will cause excessive engine wear and high fuel consumption.

**Maximum allowable speeds**

To get on a highway or to pass slower traffic, maximum acceleration may be necessary. Make sure you observe the following maximum allowable speeds in each gear:

| gear | km/h (mph) |
|---|---|
| 1 | 53 (33) |
| 2 | 92 (57) |
| 3 | 142 (88) |
| 4 | 194 (121) |

**NOTICE**

***Do not downshift if you are going faster than the maximum allowable speed for the next lower gear.***

**Good driving practice**

If it is difficult to shift into reverse, put the transmission in neutral, release the clutch pedal momentarily, and then try again.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Be careful when downshifting on a slippery surface. Abrupt shifting could cause the vehicle to skid or spin.**

**NOTICE**

***Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped before shifting into reverse.***

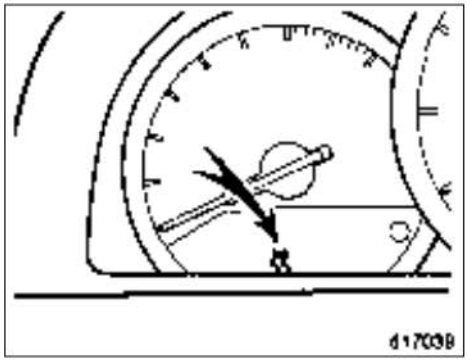
## Traction control system

**The traction control system automatically helps prevent the spinning of front wheels when the vehicle is started or accelerated on slippery road surfaces.**

When the ignition key is turned to "ON", the system automatically turns on.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Under certain slippery road conditions, full traction of the vehicle and power against front wheels cannot be maintained, even though the traction control system is in operation. Do not drive the vehicle under any speed or maneuvering conditions which may cause the vehicle to lose traction control. In situations where the road surface is covered with ice or snow, your vehicle should be fitted with snow tires or tire chains. Always drive at an appropriate and cautious speed for the present road conditions.**



**NORMAL DRIVING MODE**

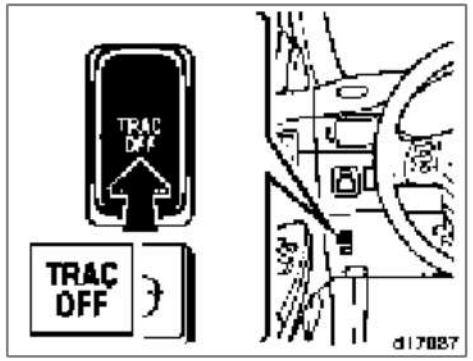
**Leave the system on during the ordinary driving so that it can operate when needed.**

You may hear a sound in the engine compartment for a few seconds when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This means that the traction control system is in the self-check mode, but does not indicate a malfunction.

When the traction control system is operating, the following conditions occur:

- The system controls the spinning of the front wheels. At this time, the slip indicator light blinks.
- You may feel vibration or noise in your vehicle, caused by operation of the brakes. This indicates the system is functioning properly.

The slip indicator light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition key is turned to "ON". If the indicator light does not come on when the ignition is turned on, contact your Toyota dealer.




**TRACTION CONTROL OFF MODE**

**When getting the vehicle out of mud or newly fallen snow, etc., turn off the traction control system. This system that controls engine performance interferes with the process of freeing front wheels.**

**To turn off: Push "TRAC OFF" switch.**

The "TRAC OFF" indicator light will come on.

The vehicle stability control system is always activated, even if the traction control system is turned off.

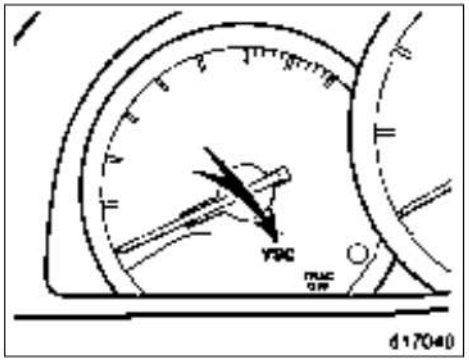
**To turn on: Push "TRAC OFF" switch once again.**

The "TRAC OFF" indicator light will go off.

"TRAC OFF" indicator light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition key is turned to "ON". It will come on again when you push the "TRAC OFF" switch to turn off the system.

In the following cases, contact your Toyota dealer:

- The indicator light does not come on when the ignition key is turned "ON".
- The indicator light remains on after the ignition is turned on.
- The indicator light comes on with the normal driving mode while driving.




**"VSC" warning light**

This light warns that there is a problem somewhere in the traction control system or the vehicle stability control system.

The light will come on when the ignition key is turned to "ON" and will go off after a few seconds.

If the light comes on while driving, the system does not work. However, as conventional braking operates when applied, there is no problem to continue your driving.

In the following cases, contact your Toyota dealer:

- The warning light does not come on after the ignition key is turned to "ON".
- The warning light remains on after the ignition key is turned to "ON".
- The warning light comes on while driving.

The "TRAC OFF" indicator light will come on when the "VSC" warning light comes on even if the "TRAC OFF" switch is not pushed.

## Vehicle stability control system

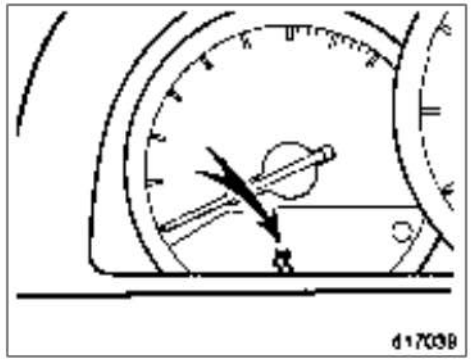
**The vehicle stability control system helps provide integrated control of the systems such as anti-lock brake system, traction control, engine control, etc. This system automatically controls the brakes and engine to help prevent the vehicle from skidding when cornering on a slippery road surface or operating steering wheel abruptly.**

This system will activate when your vehicle speed reaches or exceeds 15 km/h (9 mph), and will deactivate when the vehicle speed reduces to below 15 km/h (9 mph).

You may hear a sound in the engine compartment for a few seconds when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This means that the system is in the self-check mode, but does not indicate a malfunction.

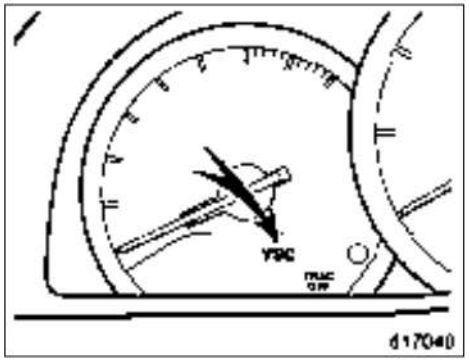
**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not rely excessively on the vehicle stability control system. Even if the vehicle stability control system is operating, you must always drive carefully and attentively to avoid serious injury. Reckless driving will result in an unexpected accident. If the slip indicator light flashes, an alarm sounds, and special care should be taken while driving.**
- **Only use tires of specified size. The size, manufacture, brand and tread pattern for all 4 tires should be the same. If you use the tires other than specified, or different type or size, the vehicle stability control system may not function correctly. When replacing the tires or wheels, contact your Toyota dealer. (See "Checking and replacing tires" on page 308 in Section 7-2.)**
- **In situations where the road surface is covered with ice or snow, your vehicle should be fitted with snow tires or tire chains.**




If the vehicle is going to skid during driving, the slip indicator light blinks and an alarm sounds intermittently. Special care should be taken while driving.

The slip indicator light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition key is turned to "ON". If the indicator light does not come on when the ignition is turned on, contact your Toyota dealer.




**"VSC" warning light**

This light warns that there is a problem somewhere in the vehicle stability control system or the traction control system.

The light will come on when the ignition key is turned to "ON" and will go off after a few seconds.

If the light comes on while driving, the system does not work. However, as conventional braking operates when applied, there is no problem to continue your driving.

In the following cases, contact your Toyota dealer:

- ◀The warning light does not come on after the ignition key is turned to "ON".
- ◀The warning light remains on after the ignition key is turned to "ON".
- ◀The warning light comes on while driving.

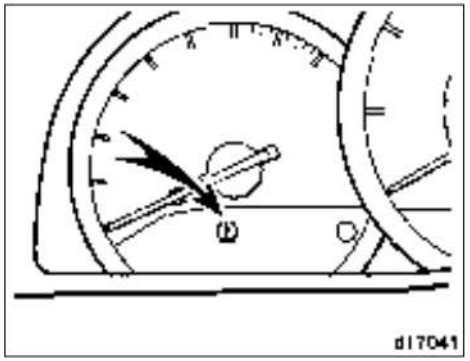
The "TRAC OFF" indicator light will come on when the "VSC" warning light comes on even if the "TRAC OFF" switch is not pushed.

## Tire pressure warning system

**The tire pressure warning system is designed to provide warning when tire inflation pressure of any one of the tires is critically low while the vehicle is moving. The low tire pressure warning light comes on to inform you that such low tire pressure may hamper driving.**

This system is not designed to operate when the vehicle is stopped. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly. The recommended cold tire inflation pressure, tire size and the vehicle capacity weight are on the tire and loading information label. (For instructions, see "Checking tire inflation pressure" on page 305 in Section 7- 2.)

Installed tires should be of the specified size. They should be of the same size and construction. If tires other than the specified size are used, or if tires of different sizes or constructions are mixed, the tire pressure warning system will not function properly.




**LOW TIRE PRESSURE WARNING LIGHT**

This light comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. It goes off after a few seconds. This indicates that the tire pressure warning system is functioning properly.

**If the low tire pressure warning light comes on or blinks while driving, do the following.**

**If the warning light comes on:**

1. **Check that the tire inflation pressure is at the specified level. (See "Tires" on page 330 in Section 8.)**
2. **If the tire inflation pressure is low, adjust the tire inflation pressure. Push the tire pressure warning system reset switch for approximately 1 second and make sure the warning light goes off.**
3. **If the tire inflation pressure is normal, the low tire pressure warning system may not have been set correctly. Push and hold the tire pressure warning system reset switch until the warning light blinks three times to reset the system.**

   For details, see "TIRE PRESSURE WARNING SYSTEM RESET SWITCH".

If the light remains on after the reset switch has been pushed, have the tire pressure warning system checked at your Toyota dealer.

If you have a flat tire, replace it with the spare tire. For details, see "If you have a flat tire" on page 261 in Section 4.

**If the warning light blinks once every second:**

The low tire pressure warning system may be malfunctioning. Contact your Toyota dealer.

**If the warning light blinks twice every second:**

The low tire pressure warning system needs to be initialized. Reset the system with the tire pressure warning system reset switch. (To reset the system, see "TIRE PRESSURE WARNING SYSTEM RESET SWITCH".)

**The tire pressure warning system does not function properly under certain circumstances. In the following cases, the low tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.**

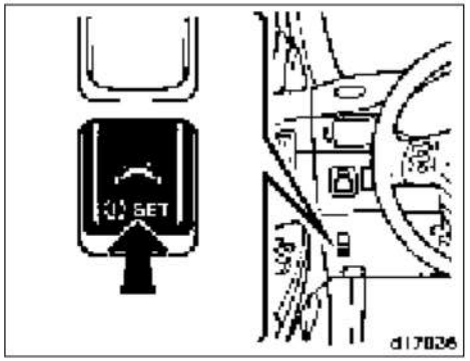
- ◀A compact spare tire, snow tires, or tire chains are used.
- ◀The tire inflation pressure is excessively higher than specified, or tire inflation pressure suddenly drops due to bursting or other causes.
- ◀The vehicle is driven on a slippery road surface such as rough or frozen roads.
- ◀The vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph) or more than 100 km/h (62 mph), and the driving duration is less than 5 minutes.
- ◀The tires differ in tread pattern or manufacturer.
- ◀The tires are not the specified size.
- ◀The tread wear is very different among the installed tires.
- ◀The pressure of two or more tires drops at the same time.
- ◀Rapid acceleration/deceleration or sharp turns is continued.
- ◀The loading is over the limit or imbalanced.
- ◀Initialization was not performed correctly after replacing or rotating tires or wheels.
- ◀The outside temperature is below 0°C (32°F) or above 40°C (104°F).

**⚠ CAUTION**

When the tire pressure warning light comes on, observe the following instructions:

- Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level as soon as possible.
- Avoid abrupt steering wheel maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes, causing death or serious injury.

Note: (!) The tire pressure monitoring system on your vehicle will warn you when one of your tires is significantly under-inflated and when some combinations of your tires are significantly under-inflated. However, there are other combinations of significantly under-inflated tires for which your tire pressure monitoring system may not warn you. These other combinations are relatively common, accounting for approximately half the instances in which vehicles have significantly under-inflated tires. For example, your system may not warn you when both tires on the same side or on the same axle of your vehicle are significantly under-inflated. It is particularly important, therefore, for you to check the tire pressure in all of your tires regularly and maintain proper pressure.




**TIRE PRESSURE WARNING SYSTEM RESET SWITCH**

The tire pressure warning system needs to be initialized in the following conditions:

- When the low tire pressure warning light blinks twice every second
- After replacing or rotating tires or wheels

When initializing the system, the present tire condition is stored as a standard.

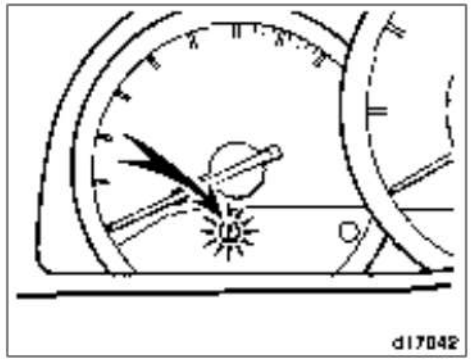
**To initialize the system, perform the following:**

1. Park the vehicle at a safe place and apply the parking brake. Stop the engine.
2. Adjust the pressure of all the installed tires to the specified level. (See "Tires" on page 330 in Section 8.)
3. Turn the ignition key to "ON".

   If the low tire pressure warning light comes on, push the reset switch for a few seconds and make sure the warning light goes off.
4. Push and hold the reset switch until the low tire pressure warning light blinks three times.

Initialization is completed after driving at the speeds of 30 km/h (19 mph) or over for more than one hour. If the following driving conditions are satisfied, initialization will be completed in about one hour.

- The vehicle speed is between 50 km/h (31 mph) and 100 km/h (62 mph).
- The roads are dry, smooth and straight.
- The number of passengers is 1 or 2 (including driver).




When initializing the system, make sure the low tire pressure warning light blinks three times. If the warning light does not blink three times, initializing will not occur and the tire pressure warning system will not function properly.

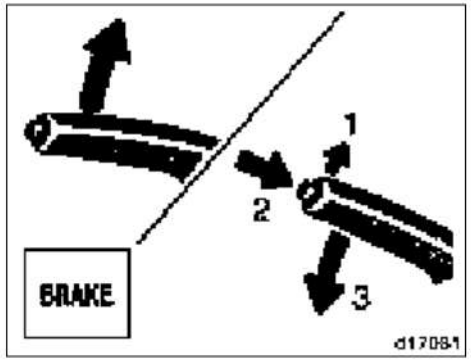
Do not push the reset switch without adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the low tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

If you push the reset switch while the vehicle is moving, initialization is not performed.

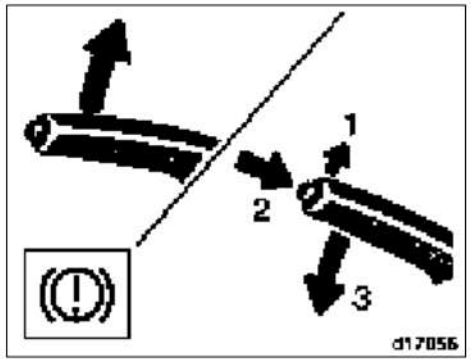
If the low tire pressure warning light does not blink when you push and hold the reset switch, have the low pressure warning system checked at your Toyota dealer.

When the warning light blinks twice every second while driving, you may be unable to reset the system. In this case, set the system again according to the above procedure.

## Parking brake




For the U.S.A.




For Canada

**When parking, firmly apply the parking brake to avoid inadvertent creeping.**

To set: Pull up the lever. For better holding power, first depress the brake pedal and hold it while setting the parking brake.
To release: Pull up the lever slightly (1), press the lock release button (2), and lower (3).

To remind you that the parking brake is set, the parking brake reminder light in the instrument panel remains on until you release the parking brake.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Before driving, be sure the parking brake is fully released and the parking brake reminder light is off.**

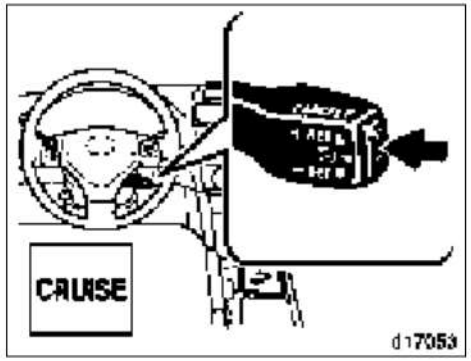
## Cruise control

**The cruise control allows you to cruise the vehicle at a desired speed over 40 km/h (25 mph) even with your foot off the accelerator pedal.**

Your cruising speed can be maintained up or down grades within the limits of engine performance, although a slight speed change may occur when driving up or down the grades. On steeper hills, a greater speed change will occur so it is better to drive without the cruise control.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **To help maintain maximum control of your vehicle, do not use the cruise control when driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads.**
- **Avoid vehicle speed increases when driving downhill. If the vehicle speed is too fast in relation to the cruise control set speed, cancel the cruise control then downshift the transmission to use engine braking to slow down.**

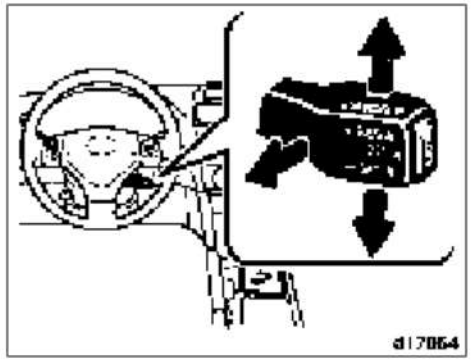



### TURNING THE SYSTEM ON

To operate the cruise control, press the "ON- OFF" button. This turns the system on. The indicator light in the instrument panel shows that you can now set the vehicle at a desired cruising speed. Another press will turn the system completely off.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**To avoid accidental cruise control engagement, keep the "ON- OFF" button off when not using the cruise control.**




### SETTING A DESIRED SPEED

On vehicles with automatic transmission, the transmission must be in "D" before you set the cruise control speed.

Bring your vehicle to the desired speed, push the lever down in the "- SET" direction and release it. This sets the vehicle at that speed. If the speed is not satisfactory, tap the lever up for a faster speed, or tap it down for a slower speed. Each tap changes the set speed by 1.6 km/h (1.0 mph). You can now take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If you need acceleration—for example, when passing—depress the accelerator pedal enough for the vehicle to exceed the set speed. When you release it, the vehicle will return to the speed set prior to the acceleration.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**For manual transmission:**

**While driving with the cruise control on, do not shift to neutral without depressing the clutch pedal, as this may cause engine racing or overrevving.**

### CANCELLING THE PRESET SPEED

You can cancel the preset speed by:

a. Pulling the lever in the "CANCEL" direction and releasing it.

b. Depressing the brake pedal.

c. Depressing the clutch pedal (manual transmission).

d. Pressing the "ON- OFF" button.

If the vehicle speed falls below about 40 km/h (25 mph), the preset speed will automatically cancel out.

If the vehicle speed drops 16 km/h (10 mph) below the preset speed, the preset speed will also automatically cancel out.

If the preset speed automatically cancels out other than for the above cases, have your vehicle checked by your Toyota dealer at the earliest opportunity.

**RESETTING TO A FASTER SPEED**

Push the lever up in the "+ RES" direction and hold it. Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. While the lever is held up, the vehicle will gradually gain speed.

However, a faster way to reset is to accelerate the vehicle and then push the lever down in the "- SET" direction.

**RESETTING TO A SLOWER SPEED**

Push the lever down in the "- SET" direction and hold it. Release the lever when the desired speed is attained. While the lever is held down, the vehicle speed will gradually decrease.

However, a faster way to reset is to depress the brake pedal and then push the lever down in the "- SET" direction.

Vehicles with automatic transmission—Even if you downshift from the "D" or "5" (fifth range) to the "4" (fourth range) with the cruise control on, engine braking will not be enabled because the cruise control is not cancelled. To decrease the vehicle speed, reset to a slower speed with the cruise control lever or depress the brake pedal. If you use the brake pedal, cruise control is cancelled.

**RESUMING THE PRESET SPEED**

If the preset speed is cancelled by pulling the control lever or by depressing the brake pedal or clutch pedal, pushing the lever up in the "+ RES" direction will restore the speed set prior to cancellation.

If the preset speed is cancelled when vehicle speed falls below about 40 km/h (25 mph), the preset speed will be resumed by pushing the control lever up in the "+ RES" direction when vehicle speed exceeds about 40 km/h (25 mph) again.

**CRUISE CONTROL FAILURE WARNING**

If the "CRUISE" indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes when using the cruise control, press the "ON- OFF" button to turn the system off and then press it again to turn it on.

If any of the following conditions then occurs, there is some trouble in the cruise control system.

- ◀The indicator light does not come on.
- ◀The indicator light flashes again.
- ◀The indicator light goes out after it comes on.

If this is the case, contact your Toyota dealer and have your vehicle inspected.

# SECTION 1- 8

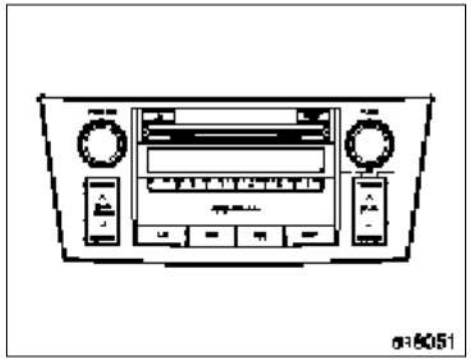
# OPERATION OF INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

## Audio system

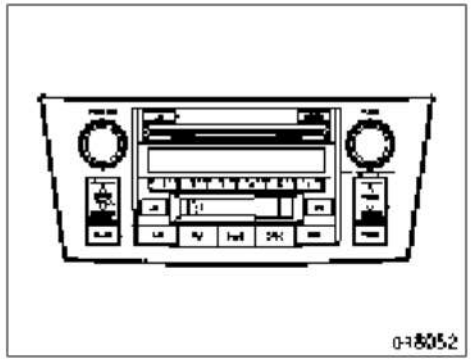
Reference ..... 158
Using your audio system ..... 158
Audio remote controls ..... 176
Audio system operating hints ..... 178

For vehicle equipped with Navigation system, please refer to the separate "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

## Reference



Type 1: AM·FM radio/compact disc player (with compact disc changer controller)



Type 2: AM·FM radio/cassette player/compact disc player with changer (with XM satellite radio* controller)

*: Use of satellite radio requires XM tuner and service. Contact your Toyota dealer for details.

## Using your audio system——Some basics

This section describes some of the basic features on Toyota audio systems. Some information may not pertain to your system.

Your audio system works when the ignition key is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

**TURNING THE SYSTEM ON AND OFF**

Push "PWR·VOL" to turn the audio system on and off.

Push "AM", "FM1", "FM2", "FM", "SAT"*, "TAPE" or "DISC" to turn on that function without pushing "PWR·VOL".

You can turn on each player by inserting a cassette tape or compact disc.

You can turn off each player by ejecting the cassette tape or compact disc. If the audio system was previously off, then the entire audio system will be turned off when you eject the cassette tape or compact disc. If another function was previously playing, it will come on again.

*: Use of satellite radio requires XM tuner and service. Contact your Toyota dealer for details.

**SWITCHING BETWEEN FUNCTIONS**

Push "AM", "FM1", "FM2", "FM", "SAT"*, "TAPE" or "DISC" if the system is already on but you want to switch from one function to another.

*: Use of satellite radio requires XM tuner and service. Contact your Toyota dealer for details.

**LISTENING TO THE XM SATELLITE RADIO BROADCAST* (type 2)**

To listen to a satellite radio broadcast in your vehicle, an additional genuine Toyota satellite receiver and antenna (or equivalents) must be purchased and installed. A subscription to the XM satellite radio service is also necessary.

*: Use of satellite radio requires XM tuner and service. Contact your Toyota dealer for details.

**How to subscribe to an XM satellite radio**

An XM satellite radio is a tuner designed exclusively to receive broadcasts provided under a separate subscription. Availability is limited to the 48 contiguous states.

How to subscribe:
You must enter into a separate service agreement with the XM radio in order to receive satellite broadcast programming in the vehicle. Additional activation and service subscription fees apply that are not included in the purchase price of the vehicle and optional digital satellite tuner. For complete information on subscription rates and terms, or to subscribe to the XM radio, visit XM on the web at www.xmradio.com or call an XM's Listener Care at (800) 852- 9696. The XM radio is solely responsible for the quality, availability and content of the satellite radio services provided, which are subject to the terms and conditions of the XM radio customer service agreement.

Customers should have their radio ID ready; the radio ID can be found by tuning to "channel 000" on the radio. For details, see "Displaying the radio ID" below.

All fees and programming are the responsibility of the XM satellite radio and are subject to change.

Satellite tuner technology notice:
Toyota's satellite radio tuners are awarded Type Approval Certificates from XM Satellite Radio Inc. on "March 10, 2003" and "April 15, 2003" as proof of compatibility with the services offered by the XM satellite radio.

**Displaying the radio ID**

Each XM tuner is identified with a unique radio ID. You will need the radio ID when activating XM service or when reporting a problem.

If you select the "CH 000" using the "TUNE" button, the ID code of 8 alphanumeric characters appears. If you select another channel, display of the ID code is canceled. The channel (000) alternates the display between the radio ID and the specific radio ID code.

## TONE AND BALANCE

For details about your system's tone and balance controls, see the description of your own system.

### Tone

How good an audio program sounds to you is largely determined by the mix of the treble, midrange (type 2 only), and bass levels. In fact, different kinds of music and vocal programs usually sound better with different mixes of treble, midrange, and bass.

### Balance

A good balance of the left and right stereo channels and of the front and rear sound levels is also important.

Keep in mind that if you are listening to a stereo recording or broadcast, changing the right/left balance will increase the volume of one group of sounds while decreasing the volume of another.

## SOUND ADJUSTING FUNCTION (convertible with 7 speakers)

The audio system automatically adjusts the sound to the suitable tone according to the convertible top condition.

When the tone level is adjusted, audio will be muted momentarily.

## YOUR RADIO ANTENNA

Coupe—Your vehicle has an antenna printed on the inside of the rear window.

**NOTICE**

***Attaching film (especially conductive or metallic type) on the rear glass will noticeably reduce the sensitivity of the radio.***

Convertible—Your vehicle has a mast type antenna.

To remove the antenna, carefully turn it counterclockwise.

## YOUR CASSETTE PLAYER

When you insert a cassette, the exposed tape should face to the right.

**NOTICE**

***Do not oil any part of the player and do not insert anything other than cassette tapes into the slot, or the tape player may be damaged.***

## YOUR COMPACT DISC PLAYER (type 1)

When you insert a disc, gently push it in with the label side up. The player will play from track 1 through to the end of the disc. Then it will play from track 1 again.

**NOTICE**

***Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the compact disc player. Do not insert anything other than compact discs into the slot.***

### 8 cm (3 in.) compact disc singles

Your compact disc player does not need an adaptor to play compact disc singles. Compact disc singles are about 8 cm (3 in.) in diameter- smaller than standard discs.

After you eject a compact disc single, do not insert a standard 12 cm (4.7 in.) disc until "DISC" disappears from the display.

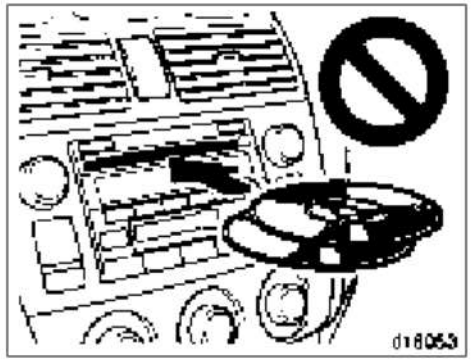
**NOTICE**

***Do not use an adaptor for compact disc singles—it could cause tracking errors or interfere with the ejection of compact discs.***

**YOUR COMPACT DISC PLAYER WITH CHANGER (type 2)**

When you insert a disc, push the "LOAD" button and gently push the disc in with the label side up. The player will play from track 1 through to the end of the disc. Then it will play from track 1 of the next disc.

The player is intended for use with 12 cm (4.7 in.) discs only.

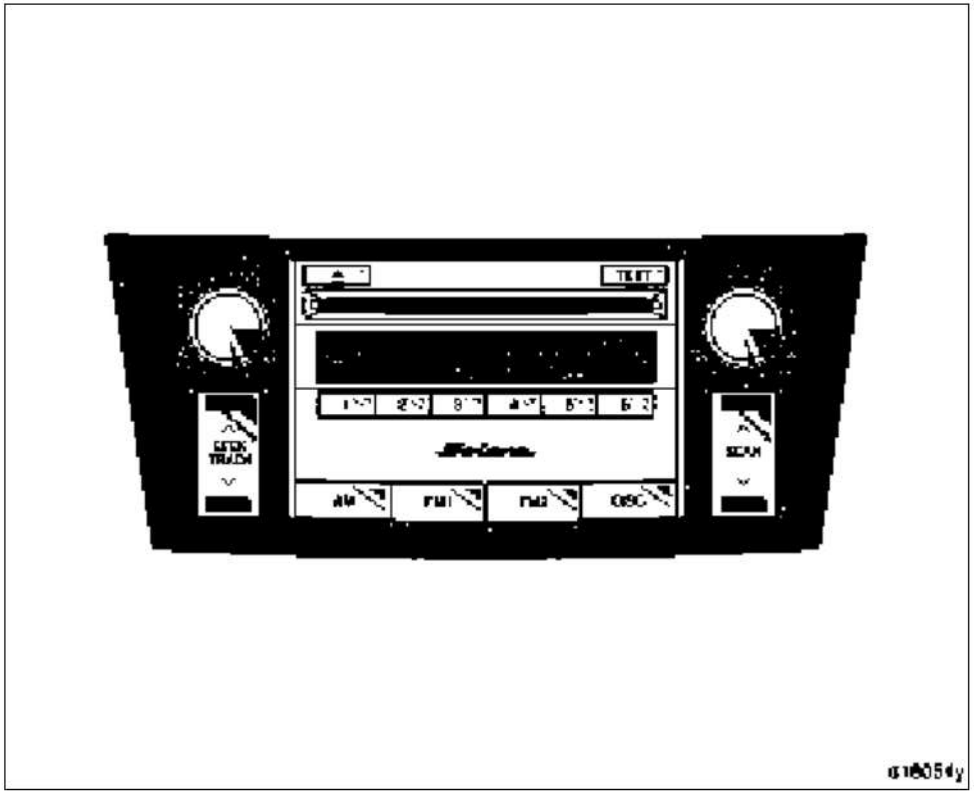



***NOTICE***

- ***Do not stack up two discs for insertion, or it will cause damage to the compact disc player. Insert only one compact disc into slot at a time.***
- ***Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the compact disc player. Do not insert anything other than compact discs into the slot.***

## —Controls and features

◀Type 1



Details of specific buttons, controls and features are described in the alphabetical list that follows.

**1 2 3 4 5 6 (Preset buttons)**

These buttons are used to preset and tune in radio stations.

To preset a station to a button: Tune in the desired station. (See "TUNE" or "SEEK".) Push and hold down the button until you hear a beep—this will set the station to the button. The preset button number will appear on the display.

To recall a preset station: Push the button for the station you want. The preset button number and station frequency will appear on the display.

This radio can store one AM and two FM stations for each button. (The display will show "AM", "FM1" or "FM2" when you push "AM", "FM1" or "FM2" button.)

**⏏ (Eject button)**

Push the compact disc eject button to eject a compact disc.

**◀◀/▶▶ (Reverse/Fast-forward button)**

Push and hold "▶▶" (preset button 6) or "◀◀" (preset button 5) to fast forward or reverse within a compact disc. When you release the button, the compact disc player will resume playing.

**AM**

Push the "AM" button to turn on the radio and select the AM band. "AM" will appear on the display.

**AUDIO CONTROL (Tone and sound balance adjustment function)**

Each time you push the "AUDIO CONTROL" knob, the mode changes. To adjust the tone and balance, turn the knob.

BAS: Adjusts low-pitched tones. The display ranges from -5 to 5.

TRE: Adjusts high-pitched tones. The display ranges from -5 to 5.

FAD: Adjusts the sound balance between the front and rear speakers. The display ranges from F7 to R7.

BAL: Adjusts the sound balance between the right and left speakers. The display ranges from L7 to R7.

**DISC (Compact disc)**

Push the "DISC" button to play a compact disc.

When the audio system is set into compact disc operation, the display shows the track, or track and disc number currently being played.

**Error messages**

If the player malfunctions, your audio system will display one of the following error messages.

**"WAIT":** The compact disc player unit may be too hot. Allow the player to cool down.

**"ERROR 1":** The disc may be dirty, damaged or inserted incorrectly (up-side down). Clean the disc and re-insert it.

**"NO DISC":** The compact disc changer of separate unit is empty. Insert a disc.

**"ERROR 3":** There is a problem inside the system. Eject the disc or magazine. Set the disc or magazine again.

**"ERROR 4":** Over-current. Ask your Toyota dealer to inspect.

**"CD OPEN":** The compact disc changer lid of separate unit is open. Close the compact disc changer lid.

**If the malfunction still exists,** take your vehicle to your Toyota dealer.

**± DISC ×**

With compact disc changer only—

Use these buttons to select a disc you want to listen to.

Push “±” (preset button 3) or “×” (preset button 4) until the number of the disc you want to listen appears on the display.

**FM1 FM2**

Push the “FM1” or “FM2” button to turn on the radio and select the FM band. “FM1” or “FM2” will appear on the display. This system allows you to set twelve FM stations, two for each of the preset button.

**PWR·VOL (Power and Volume)**

Push “PWR·VOL” to turn the audio system on and off. Turn “PWR·VOL” to adjust the volume.

**RAND (Random)**

There are two random features—you can either listen to the tracks on one compact disc in random order, or listen to the tracks on all the compact discs in the magazine in random order.

To play the tracks on one disc in random order:
Quickly push and release “RAND” (preset button 1). “RAND” will appear on the display and the player will perform the tracks on the disc you are listening to in random order. To turn off the random feature, push this button again.

With compact disc changer only—

To play all the tracks in the magazine in random order:
Push and hold “RAND” (preset button 1) until you hear a beep. “ALL·RAND” will appear on the display and the player will perform all the tracks on all the discs in the magazine in random order. To turn off the random feature, push this button again.

**RPT (Repeat)**

There are two repeat features—you can either replay a disc track or a whole compact disc.

Repeating a track:
Quickly push and release “RPT” (preset button 2) while the track is playing. “RPT” will appear on the display. When the track ends, it will automatically replay. To turn off the repeat feature, push this button again.

With compact disc changer only—

Repeating a disc:
Push and hold “RPT” (preset button 2) until you hear a beep. “ALL·RPT” will appear on the display. The player will repeat all the tracks on the disc you are listening to. When the disc ends, the player will automatically go back to the first track on the disc and replay. To turn off the repeat feature, push this button again.

**SCAN**

**Radio**

You can either scan all the frequencies on a band or scan only the preset stations for that band.

To scan all the frequencies:
Quickly push and release "×" or "±" side of the "SCAN" button. The radio will find the next station up the station band, stay there for 5 seconds, and then scan again to the next station. To stop scanning, push "×" or "±" side of this button again.

To scan the preset stations:
Push and hold "×" or "±" side of the "SCAN" button until you hear a beep. The radio will tune in the next preset station up or down the band, stay there for 5 seconds, and then move to the next preset station. To stop scanning, push "×" or "±" side of this button again.

**Compact disc player**

There are two scan features—you can either scan the tracks on a specific disc or scan the first tracks of all the discs in the magazine.

Scanning the tracks on a disc:
Quickly push and release "×" or "±" side of the "SCAN" button. "SCAN" will appear on the display and the player will scan all the tracks on the disc you are listening to. To stop scanning, push "×" or "±" side of this button again. If the player scanned all the tracks on the disc, it will stop scanning.

With compact disc changer only—

Scanning the first tracks of all the discs in the magazine:
Push and hold "×" or "±" side of the "SCAN" button until you hear a beep. "·SCAN" will appear on the display and the player will scan the first track of the next disc. To stop scanning, push "×" or "±" side of this button again. If the player has scanned all the discs, it will stop scanning.

**SEEK/TRACK (Seeking/Track up/down)**

**Radio**

In the seek mode, the radio finds and plays the next station up or down the station band.

To seek the next station, quickly push and release "×" or "±" side of the "SEEK/TRACK" button. Do this again to find the station after that.

**Compact disc player**

Use this button to skip up or down to a different track.

Push "×" or "±" side of the "SEEK/TRACK" button until the number of the track you want to listen to appears on the display. If you want to return to the beginning of the current track, quickly push the down side of the button one time.

**ST (Stereo reception) display**

Your radio automatically changes to stereo reception when a stereo broadcast is received. "ST" appears on the display. If the signal becomes weak, the radio reduces the amount of channel separation to prevent the weak signal from creating noise. If the signal becomes extremely weak, the radio switches from stereo to mono reception.

**TEXT**

This button is used to change the display for the compact disc that contains text data.

To change the display, quickly push and release the "TEXT" button while the compact disc is playing. The display changes in the order from the elapsed time to disc title to track title, then back to the elapsed time.

If this button is pushed while a compact disc that does not contain text data is playing, "NO TITLE" will appear on the display.

If the entire disc or track title does not appear on the display, push and hold the button until you hear a beep. The rest of the title will appear.

**TUNE (Tuning)**

Turn the "TUNE" knob clockwise to step up the frequency. Turn the knob counterclockwise to step down the frequency.

◀Type 2




Details of specific buttons, controls and features are described in the alphabetical list that follows.

**1 2 3 4 5 6 (Preset buttons)**

These buttons are used to preset and tune in radio stations.

To preset a station to a button: Tune in the desired station. (See "TUNE" or "SEEK/TRACK".) Push and hold down the button until you hear a beep—this will set the station to the button. The preset button number will appear on the display.

To recall a preset station: Push the button for the station you want. The preset button number and station frequency will appear on the display.

This radio can store one AM and two FM stations for each button. (The display will show "AM", "FM1", or "FM2" when you push "AM", or "FM" button.)

XM satellite radio*—

These buttons are used to preset and tune in radio channels.

To preset a channel to a button: Tune in the desired channel. (See "TUNE" or "SEEK/TRACK".) Push and hold down the button until you hear a beep—this will set the channel to the button. The preset button number will appear on the display.

To recall a preset channel: Push the button for the channel you want. The preset button number and channel number will appear on the display.

This radio can store three XM channels for each button. (The display will show "SAT1", "SAT2" or "SAT3" when you push "SAT" button.)

*: Use of satellite radio requires XM tuner and service. Contact your Toyota dealer for details.

**⏏ (Eject button)**

**Cassette player**

This button is used to eject a cassette.

**Compact disc player**

This button is used to eject one or all compact discs.

To eject the current compact disc, push and release the compact disc eject button.

To eject a specific disc, push "±" (preset button 3) or "×" (preset button 4) until the number of the disc you want to eject is displayed. Push and release the eject button.

To eject all discs at a time, press and hold the eject button until you hear a beep. The last compact disc played before pushing the button will be ejected first. If the ejected disc is not removed for a long time, the eject function will be cancelled.

**◀‖▶ (Program)**

Push "◀‖▶" (preset button 4) to select the other side of a cassette tape. The display indicates which side is currently selected ("▲" indicates the top side, "▼" indicates the bottom side).

Auto-reverse feature: After the cassette player reaches the end of a tape side, it automatically reverses and begins to play the other side. This is true whether the cassette was playing or fast forwarding.

**◀◀/▶▶ (Reverse/Fast-forward button)**

**Cassette player**

Push "▶▶" (preset button 6) to fast-forward a cassette tape. "FF" will appear on the display. Push "◀◀" (preset button 5) to rewind a tape. "REW" will appear on the display.

To stop the tape while it is fast-forwarding, push "▶▶" or "TAPE" button. To stop the tape while it is rewinding, push "◀◀" or "TAPE" button.

If a tape rewinds completely, the cassette player will stop and then play that same side. If a tape fast-forwards completely, the cassette will play the other side of the tape using the auto-reverse feature.

**Compact disc player**

Push and hold "▶▶" (preset button 6) or "◀◀" (preset button 5) to fast forward or reverse within a compact disc. When you release the button, the compact disc player will resume playing.

**AM**

Push the "AM" button to turn on the radio and select the AM band. "AM" will appear on the display.

**AUDIO CONTROL (Tone and sound balance adjustment function)**

Each time you push the "AUDIO CONTROL" knob, the mode changes. To adjust the tone and balance, turn the knob.

BAS: Adjusts low-pitched tones. The display ranges from -5 to 5.

MID: Adjusts mid-pitched tones. The display ranges from -5 to 5.

TRE: Adjusts high-pitched tones. The display ranges from -5 to 5.

FAD: Adjusts the sound balance between the front and rear speakers. The display ranges from F7 to R7.

BAL: Adjusts the sound balance between the right and left speakers. The display ranges from L7 to R7.

**DISC (Compact disc)**

Push the "DISC" button to play a compact disc.

When the audio system is set into compact disc operation, the display shows the track, or track and disc number currently being played.

**Error messages**

If the player malfunctions, your audio system will display one of the six following error messages.

**"WAIT":** The compact disc player unit may be too hot. Allow the player to cool down.

**"ERROR 1":** The disc may be dirty, damaged or inserted incorrectly (up-side down). Clean the disc and re-insert it.

**"NO DISC":** The compact disc changer of separate unit is empty. Insert a disc.

**"ERROR 3":** There is a problem inside the system. Eject the disc or magazine. Set the disc or magazine again.

**"ERROR 4":** Over-current. Ask your Toyota dealer to inspect.

**"CD OPEN":** The compact disc changer lid of separate unit is open. Close the compact disc changer lid.

**If the malfunction still exists,** take your vehicle to your Toyota dealer.

**± DISC ×**

Use these buttons to select a disc you want to listen to.

Push "±" (preset button 3) or "×" (preset button 4) until the number of the disc you want to listen appears on the display.

**Dolby◆ DD B NR***

If you are listening to a tape that was recorded with Dolby◆ B Noise Reduction, push "DD" (preset button 3). "DD" will appear on the display. Push the button again to turn off Dolby◆ B NR.

The Dolby NR mode reduces tape noise by about 10 dB. For best sound reproduction, play your tapes with this button on or off according to the mode used to record the tape.

*: Dolby noise reduction manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. "DOLBY" and the double D symbol DD are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

**FM**

Push the "FM" button to turn on the radio and select the FM band. "FM1" or "FM2" will appear on the display. This system allows you to set twelve FM stations, two for each of the preset button.

**LOAD**

This button is used to load the compact discs in the compact disc player. This player can store up to six discs.

To load one compact disc only, quickly push and release the button, then insert a compact disc. After the disc is loaded, the shutter of the slot will close.

If no compact disc is inserted, the shutter will close after 15 seconds.

To load multiple compact discs, push and hold the button (until you hear a beep when the audio system is on), then insert the first compact disc. After the disc is loaded, the shutter of the slot will close. After a few seconds, the shutter will automatically open again so the next disc can be inserted. The same process can be applied for loading the rest of the discs. If the player is full of discs, "DISC FULL" will appear on the display.

If no compact disc is inserted, the shutter will close after 15 seconds.

**PWR·VOL (Power and Volume)**

Push "PWR·VOL" to turn the audio system on and off. Turn "PWR·VOL" to adjust the volume.

**RDS (Radio Data System) display**

The radio will automatically switch to the RDS mode to receive an RDS station while turned to FM broadcasts. "RDS" will appear on the display.

**RAND (Random)**

There are two random features—you can either listen to the tracks on one compact disc in random order, or listen to the tracks on all the compact discs in the magazine in random order.

To play the tracks on one disc in random order:
Quickly push and release "RAND" (preset button 1). "RAND" will appear on the display and the player will perform the tracks on the disc you are listening to in random order. To turn off the random feature, push this button again.

To play all the tracks in the magazine in random order:
Push and hold "RAND" (preset button 1) until you hear a beep. "RAND" will appear on the display and the player will perform all the tracks on all the discs in the magazine in random order. To turn off the random feature, push this button again.

**RPT (Repeat)**

**Cassette player**

Push "RPT" (preset button 2) while the track is playing. "RPT" will appear on the display. When the track ends, it will automatically rewind and replay. To turn off the repeat feature, push this button again.

There must be at least 3 seconds of blank space between tracks in order for the repeat feature to work correctly.

**Compact disc player**

There are two repeat features—you can either replay a disc track or a whole compact disc.

Repeating a track:
Quickly push and release "RPT" (preset button 2) while the track is playing. "RPT" will appear on the display. When the track ends, it will automatically replay. To turn off the repeat feature, push this button again.

Repeating a disc:
Push and hold "RPT" (preset button 2) until you hear a beep. "RPT" will appear on the display. The player will repeat all the tracks on the disc you are listening to. When the disc ends, the player will automatically go back to the first track on the disc and replay. To turn off the repeat feature, push this button again.

**SAT (Satellite radio)**

Push the "SAT" button to turn on the radio and select the XM band. "SAT1", "SAT2" or "SAT3" will appear on the display. This system allows you to set eighteen XM channels, three for each of the preset button.

**Error messages**

If the satellite radio tuner malfunctions, your audio system will display one of the six following error messages.

**"ANTENNA":**

- The XM antenna is not connected. Check whether the XM antenna cable is attached securely.
- A short-circuit occurs in the antenna or the surrounding antenna cable. See a Toyota certified dealer.

**"UPDATING":**

- You have not subscribed to the XM satellite radio. The radio is being updated with the latest encryption code. Contact the XM satellite radio for subscription information. When a contact is canceled, you can choose the "CH000" and all free-to-air channels.
- The premium channel you selected is not authorized. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel. If you want to listen to the premium channel, contact the XM satellite radio.

**"NO SIGNAL":** The XM signal is too weak at the current location. Wait until your vehicle reaches a location with a stronger signal.

**“LOADING”:** The unit is acquiring audio or program information. Wait until the unit has received the information.

**“OFF AIR”:** The channel you selected is not broadcasting any programming. Select another channel.

**“- - -”:** The channel you selected is no longer available. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or “CH001”. If it does not change automatically, select another channel.

The XM Listener Care Center is also available on the phone, please call (800) 852- 9696 during the following hours:
Monday—Saturday: 7 a.m.—1 a.m.
Sunday: 12 p.m.—12 a.m.

*: Use of satellite radio requires XM tuner and service. Contact your Toyota dealer for details.

**SCAN**

**Radio**

You can either scan all the frequencies on a band or scan only the preset stations for that band.

To scan the preset stations:
Push and hold the “SCAN” button until you hear a beep. The radio will tune in the next preset station up the band, stay there for 5 seconds, and then move to the next preset station. To stop scanning, push this button again.

To scan all the frequencies:
Quickly push and release the “SCAN” button. The radio will find the next station up the station band, stay there for 5 seconds, and then scan again to the next station. To stop scanning, push this button again.

XM satellite radio*—

You can either scan the currently selected channel category or scan only the preset channels for that band.

To scan the preset channels:
Push and hold the “SCAN” button until you hear a beep. “SCAN” appears on the display. The radio will tune in the next preset channel up the band, stay there for 5 seconds, and then move to the next preset channel. To stop scanning, push this button again.

To scan the currently selected channel category:
Quickly push and release the “SCAN” button. “SCAN” appears on the display. The radio will find the next channel in the same channel category up the band, stay there for 5 seconds, and then scan again. To stop scanning, push this button again.

*: Use of satellite radio requires XM tuner and service. Contact your Toyota dealer for details.

**Compact disc player**

There are two scan features—you can either scan the tracks on a specific disc or scan the first tracks of all the discs in the magazine.

Scanning the tracks on a disc:
Quickly push and release the "SCAN" button. "SCAN" will appear on the display and the player will scan all the tracks on the disc you are listening to. To stop scanning, push this button again. If the player scanned all the tracks on the disc, it will stop scanning.

Scanning the first tracks of all the discs in the magazine:
Push the "SCAN" button until you hear a beep. "SCAN" will appear on the display and the player will scan the first track of the next disc. To stop scanning, push this button again. If the player has scanned all the discs, it will stop scanning.

**SEEK/TRACK (Seeking/Track up/down)**

**Radio**

In the seek mode, the radio finds and plays the next station up or down the station band.

To seek the next station, quickly push and release "×" or "±" side of the "SEEK/TRACK" button. Do this again to find the station after that.

XM satellite radio*—

To select the next channel within the current channel category, push the "×" or "±" side of the "SEEK/TRACK" button. Repeat until a desired channel is found.

*: Use of satellite radio requires XM tuner and service. Contact your Toyota dealer for details.

**Cassette player**

Use this button to skip up or down to locate a song or recording.

You can select up to nine recordings (including current one).

A blank space of at least 3 seconds is considered to be a start of a recording.

When the beginning of a tape is reached, the player automatically resumes play.

When the end of the tape is reached, the player automatically reverses sides and resumes normal play.

In addition, the feature may not work well with some spoken word, live, or classical recordings.

**Compact disc player**

Use this button to skip up or down to a different track.

Push "×" or "±" side of the "SEEK/TRACK" button until the number of the track you want to listen to appears on the display. If you want to return to the beginning of the current track, quickly push the down side of the button one time.

**ST (Stereo reception) display**

Your radio automatically changes to stereo reception when a stereo broadcast is received. "ST" appears on the display. If the signal becomes weak, the radio reduces the amount of channel separation to prevent the weak signal from creating noise. If the signal becomes extremely weak, the radio switches from stereo to mono reception.

**TAPE**

Push the "TAPE" button to play a cassette tape.

**TEXT**

**Radio**

This button is operational in RDS mode.

When an RDS station transmits a text message, "MSG" will appear on the displayed.

To display the text message, first push the "TEXT" button to change the radio station display. Then push the "TEXT" button once more to display, and the message will appear on the display.

If the entire the message is not displayed, "►" will appear on the display. To display the rest of the message, push and hold the "TEXT" button until you hear a beep.

After the entire message has been displayed, the message will disappear.

The message display will be canceled if any button that affects the display is pushed.

If no messages are received, "NO MESSAGE" will appear on the display, and the display returns to the previous mode.

The message display will be canceled if you activate any function that affects the display.

XM satellite radio*1—

When you push the "TEXT" button, the display changes as follows:
CH NAME → TITLE (SONG/PROGRAM TITLE) → NAME (ARTIST NAME/FEATURE) → CH NUMBER → CH NAME

Up to 10 alphanumeric characters can be displayed. (Some information will not be fully displayed.)

The message display will be canceled if any button that affects the display is pushed.

If there is no song/program title or artist name/feature associated with the channel at that time, "- - - - -" will appear on the display.

This XM tuner supports "Audio Services" (Music and Talk) of only XM satellite radio and "Text Information"*2 linked to the respective audio services.

*1: Use of satellite radio requires XM tuner and service. Contact your Toyota dealer for details.

*2: Text Information includes, Channel Name, (Artist) Name, (Song) Title and Category Name.

**Compact disc player**

This button is used to change the display for the compact disc that contains text data.

To change the display, quickly push and release the "TEXT" button while the compact disc is playing. The display changes in the order from the elapsed time to disc title to track title, then back to the elapsed time.

If this button is pushed while a compact disc that does not contain text data is playing, "NO TITLE" will appear on the display.

If the entire disc or track title does not appear on the display, push and hold the button until you hear a beep. The rest of the title will appear.

**TRAF (Traffic)**

This button turns the traffic announcement (TA) feature on and off. This button is operational only in FM mode.

By pushing the "TRAF" button, "TRAF SEEK" will flash on the display and the radio will seek a traffic program station.

After the traffic announcement program is over, the display returns to the previous mode.

If no traffic program station is found, "NO TRAFINFO" appears on the display, and the display returns to the previous mode and a beep sound.

To cancel the traffic announcement, push this button again.

**TUNE (Tuning)**

Turn the "TUNE" knob clockwise to step up the frequency. Turn the knob counterclockwise to step down the frequency.

XM satellite radio*—

Turn the "TUNE" knob clockwise to step up the channel. Turn the knob counterclockwise to step down the channel.

*: Use of satellite radio requires XM tuner and service. Contact your Toyota dealer for details.

**TYPE**

When you push the "×" or "±" side of the "TYPE" button while receiving an RDS station, the current program type appears on the display.

Each time you push "×" or "±" side of this button, the program type changes as in the following:

- ROCK
- EASY LIS (Easy listening)
- CLS/JAZZ (Classical music and Jazz)
- R&B (Rhythm and Blues)
- INFORM (Information)
- RELIGION
- MISC (Miscellaneous)
- ALERT (Emergency message)

With the program type displayed, push the "SEEK/TRACK" or "SCAN" button. You can seek or scan for the station broad casting the same type of program.

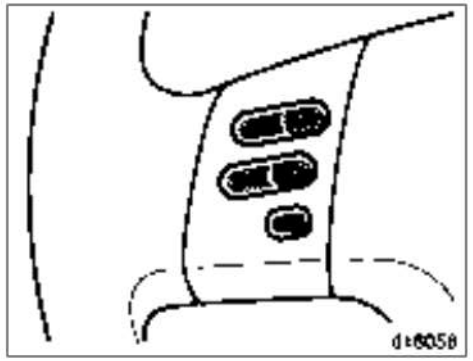
XM satellite radio*—

When you push the "±" or "×" side of the "TYPE" button while receiving a XM channel, the current channel category appears on the display.

When the channel category appears, push either "±" or "×" side of the "TYPE" button to switch to the next or previous category.

*: Use of satellite radio requires XM tuner and service. Contact your Toyota dealer for details.

## Audio remote controls (steering switches)



Some parts of the audio system can be adjusted using the switches on the steering wheel.

Details of the specific switches, controls, and features are described below.

**"- 🔊 +" switch**

Push "+" side to increase the volume. The volume continues to increase while the switch is being pushed.

Push "-" side to decrease the volume. The volume continues to decrease while the switch is being pushed.

**"± ×" switch**

**Radio**

This switch has the following features—

To select a preset station:
Quickly push and release the "×" or "±" side of the switch. Do this again to select the next preset station.

To seek a station:
Push and hold the "×" or "±" side of the switch until you hear a beep. Do this again to find the next station. If you push the switch on either side during the seek mode, seeking will be cancelled.

To step up or down the frequency, push and hold the switch even after you hear a beep. When you release the switch, the radio will begin seeking up or down for a station. Do this again to find the next station.

XM satellite radio*—

To select a preset channel, push the "×" or "±" side of the switch. Repeat until a desired channel is found.

*: Use of satellite radio requires XM tuner and service. Contact your Toyota dealer for details.

**Cassette player**

This switch has the following features—

To skip to a different track in either direction:
Quickly push and release the "×" or "±" side of the switch. "FF 1" or "REW 1" will appear on the display.

Next, push either side of the track switch until the track you want to listen to is set. If you push the switch ten times, the skip function will turn off. (You can skip up to nine tracks at a time.)

When counting the number of the tracks you want to rewind, remember to count the current track as well. For example, if you want to rewind to a song that is two tracks before the song you are listening to, push the "±" side of the switch three times.

If you push the track switch further than you wanted to, push the other side of the switch. The track number will be increased or reduced.

The track number you select is not valid if it is higher than the number of the tracks remaining on the current side of the cassette.

- When the tape reaches to the beginning, the player will automatically start playing that side.
- After the tape reaches to the end, the player will automatically reverse and start playing the other side.

There must be at least 3 seconds of blank space between tracks for the track switch to work correctly. In addition, the feature may not work well with some spoken, live, or classical recordings.

To fast forward or reverse:
Push and hold the "×" side of the switch to fast forward a cassette tape. "FF" will appear on the display. Push and hold the "±" side of the switch to rewind a tape. "REW" will appear on the display.

To stop the tape while it is fast forwarding, push the "×" side of the switch. To stop the tape while it is rewinding, push the "±" side of the switch.

If a tape rewinds completely, the cassette player will stop and then play that same side. If a tape fast forwards completely, the cassette will play the other side of the tape using the auto-reverse feature.

**Compact disc player**

Use this switch to skip up or down to a different track in either direction.

Quickly push and release the "×" or "±" side of the switch until the track you want to listen to is set. If you want to return to the beginning of the current track, push the "±" side of the switch once, quickly.

**"MODE" switch**

Push "MODE" switch to select an audio mode. Each push changes the mode sequentially if the desired mode is ready to use.

To turn the audio system on, push the "MODE" switch.

To turn the audio system off, push and hold the "MODE" switch until the system turns off.

## Audio system operating hints

**NOTICE**

***To ensure correct audio system operations:***

- ***Be careful not to spill beverages over the audio system.***
- ***Do not put anything other than a cassette tape or Compact Disc into the slot.***
- ***The use of a cellular phone inside or near the vehicle may cause a noise from the speakers of the audio system which you are listening to. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.***

### RADIO RECEPTION

Usually, a problem with radio reception does not mean there is a problem with your radio—it is just the normal result of conditions outside the vehicle.

For example, nearby buildings and terrain can interfere with FM reception. Power lines or telephone wires can interfere with AM signals. And of course, radio signals have a limited range. The farther you are from a station, the weaker its signal will be. In addition, reception conditions change constantly as your vehicle moves.

Here are some common reception problems that probably do not indicate a problem with your radio:

FM

Fading and drifting stations—Generally, the effective range of FM is about 40 km (25 miles). Once outside this range, you may notice fading and drifting, which increase with the distance from the radio transmitter. They are often accompanied by distortion.

Multi-path—FM signals are reflective, making it possible for two signals to reach your antenna at the same time. If this happens, the signals will cancel each other out, causing a momentary flutter or loss of reception.

Static and fluttering—These occur when signals are blocked by buildings, trees, or other large objects. Increasing the bass level may reduce static and fluttering.

Station swapping—If the FM signal you are listening to is interrupted or weakened, and there is another strong station nearby on the FM band, your radio may tune in the second station until the original signal can be picked up again.

AM

Fading—AM broadcasts are reflected by the upper atmosphere—especially at night. These reflected signals can interfere with those received directly from the radio station, causing the radio station to sound alternately strong and weak.

Station interference—When a reflected signal and a signal received directly from a radio station are very nearly the same frequency, they can interfere with each other, making it difficult to hear the broadcast.

Static—AM is easily affected by external sources of electrical noise, such as high tension power lines, lightening, or electrical motors. This results in static.

XM*

Alternation or modifications carried out without appropriate authorization may invalidate the user's right to operate the equipment.

**NOTICE**

***This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.***

***If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:***

***—Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.***

***—Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.***

***—Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.***

***—Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.***

*: Use of satellite radio requires XM tuner and service. Contact your Toyota dealer for details.

**CARING FOR YOUR CASSETTE PLAYER AND TAPES**

For the best performance for your cassette player and tapes:

Clean the tape head and other parts regularly.

- A dirty tape head or tape path can decrease sound quality and tangle your cassette tapes. The easiest way to clean them is by using a cleaning tape. (A wet type is recommended.)

Use high-quality cassettes.

- Low-quality cassette tapes can cause many problems, including poor sound, inconsistent playing speed, and constant auto-reversing. They can also get stuck or tangled in the cassette player.
- Do not use a cassette if it has been damaged or tangled or if its label is peeling off.
- Do not leave a cassette in the player if you are not listening to it, especially if it is hot outside.
- Store cassettes in their cases and out of direct sunlight.

° Avoid using cassettes with a total playing time longer than 100 minutes (50 minutes per side). The tape used in these cassettes is thin and could get stuck or tangled in the cassette player.

**CARING FOR YOUR COMPACT DISC PLAYER AND DISCS**

° Type 2 only—Your compact disc player is intended for use with 12 cm (4.7 in.) discs only.

° Extremely high temperatures can keep your compact disc player from working. On hot days, use the air conditioning to cool the vehicle interior before you listen to a disc.

° Bumpy roads or other vibrations may make your compact disc player skip.

° If moisture gets into your compact disc player, you may not hear any sound even though your compact disc player appears to be working. Remove the disc from the player and wait until it dries.

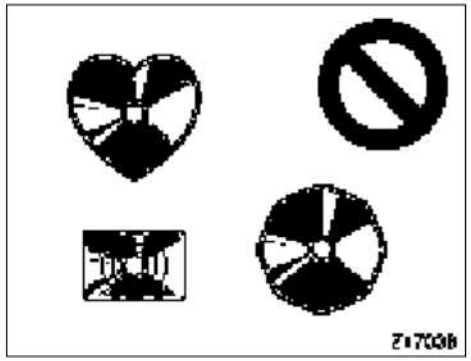
**⚠ CAUTION**

**Compact disc players use an invisible laser beam which could cause hazardous radiation exposure if directed outside the unit. Be sure to operate the player correctly.**

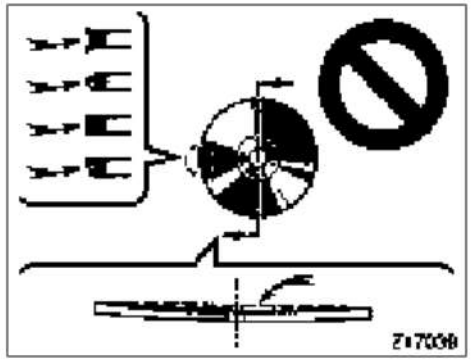



° Use only compact discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your compact disc player.

Copy-protected CD
CD-R (CD-Recordable)
CD-RW (CD-Re-writable)
CD-ROM



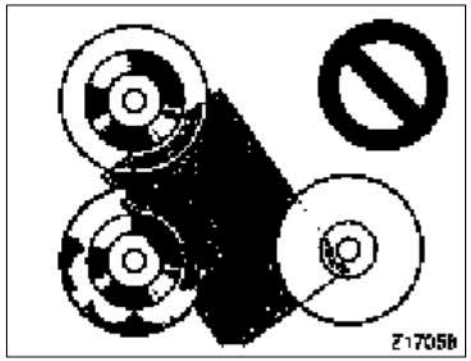
Special shaped discs



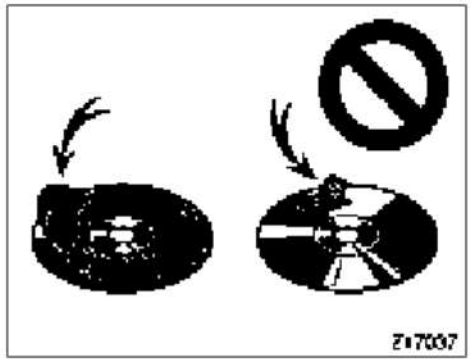
Low quality discs

**NOTICE**

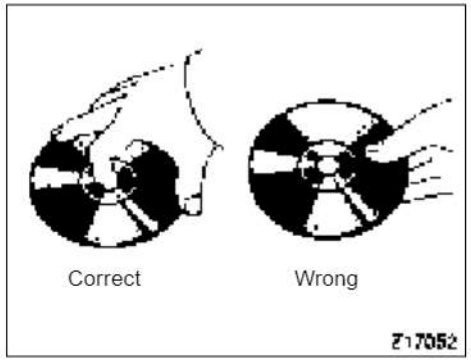
*Do not use special shaped, transparent/translucent, low quality or labeled discs such as those shown in the illustrations. The use of such discs may damage the player or changer, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.*



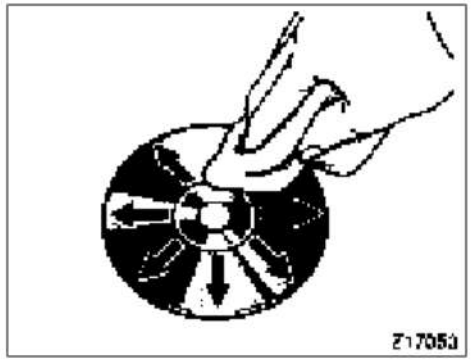
Transparent/translucent discs



Labeled discs




- Handle compact discs carefully, especially when you are inserting them. Hold them on the edge and do not bend them. Avoid getting fingerprints on them, particularly on the shiny side.
- Dirt, scratches, warping, pin holes, or other disc damage could cause the player to skip or to repeat a section of a track. (To see a pin hole, hold the disc up to the light.)
- Remove discs from the compact disc player when you are not listening to them. Store them in their plastic cases away from moisture, heat, and direct sunlight.




To clean a compact disc: Wipe it with a soft, lint-free cloth that has been dampened with water. Wipe in a straight line from the center to the edge of the disc (not in circles). Dry it with another soft, lint-free cloth. Do not use a conventional record cleaner or anti-static device.

# SECTION 1- 9

# OPERATION OF INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS

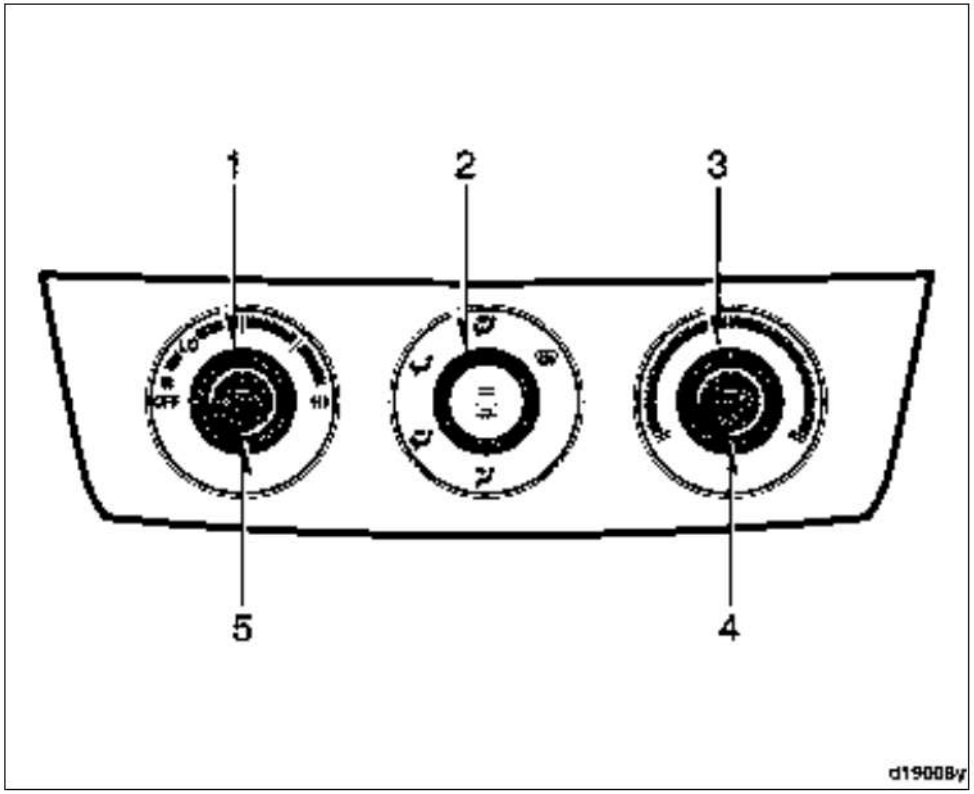
## Air conditioning system

Manual air conditioning system
- Controls . . . . . 184
- Air flow selector settings . . . . . 187
- Operating tips . . . . . 187

Automatic air conditioning system
- Controls . . . . . 190
- Air flow selector settings . . . . . 194
- Operating tips . . . . . 194

Side vents . . . . . 197
Air conditioning filter . . . . . 197

## Manual air conditioning system—
## —Controls



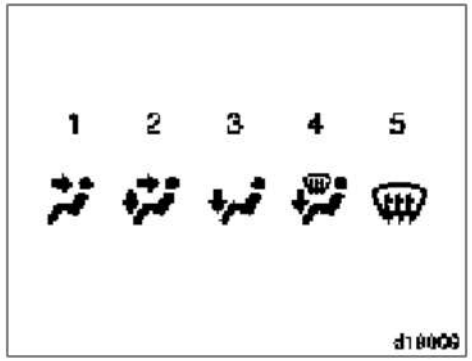

1. Fan speed selector
2. Air flow selector
3. Temperature selector
4. "A/C" button
5. Air intake selector

**Fan speed selector**

Turn the knob to adjust the fan speed—to the right to increase, to the left to decrease.

**Temperature selector**

Turn the knob to adjust the temperature—to the right to warm, to the left to cool.




**Air flow selector**

Turn the knob to select the vents used for air flow.

1. **Panel—**Air flows mainly from the instrument panel vents.
2. **Bi- level—**Air flows from both the floor vents and the instrument panel vents.
3. **Floor—**Air flows mainly from the floor vents.
4. **Floor/Windshield—**Air flows mainly from the floor vents and windshield vents.

   This position allows the air intake to select FRESH automatically. This is to clean up the front view more quickly.

   If you want to return the setting to RECIRCULATE mode, press the air intake selector button once again.

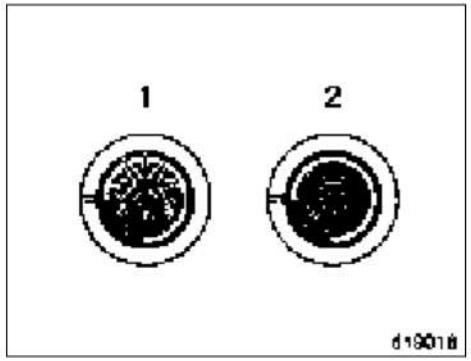
   Press the "A/C" button for dehumidified heating or cooling. This setting clears the front view more quickly.
5. **Windshield—**Air flows mainly from the windshield vents.

   Turning the air flow selector to the windshield position turns on the defogging function with the purpose of clearing the front view.

   In this position, air intake selector mode changes to FRESH automatically to clean up the front view quickly. It is not possible to return to RECIRCULATE in this position.

   Press the "A/C" button for dehumidified heating or cooling. This setting clears the front view more quickly.

For details about air flow selector settings, see "—Air flow selector settings" described below.




**Air intake selector**

Press the button to select the air source.

1. **RECIRCULATE** (indicator light is on)—Recirculates the air inside the vehicle.
2. **FRESH** (indicator light is off)—Draws outside air into the system.

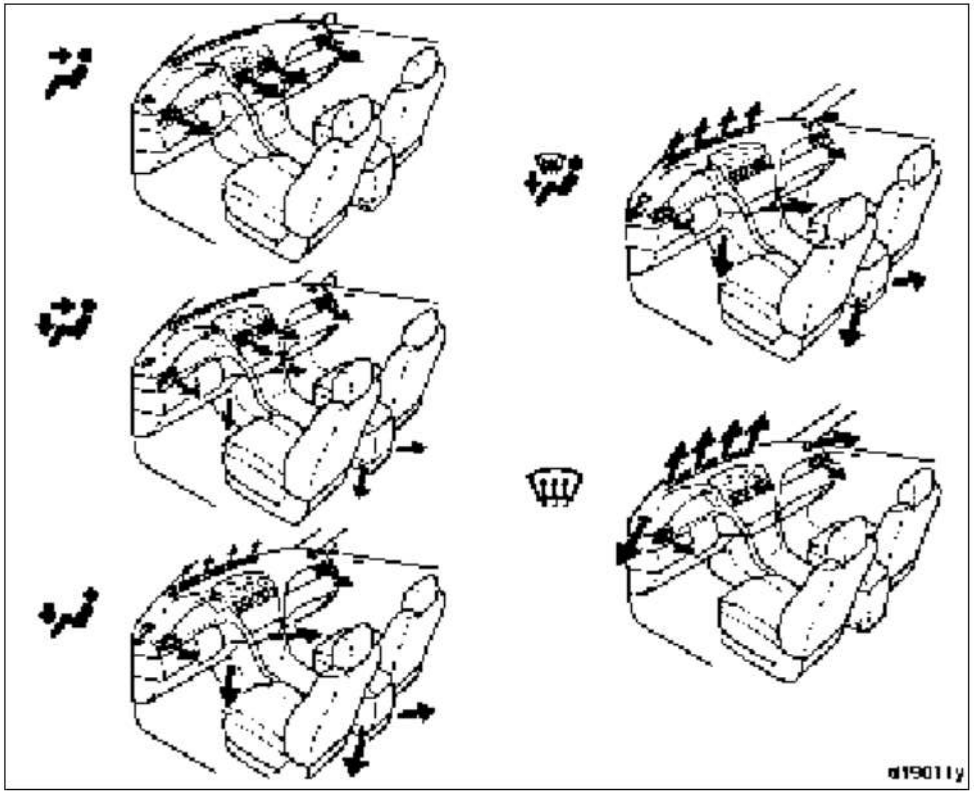
To prevent fogging up of the windshield, the air intake mode may change automatically to FRESH depending on the condition of the air conditioning system.

**"A/C" button**

To turn on the air conditioning, press the "A/C" button. The "A/C" button indicator will come on. To turn the air conditioning off, press the button again.

If the "A/C" button indicator flashes, there is a problem in the air conditioning system and the air conditioning automatically shuts off. If this happens, take your vehicle to a Toyota dealer for service.

## —Air flow selector settings




## —Operating tips

- To cool off your Toyota after it has been parked in the hot sun, drive with the windows open for a few minutes. This vents the hot air, allowing the air conditioning to cool the interior more quickly.
- Make sure the air intake grilles in front of the windshield are not blocked (by leaves or snow, for example).
- On humid days, do not blow cold air on the windshield. The windshield could fog up because of the difference in air temperature on the inside and outside of the windshield.
- Keep the area under the front seats clear to allow air to circulate throughout the vehicle.
- On cold days, set the fan speed to high for a minute to help clear the intake ducts of snow or moisture. This can reduce the amount of fogging on the windows.
- When driving on dusty roads, close all windows. If dust thrown up by the vehicle is still drawn into the vehicle after closing the windows, it is recommended that the air intake selector be set to FRESH and the fan speed selector to any setting except "OFF".

◀If following another vehicle on a dusty road, or driving in windy and dusty conditions, it is recommended that the air intake selector be temporarily set to RECIRCULATE, which will close off the outside passage and prevent outside air and dust from entering the vehicle interior.

**Heating**

For best results, set controls as follows:

**Fan speed**—Any setting except "OFF"
**Temperature**—Towards **WARM** (red zone)
**Air intake—FRESH** (outside air)
**Air flow—FLOOR**
**Air conditioning—OFF**

◀For quick heating, select recirculated air for a few minutes. To keep the windows from fogging, select fresh after the vehicle interior has been warmed.

◀Press the "A/C" button on for dehumidified heating.

◀Choose floor/windshield air flow to heat the vehicle interior while defrosting or defogging the windshield.

**Air conditioning**

For best results, set controls as follows:

**Fan speed**—Any setting except "OFF"
**Temperature**—Towards **COLD** (blue zone)
**Air intake—FRESH** (outside air)
**Air flow—PANEL**
**Air conditioning—ON**

◀For quick cooling, select recirculated air for a few minutes.

**Ventilation**

For best results, set controls as follows:

**Fan speed**—Any setting except "OFF"
**Temperature**—Towards **COLD** (blue zone)
**Air intake—FRESH** (outside air)
**Air flow—PANEL**
**Air conditioning—OFF**

**Defogging**

The inside of the windshield

For best results, set controls as follows:

**Fan speed**—Any setting except "OFF"
**Temperature**—Towards **WARM** (red zone) to heat; **COLD** (blue zone) to cool
**Air intake—FRESH** (outside air)
**Air flow—WINDSHIELD**

Turning the air flow selector to the windshield position turns on the defogging function with the purpose of clearing the front view.

When turning the air flow selector to windshield position, air intake selector mode changes to FRESH automatically to clean up the front view quickly. It is not possible to return to RECIRCULATE in this position.

Press the "A/C" button for dehumidified heating or cooling. This setting clears the front view more quickly.

◀On humid days, do not blow cold air on the windshield—the difference between the outside and inside temperatures could make the fogging worse.

**Defrosting**

The outside of the windshield

For best results, set controls as follows:

**Fan speed**—Any setting except "OFF"
**Temperature**—Towards **WARM** (red zone)
**Air intake—FRESH** (outside air)
**Air flow—WINDSHIELD**

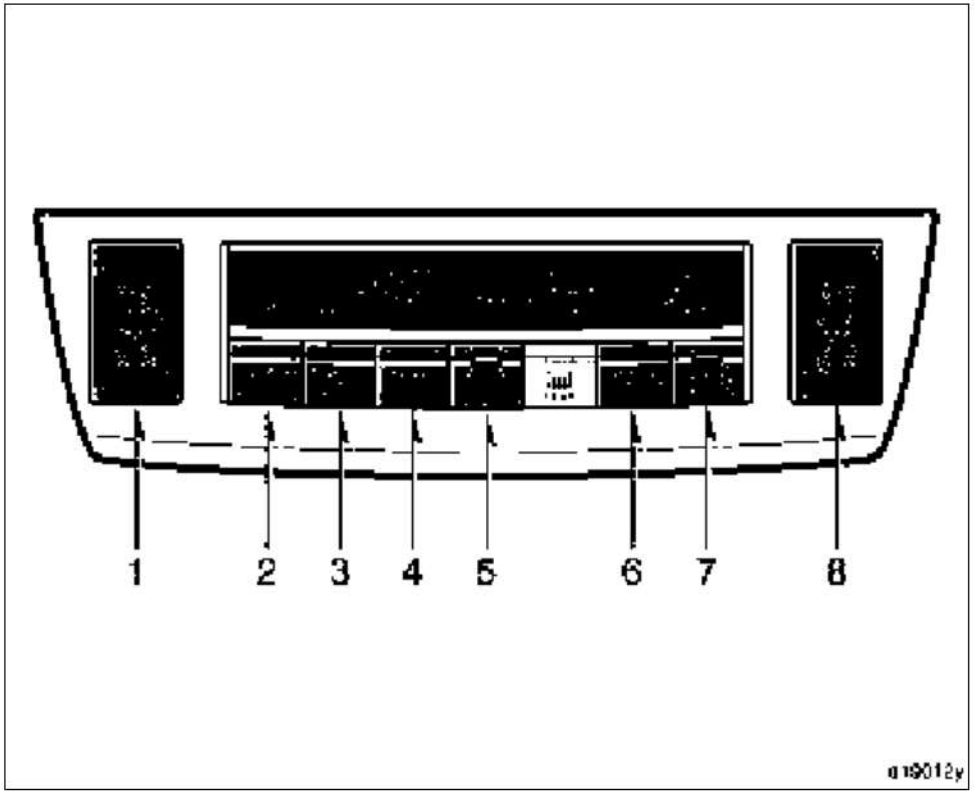
Turning the air flow selector to the windshield position turns on the defrosting function with the purpose of clearing the front view.

When turning the air flow selector to windshield position, air intake selector mode changes to FRESH automatically to clean up the front view quickly. It is not possible to return to RECIRCULATE in this position.

Press the "A/C" button for dehumidified heating. This setting clears the front view more quickly.

◀To heat the vehicle interior while defrosting the windshield, choose floor/windshield air flow.

## Automatic air conditioning system—
## —Controls




1. Temperature selector
2. "AUTO" button
3. "OFF" button
4. Air intake selector
5. Windshield air flow button
6. "MODE" button (air flow selector)
7. "A/C" button
8. Fan speed selector

**"AUTO" button**

For automatic operation of the air conditioning, press the "AUTO" button. "AUTO" will appear on the display to show that the automatic operation mode has been selected.

In the automatic operation mode, the air conditioning selects the most suitable fan speed, air flow, air intake and on-off of the air conditioning according to the temperature.

When you press the "AUTO" button with the air intake mode at FRESH, internal circulation may be applied for maximum cooling.

You may use manual controls if you want to select your own settings.

**Fan speed selector**

Push the "±" (increase) or " " (decrease) side of the button to adjust the fan speed.

In automatic operation, you do not have to adjust the fan speed unless you desire another fan speed mode.

**Temperature selector**

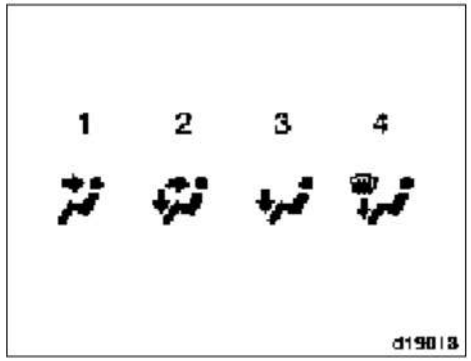
To increase the temperature, press the "±" side, to decrease it, press the " " side.

"MAX. COLD" appears when you adjust to maximum cooling, and "MAX. HOT" when you adjust to maximum warming.

The temperature display changes between "°C" and "°F" when the unit of the multi-information display is changed. (For details, see "Multi-information displays" on page 202 in Section 1-10.)

**"OFF" button**

Push the button to turn off the air conditioning system.




**"MODE" button (air flow selector)**

Push the "MODE" button to select the vents used for air flow.

In automatic operation, you do not have to select the air flow unless you desire another air flow mode.

1. **Panel—**Air flows mainly from the instrument panel vents.
2. **Bi-level—**Air flows from both the floor vents and the instrument panel vents.
3. **Floor—**Air flows mainly from the floor vents.
4. **Floor/Windshield—**Air flows mainly from the floor vents and windshield vents.

This position allows the air intake to select FRESH automatically. This is to clean up the front view more quickly.

If you want to return the setting to RECIRCULATE mode, press the air intake selector button once again.

Press the "A/C" button for dehumidified heating or cooling. This setting clears the front view more quickly.

**Windshield air flow button**

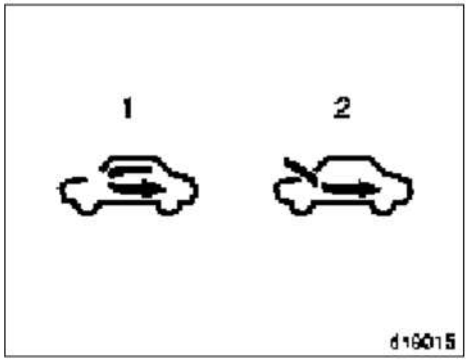
When this button is pressed, air flows mainly from the windshield vents and turns on the defogging function with the purpose of clearing the front view.

Pressing this button once again returns the air flow mode to the last one used.

This button allows the air intake to select FRESH automatically. This is to clean up the front view more quickly. It is not possible to return to RECIRCULATE in this mode.

Press the "A/C" button for dehumidified heating or cooling. This setting clears the front view more quickly.

For details about air flow selector settings, see "—Air flow selector settings" described below.




**Air intake selector**

Press the button to select the air source.

1. **RECIRCULATE—**Recirculates the air inside the vehicle.
2. **FRESH—**Draws outside air into the system.

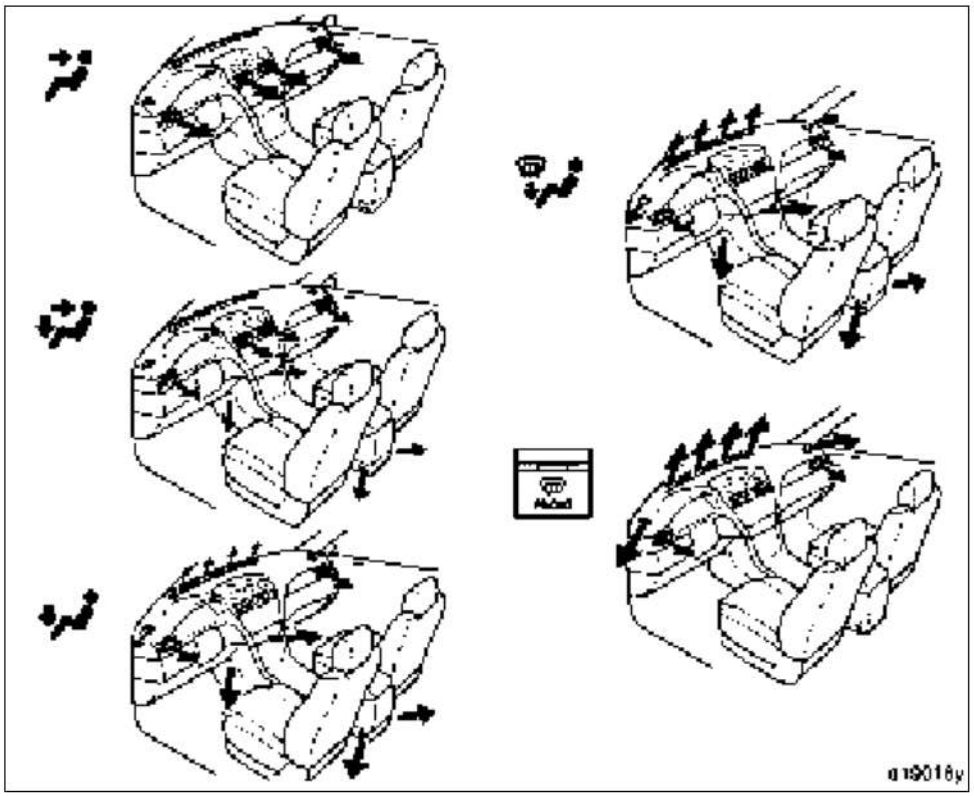
To prevent fogging up of the windshield, the air intake mode may change automatically to FRESH depending on the condition of the air conditioning system.

**“A/C” button**

To turn on the air conditioning, press the “A/C” button. The “A/C” button indicator will come on. To turn the air conditioning off, press the button again.

If the “A/C” button indicator flashes, there is a problem in the air conditioning system and the air conditioning automatically shuts off. If this happens, take your vehicle to a Toyota dealer for service.

### —Air flow selector settings



### —Operating tips

- To cool off your Toyota after it has been parked in the hot sun, drive with the windows open for a few minutes. This vents the hot air, allowing the air conditioning to cool the interior more quickly.
- Make sure the air intake grilles in front of the windshield are not blocked (by leaves or snow, for example).
- On humid days, do not blow cold air on the windshield. The windshield could fog up because of the difference in air temperature on the inside and outside of the windshield.
- Keep the area under the front seats clear to allow air to circulate throughout the vehicle.
- On cold days, set the fan speed to high for a minute to help clear the intake ducts of snow or moisture. This can reduce the amount of fogging on the windows.
- When driving on dusty roads, close all windows. If dust thrown up by the vehicle is still drawn into the vehicle after closing the windows, it is recommended that the air intake selector be set to FRESH and the fan speed selector to any setting except "OFF".

◀If following another vehicle on a dusty road, or driving in windy and dusty conditions, it is recommended that the air intake selector be temporarily set to RECIRCULATE, which will close off the outside passage and prevent outside air and dust from entering the vehicle interior.

**Heating**

For best results, set controls as follows:

For automatic operation—

**Press in the "AUTO" button.**
**Temperature—**To the desired temperature
**Air intake—FRESH** (outside air)
**Air conditioning—OFF**

For manual operation—

**Fan speed—**To the desired fan speed
**Temperature—**Towards **WARM**
**Air intake—FRESH** (outside air)
**Air flow—FLOOR**
**Air conditioning—OFF**

◀For quick heating, select recirculated air for a few minutes. To keep the windows from fogging, select fresh after the vehicle interior has been warmed.

◀Press the "A/C" button on for dehumidified heating.

◀Choose floor/windshield air flow to heat the vehicle interior while defrosting or defogging the windshield.

**Air conditioning**

For best results, set controls as follows:

For automatic operation—

**Press in the "AUTO" button.**
**Temperature—**To the desired temperature
**Air intake—FRESH** (outside air)
**Air conditioning—ON**

For manual operation—

**Fan speed—**To the desired fan speed
**Temperature—**Towards **COLD**
**Air intake—FRESH** (outside air)
**Air flow—PANEL**
**Air conditioning—ON**

◀For quick cooling, select recirculated air for a few minutes.

**Ventilation**

For best results, set controls as follows:

For automatic operation—

**Press in the "AUTO" button.**
**Temperature—**Towards low temperature
**Air intake—FRESH** (outside air)
**Air conditioning—OFF**

For manual operation—

**Fan speed—**To the desired fan speed
**Temperature—**Towards **COLD**
**Air intake—FRESH** (outside air)
**Air flow—PANEL**
**Air conditioning—OFF**

**Defogging and defrosting**

**—The inside of the windshield**

For best results, set controls as follows:

—For automatic operation

**Temperature—**Towards high temperature to heat; low temperature to cool
**Air intake—FRESH** (outside air)
**Air flow—WINDSHIELD**

—For manual operation

**Fan speed—**To the desired fan speed
**Temperature—**Towards high temperature to heat; low temperature to cool
**Air intake—FRESH** (outside air)
**Air flow—WINDSHIELD**

Pressing the windshield air flow button turns on the defogging function with the purpose of clearing the front view.

When pressing the windshield air flow button, the air intake selects FRESH automatically. This is to clean up the front view more quickly. It is not possible to return to RECIRCULATE in this mode.

Press the "A/C" button for dehumidified heating or cooling. This setting clears the front view more quickly.

◀On humid days, do not blow cold air on the windshield—the difference between the outside and inside temperatures could make the fogging worse.

**—The outside of the windshield**

For best results, set controls as follows:

—For automatic operation

**Temperature—**Towards high temperature
**Air intake—FRESH** (outside air)
**Air flow—WINDSHIELD**

—For manual operation

**Fan speed—**To the desired fan speed
**Temperature—**Towards high temperature
**Air intake—FRESH** (outside air)
**Air flow—WINDSHIELD**

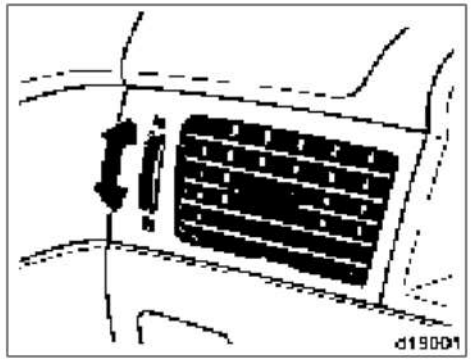
Pressing the windshield air flow button turns on the defrosting function with the purpose of clearing the front view.

When pressing the windshield air flow button, the air intake selects FRESH automatically. This is to clean up the front view more quickly. It is not possible to return to RECIRCULATE in this mode.

Press the "A/C" button for dehumidified heating or cooling. This setting clears the front view more quickly.

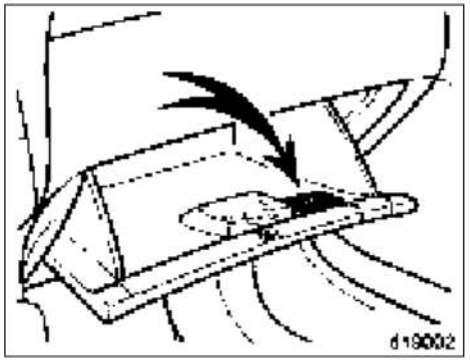
◀To heat the vehicle interior while defrosting the windshield, choose floor/windshield air flow.

## Side vents



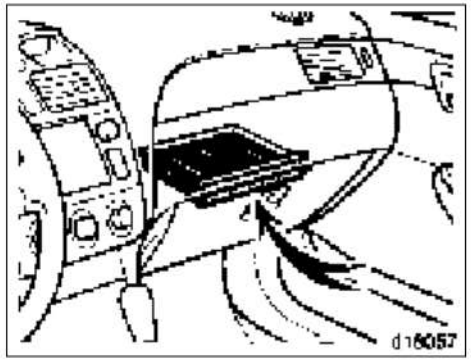

If air flow control is not satisfactory, check the side vents. The side vents may be opened or closed as shown.

## Air conditioning filter—




**The air conditioning filter information label is placed in the glove box as shown and indicates that a filter has been installed.**

The air conditioning filter prevents dust from entering the vehicle through the air conditioning vent.

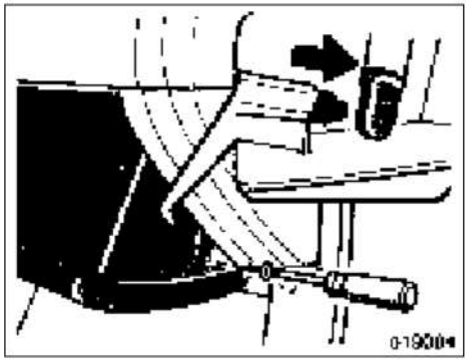


**The air conditioning filter is behind the glove box.**

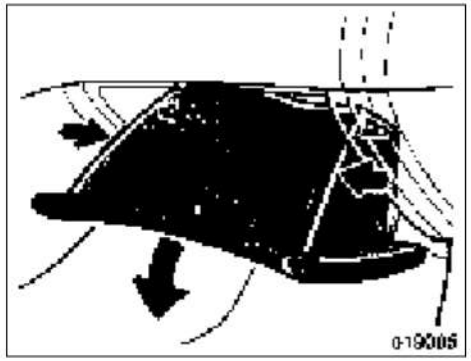
## —Checking and replacing the air conditioning filter

**The air conditioning filter may clog after long use. The filter may need to be replaced if the air flow of the air conditioning and heater experiences extreme reductions in operating efficiency, or if the windows begin to fog up easily in FRESH mode.**

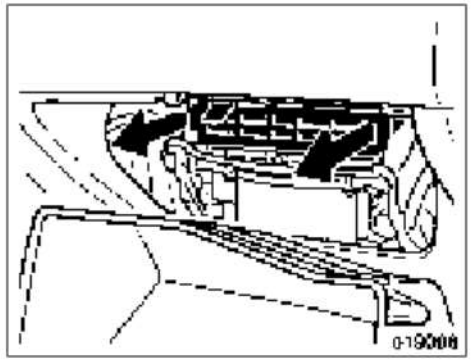
To maintain the air conditioning efficiency, inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, such as inner city or desert areas, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Scheduled Maintenance Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".)



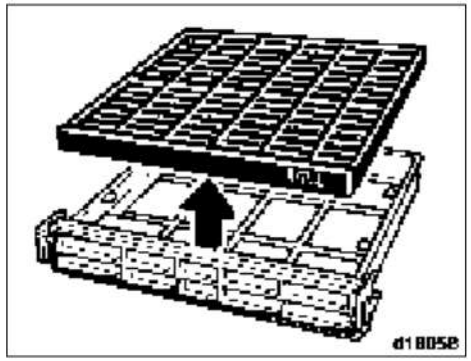
**1. Open the glove box. Remove the screw with a Phillips-head screwdriver and slide the hook as shown.**




2. Push in each side of the glove box to disconnect the claws.




3. Remove the filter case from the filter outlet as shown in the illustration.

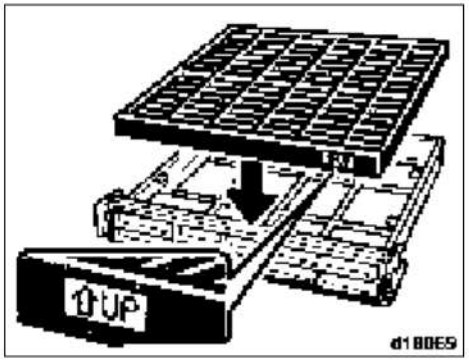



4. Remove the filter from the filter case.

5. Inspect the filter on the surface.

If it is the just moderately dusty, it may be cleaned by blowing compressed air from the reverse surface. Do not wash or oil the filter.

If it is dirty, it should be replaced.




When installing the filter in the filter case, keep the "UP" mark pointing up.

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| *The air filter should be installed properly in position. The use of air conditioning with the air filter removed may cause deteriorated dustproof performance and then affect air conditioning performance.* |

# SECTION 2

# INFORMATION BEFORE DRIVING YOUR TOYOTA

## Information before driving your Toyota


Break- in period ..... 220
Fuel ..... 220
Fuel pump shut off system ..... 222
Operation in foreign countries ..... 222
Three- way catalytic converters ..... 223
Engine exhaust cautions ..... 224
Facts about engine oil consumption ..... 225
Iridium- tipped spark plugs ..... 226
Brake system ..... 226
Brake pad wear limit indicators ..... 230
Your Toyota's identification ..... 230
Theft prevention labels ..... 232
Suspension and chassis ..... 232
Tire information ..... 233
Vehicle load limits ..... 243
Cargo and luggage ..... 244
Types of tires ..... 246

## Break-in period

**Drive gently and avoid high speeds.**

Your vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But following a few simple tips for the first 1600 km (1000 miles) can add to the future economy and long life of your vehicle:

- Avoid full throttle acceleration when starting and driving.
- Avoid racing the engine.
- Try to avoid hard stops during the first 300 km (200 miles).
- Do not drive slowly with the manual transmission in a high gear.
- Do not drive for a long time at any single speed, either fast or slow.
- Do not tow a trailer during the first 800 km (500 miles).

## Fuel

### FUEL TYPE

**Your new vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.**

To help prevent gas station mix-ups, your Toyota has a smaller fuel tank opening. The special nozzle on pumps with unleaded fuel will fit it, but the larger standard nozzle on pumps with leaded gas will not.

At a minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A. and CGSB 3.5-M93 in Canada.

***NOTICE***

***Do not use leaded gasoline. Use of leaded gasoline will cause the three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and the emission control system to function improperly. Also, this can increase maintenance costs.***

### OCTANE RATING

**2AZ-FE engine: Select Octane Rating 87 (Research Octane Number 91) or higher.**

**3MZ-FE engine: Select Octane Rating 87 (Research Octane Number 91) or higher. For improved vehicle performance, the use of premium unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating of 91 (Research Octane Number of 96) or higher is recommended.**

Use of unleaded gasoline with an octane rating or research octane number lower than stated above will cause persistent heavy knocking. If it is severe, this will lead to engine damage.

**If your engine knocks...**

If you detect heavy knocking even when using the recommended fuel, or if you hear steady knocking while holding a steady speed on level roads, consult your Toyota dealer.

However, occasionally, you may notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving up hills. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

### GASOLINE CONTAINING DETERGENT ADDITIVES

**Toyota recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid build-up of engine deposits.**

However, all gasoline sold in the U.S. contains detergent additives to keep clean and/or clean intake systems.

### QUALITY GASOLINE

**Automotive manufacturers in the U.S., Europe and Japan have developed a specification for quality fuel named World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) that is expected to be applied world wide. The WWFC consists of four categories that depend on required emission levels. In the U.S., category 4 has been adopted. The WWFC improves air quality by providing for better emissions in vehicle fleets, and customer satisfaction through better vehicle performance.**

### CLEANER BURNING GASOLINE

**Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE is available in many areas.**

Toyota recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions, and improve air quality.

### OXYGENATES IN GASOLINE

**Toyota allows the use of oxygenate blended gasoline where the oxygenate content is up to 10% ethanol or 15% MTBE. If you use gasohol in your Toyota, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.**

Toyota does not recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

### GASOLINE CONTAINING MMT

**Some gasoline contain an octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).**

Toyota does not recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected. The Malfunction Indicator Lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Toyota dealer for service.

### GASOLINE QUALITY

In a very few cases, you may experience driveability problems caused by the particular gasoline that you are using. If you continue to have unacceptable driveability, try changing gasoline brands. If this does not rectify your problem, then consult your Toyota dealer.

**NOTICE**

- ***Do not use gasohol other than stated above. It will cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.***
- ***If driveability problems are encountered (poor hot starting, vaporizing, engine knock, etc.), discontinue the use.***
- ***Take care not to spill gasohol during refueling. Gasohol may cause paint damage.***

**FUEL TANK CAPACITY**

70 L (18.5 gal., 15.4 Imp. gal.)

## Fuel pump shut off system

The fuel pump shut off system stops supplying fuel to the engine to minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an airbag inflates upon collision. To restart the engine after the fuel pump shut off system activates, turn the ignition switch to "ACC" or "LOCK" once and start it.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Inspect the ground under the vehicle before restarting the engine. If you find that liquid has leaked onto the ground, it is the fuel system has been damaged and it is in need of repair. In this case, do not restart the engine.**

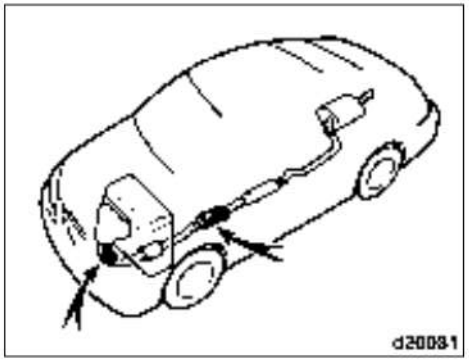
## Operation in foreign countries

**If you plan to drive your Toyota in another country...**

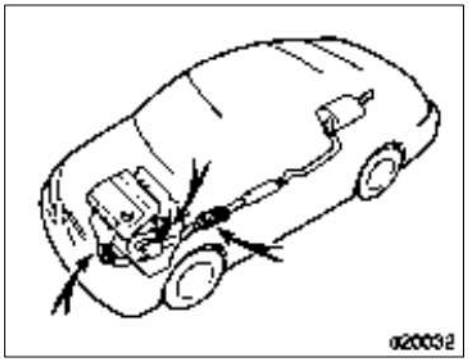
**First,** comply with the vehicle registration laws.

**Second,** confirm the availability of the correct fuel (unleaded and minimum octane number).

## Three- way catalytic converters




2AZ- FE engine




3MZ- FE engine

**The three- way catalytic converter is an emission control device installed in the exhaust system.**

The purpose is to reduce pollutants in the exhaust gas.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Keep people and combustible materials away from the exhaust pipe while the engine is running. The exhaust gas is very hot.**
- **Do not drive, idle or park your vehicle over anything that may burn easily such as grass, leaves, paper or rags.**

***NOTICE***

***A large amount of unburned gases flowing into the three- way catalytic converter may cause it to overheat and create a fire hazard. To prevent this and other damage, observe the following precautions:***

- ***Use only unleaded gasoline.***
- ***Do not drive with an extremely low fuel level; running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, creating an excessive load on the three- way catalytic converter.***
- ***Do not allow the engine to run at idle speed for more than 20 minutes.***
- ***Avoid racing the engine.***
- ***Do not push- start or pull- start your vehicle.***
- ***Do not turn off the ignition while the vehicle is moving.***

- *Keep your engine in good running order. Malfunctions in the engine electrical system, electronic ignition system/distributor ignition system or fuel system could cause an extremely high three-way catalytic converter temperature.*
- *If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, take your vehicle in for a check-up as soon as possible. Remember, your Toyota dealer knows your vehicle and its three-way catalytic converter system best.*
- *To ensure that the three-way catalytic converter and the entire emission control system operate properly, your vehicle must receive the periodic inspections required by the Toyota Maintenance Schedule. For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the "Scheduled Maintenance Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".*

## Engine exhaust cautions

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Avoid inhaling the engine exhaust. It contains carbon monoxide, which is a colorless and odorless gas. It can cause unconsciousness or even death.
- Make sure the exhaust system has no holes or loose connections. The system should be checked from time to time. If you hit something, or notice a change in the sound of the exhaust, have the system checked immediately.
- Do not run the engine in a garage or enclosed area except for the time needed to drive the vehicle in or out. The exhaust gases cannot escape, making this a particularly dangerous situation.
- Do not remain for a long time in a parked vehicle with the engine running. If it is unavoidable, however, do so only in an unconfined area and adjust the heating or cooling system to force outside air into the vehicle.
- Keep the trunk lid closed while driving. An open or unsealed trunk lid may cause exhaust gases to be drawn into the vehicle.
- To allow proper operation of your vehicle's ventilation system, keep the inlet grilles in front of the windshield clear of snow, leaves, or other obstructions.
- If you smell exhaust fumes in the vehicle, drive with the windows open and the trunk lid closed. Have the cause immediately located and corrected.

## Facts about engine oil consumption

### FUNCTIONS OF ENGINE OIL

Engine oil has the primary functions of lubricating and cooling the inside of the engine, and plays a major role in maintaining the engine in proper working order.

### ENGINE OIL CONSUMPTION

**It is normal that an engine should consume some engine oil during normal engine operation. The causes of oil consumption in a normal engine are as follows.**

- Oil is used to lubricate pistons, piston rings and cylinders. A thin film of oil is left on the cylinder wall when a piston moves downwards in the cylinder. High negative pressure generated when the vehicle is decelerating sucks some of this oil into the combustion chamber. This oil as well as some part of the oil film left on the cylinder wall is burned by the high temperature combustion gases during the combustion process.
- Oil is also used to lubricate the stems of the intake valves. Some of this oil is sucked into the combustion chamber together with the intake air and is burned along with the fuel. High temperature exhaust gases also burn the oil used to lubricate the exhaust valve stems.

**The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the viscosity of the oil, the quality of the oil and the conditions the vehicle is driven under.**

More oil is consumed by high-speed driving and frequent acceleration and deceleration.

A new engine consumes more oil, since its pistons, piston rings and cylinder walls have not become conditioned.

**Oil consumption:** Max. 1.0 L per 1000 km (1.1 qt./600 miles, 0.9 Imp. qt./600 miles)

**When judging the amount of oil consumption, note that the oil may become diluted and make it difficult to judge the true level accurately.**

As an example, if a vehicle is used for repeated short trips, and consumes a normal amount of oil, the dipstick may not show any drop in the oil level at all, even after 1000 km (600 miles) or more. This is because the oil is gradually becoming diluted with fuel or moisture, making it appear that the oil level has not changed.

The diluting ingredients evaporate out when the vehicle is then driven at high speeds, as on an express way, making it appear that oil is excessively consumed after driving at high speeds.

### IMPORTANCE OF ENGINE OIL LEVEL CHECK

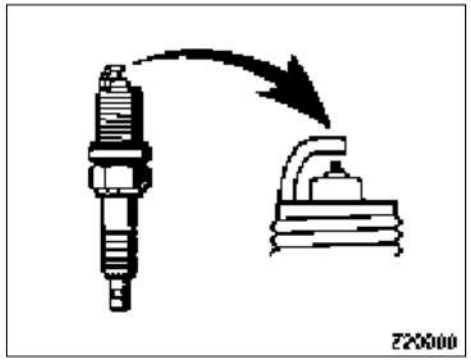
One of the most important points in proper vehicle maintenance is to keep the engine oil at the optimum level so that oil function will not be impaired. Therefore, it is essential that the oil level be checked regularly. Toyota recommends that the oil level be checked every time you refuel the vehicle.

***NOTICE***

***Failure to check the oil level regularly could lead to serious engine trouble due to insufficient oil.***

For detailed information on oil level check, see "Checking the engine oil level" on page 300 in Section 7-2.

## Iridium-tipped spark plugs




**Your engine is fitted with iridium-tipped spark plugs.**

***NOTICE***

***Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs and do not adjust gaps for your engine performance and smooth driveability.***

## Brake system

The tandem master cylinder brake system is a hydraulic system with two separate sub-systems. If either sub-system should fail, the other will still work. However, the pedal will be harder to press, and your stopping distance will increase. Also, the brake system warning light may come on.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not drive your vehicle with only a single brake system. Have your brakes fixed immediately.**

### BRAKE BOOSTER

The brake booster uses engine vacuum to power-assist the brakes. If the engine should quit while you are driving, you can bring the vehicle to a stop with normal pedal pressure. There is enough reserved vacuum for one or two stops—but no more!

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls. Each push on the pedal uses up your reserved vacuum.**

**Even if the power assist is completely lost, the brakes will still work. But you will have to push the pedal hard, much harder than normal. And your braking distance will increase.**

## ANTI-LOCK BRAKE SYSTEM

**The anti-lock brake system is designed to help prevent lock-up of the wheels during a sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces. This assists in providing directional stability and steering performance of the vehicle under these circumstances.**

**Effective way to press the ABS brake pedal:** When the anti-lock brake system function is in action, you may feel the brake pedal pulsating and hear a noise. In this situation, to let the anti-lock brake system work for you, just hold the brake pedal down more firmly. Do not pump the brake in a panic stop. This will result in reduced braking performance.

The anti-lock brake system becomes operative after the vehicle has accelerated to a speed in excess of approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). It stops operating when the vehicle decelerates to a speed below approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

Depressing the brake pedal on slippery road surfaces such as on a manhole cover, a steel plate at a construction site, joints in a bridge, etc. on a rainy day tends to activate the anti-lock brake system.

You may hear a click or motor sound in the engine compartment for a few seconds when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This means that the anti-lock brake system is in the self-check mode, and does not indicate a malfunction.

**When the anti-lock brake system is activated, the following conditions may occur. They do not indicate a malfunction of the system:**

- ◀You may hear the anti-lock brake system operating and feel the brake pedal pulsating and the vibrations of the vehicle body and steering wheel. You may also hear the motor sound in the engine compartment even after the vehicle is stopped.
- ◀At the end of the anti-lock brake system activation, the brake pedal may move a little forward.

**⚠ CAUTION**

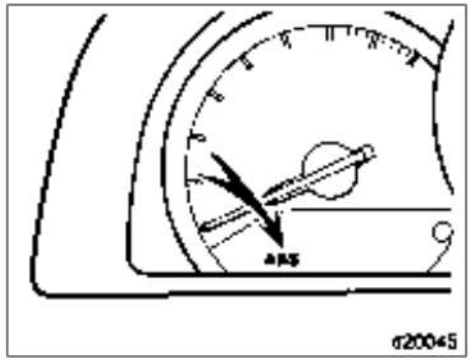
**Do not overestimate the anti-lock brake system: Although the anti-lock brake system assists in providing vehicle control, it is still important to drive with all due care and maintain a moderate speed and safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, because there are limits to the vehicle stability and effectiveness of steering wheel operation even with the anti-lock brake system on.**

**If tire grip performance exceeds its capability, or if hydroplaning occurs during high speed driving in the rain, the anti-lock brake system does not provide vehicle control.**

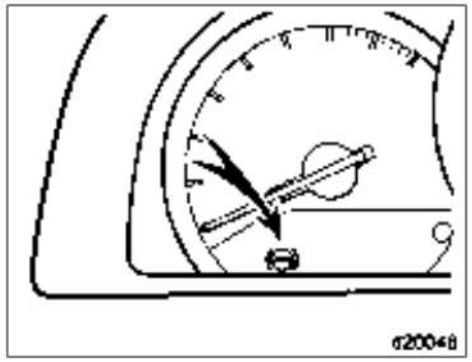
**Anti-lock brake system is not designed to shorten the stopping distance: Always drive at a moderate speed and maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you. Compared with vehicles without an anti-lock brake system, your vehicle may require a longer stopping distance in the following cases:**

- **Driving on rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.**
- **Driving with tire chains installed.**
- **Driving over the steps such as the joints on the road.**
- **Driving on roads where the road surface is pitted or has other differences in surface height.**

**Install all 4 tires of specified size at appropriate pressure: The anti-lock brake system detects vehicle speeds using the speed sensors for respective wheels' turning speeds. The use of tires other than specified may fail to detect the accurate turning speed resulting in a longer stopping distance.**




**For the U.S.A.**




**For Canada**

**"ABS" warning light (vehicles without vehicle stability control system)**

The light comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. If the anti-lock brake system works properly, the light turns off after a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system malfunctions, the light comes on again.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system does not operate, but the brake system still operates conventionally.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system does not operate so that the wheels could lock up during a sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces.

**If either of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction somewhere in the components monitored by the warning light system. Contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.**

- The light does not come on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, or remains on.
- The light comes on while you are driving.

A warning light turning on briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.

**"ABS" warning light (vehicles with vehicle stability control system)**

The light comes on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position. If the anti-lock brake system and the brake assist system work properly, the light turns off after a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system malfunctions, the light comes on again.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system, the brake assist system, the traction control system and the vehicle stability control system do not operate, but the brake system still operates conventionally.

When the "ABS" warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the anti-lock brake system does not operate so that the wheels could lock up during a sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces.

**If either of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction somewhere in the components monitored by the warning light system. Contact your Toyota dealer as soon as possible to service the vehicle.**

- ◀The light does not come on when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, or remains on.
- ◀The light comes on while you are driving.

A warning light turning on briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If the "ABS" warning light remains on together with the brake system warning light, immediately stop your vehicle at a safe place and contact your Toyota dealer.**

**In this case, not only the anti-lock brake system will fail but also the vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking.**

**DRUM-IN-DISC TYPE PARKING BRAKE SYSTEM**

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drums are replaced.

Have your Toyota dealer perform the bedding-down.

**BRAKE ASSIST SYSTEM (vehicles with vehicle stability control system)**

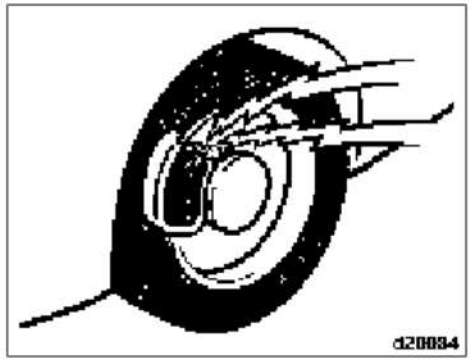
**When you slam the brakes on, the brake assist system judges as an emergency stop and provides more powerful braking for a driver who cannot hold down the brake pedal firmly.**

When you slam the brakes on, more powerful braking will be applied. At this time, you may hear a sound in the engine compartment and feel the vibrations of the brake pedal. This does not indicate a malfunction.

The brake assist system becomes operative after the vehicle has accelerated to a speed in excess of approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). It stops operating when the vehicle decelerates to a speed below approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

For an explanation of this system's warning light, see "Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers" on page 131 in Section 1- 6.

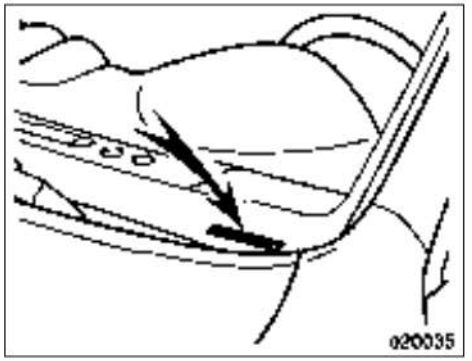
## Brake pad wear limit indicators




**The brake pad wear limit indicators on your disc brakes give a warning noise when the brake pads are worn to where replacement is required.**

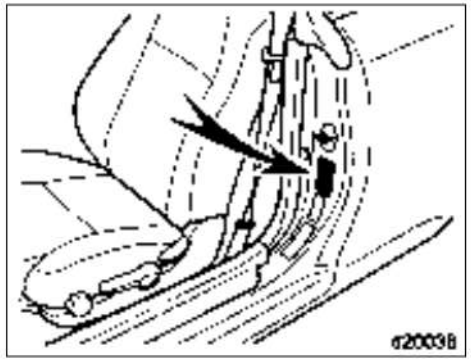
If you hear a squealing or scraping noise while driving, have the brake pads checked and replaced by your Toyota dealer as soon as possible. Expensive rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when necessary.

## Your Toyota's identification— —Vehicle identification number



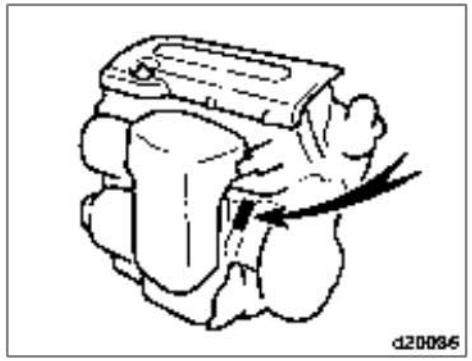

**The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This number is on the left top of the instrument panel, and can be seen through the windshield from outside.**

This is the primary identification number for your Toyota. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

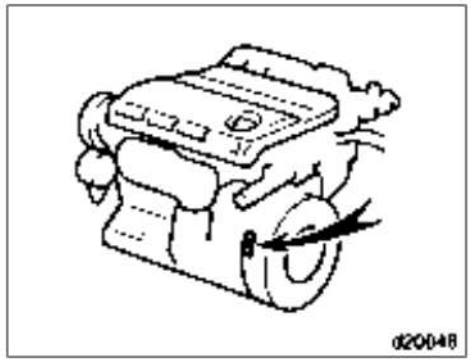



The vehicle identification number (VIN) is also on the Certification Label.

## —Engine number




**2AZ-FE engine**




**3MZ-FE engine**

**The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.**

## Theft prevention labels

**Your new vehicle carries theft prevention labels which are approximately 47 mm (1.85 in.) by 12 mm (0.47 in.).**

The purpose of these labels is to reduce the incidence of vehicle thefts by facilitating the tracing and recovery of parts from stolen vehicles. The label is designed so that once it is applied to a surface, any attempt to remove it will result in destroying the integrity of the label. Transferring these labels intact from one part to another, will be impossible.

***NOTICE***

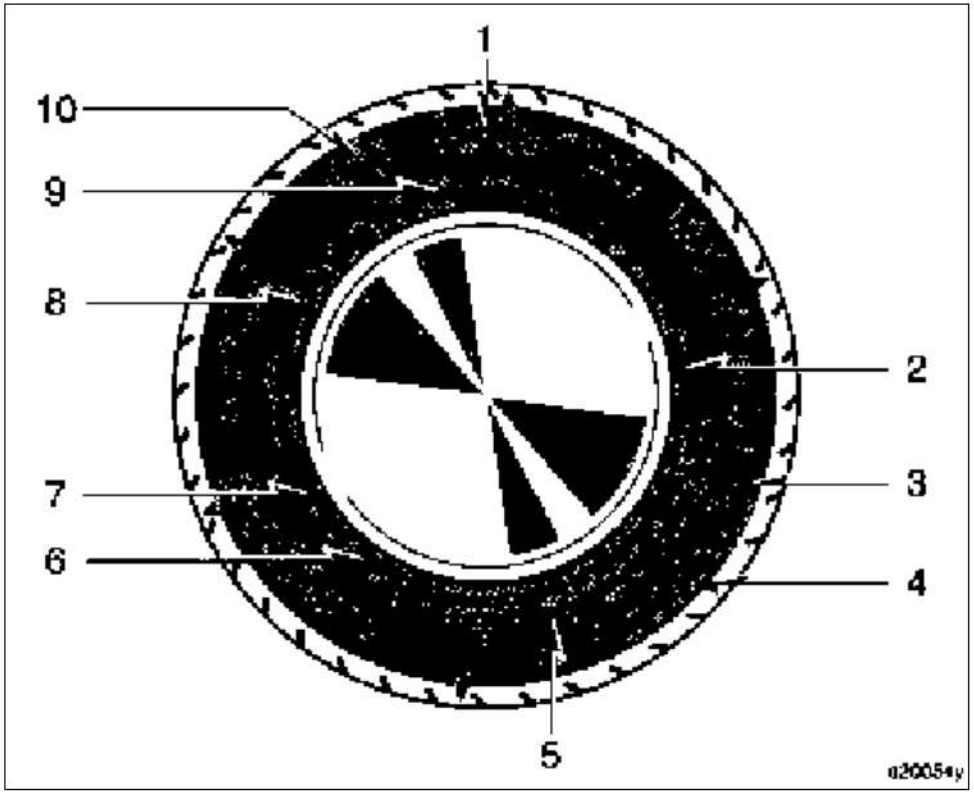
***You should not attempt to remove the theft prevention labels as it may violate certain state or federal laws.***

## Suspension and chassis

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not modify the suspension/chassis with lift kits, spacers, springs, etc. It can cause dangerous vehicle handling characteristics, resulting in loss of control.**

**Tire information—**
**—Tire symbols (standard tire)**

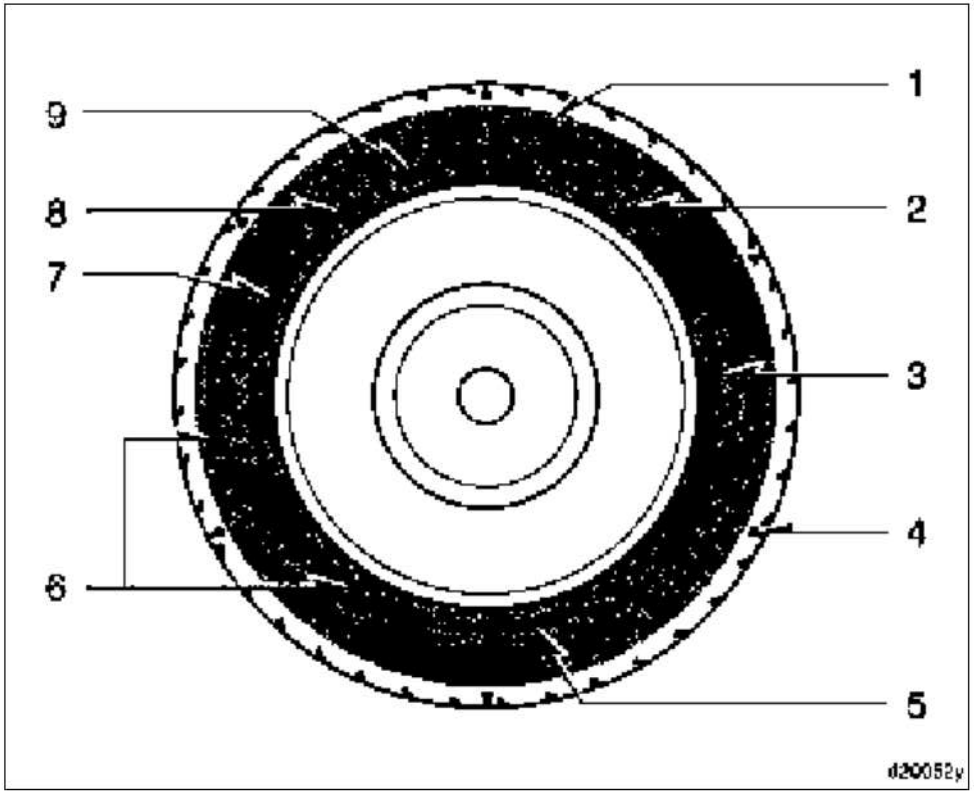



This illustration indicates typical tire symbols.

1. **Tire size—**For details, see "—Tire size" on page 237.
2. **DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN)—**For details, see "—DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN)" on page 236.
3. **Uniform tire quality grading—**For details, see "Uniform tire quality grading" that follows.
4. **The location of the tread wear indicators—**For details, see "Checking and replacing tires" on page 308.
5. **Tire ply composition and materials—**Plies mean a layer of rubber- coated parallel cords. Cords mean the strands forming the plies in the tire.
6. **Radial tires or bias- ply tires—**A radial tire has "RADIAL" on the sidewall. A tire not marked with "RADIAL" is a bias- ply tire.

7. **"TUBELESS" or "TUBE TYPE"**—A tubeless tire does not have a tube inside the tire and air is directly filled in the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.
8. **Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure**—For details, see "Checking and replacing tires" on page 308.
9. **Maximum cold tire inflation pressure**—This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated. For details about recommended cold tire inflation pressure, see "Tires" on page 330.
10. **Summer tire or all season tire**—An all season tire has "M+S" on the sidewall. The tire not marked with "M+S" is a summer tire. For details, see "Types of tires" on page 246.

**—Tire symbols (compact spare tire)**

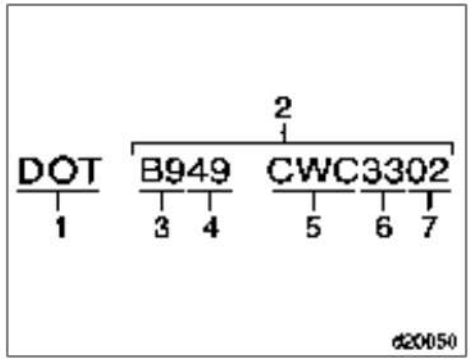



This illustration indicates typical tire symbols.

1. **"TEMPORARY USE ONLY"—**A compact spare tire is identified by the phrase "TEMPORARY USE ONLY" molded into its sidewall. This tire is designed for temporary emergency use only. For details, see "Compact spare tire" on page 262.
2. **Tire size—**For details, see "—Tire size" on page 237.
3. **DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN)—**For details, see "—DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN)" on page 236.
4. **The location of the tread wear indicators—**For details, see "Checking and replacing tires" on page 308.
5. **Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure—**For details, see "Checking and replacing tires" on page 308.

6. **Maximum cold tire inflation pressure**—This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated. For details about recommended cold tire inflation pressure, see "Tires" on page 330.
7. **Tire ply composition and materials**—Plies mean a layer of rubber- coated parallel cords. Cords mean the strands forming the plies in the tire.
8. **"TUBELESS" or "TUBE TYPE"**—A tubeless tire does not have a tube inside the tire and air is directly filled in the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.
9. **Radial tires or bias- ply tires**—A radial tire has "RADIAL" on the sidewall. A tire not marked with "RADIAL" is a bias- ply tire.

**—DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN)**

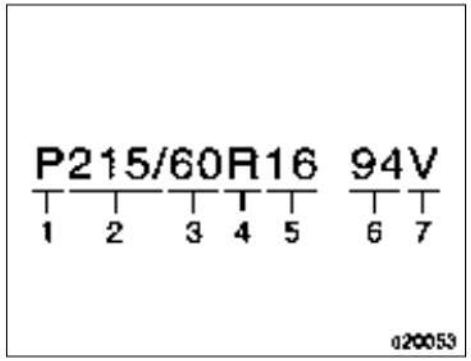



This illustration indicates typical DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN).

1. "DOT" symbol
2. Tire Identification Number (TIN)
3. Tire manufacturer's identification mark
4. Tire size code
5. Manufacturer's optional tire type code
6. Manufacturing week
7. Manufacturing year

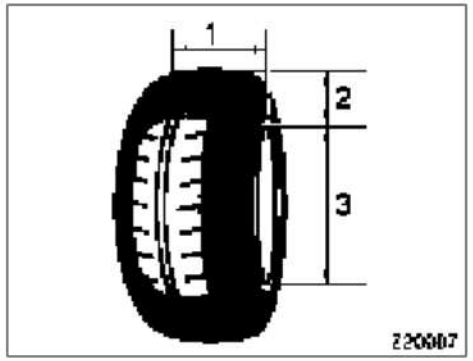
The "DOT" symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

**—Tire size**



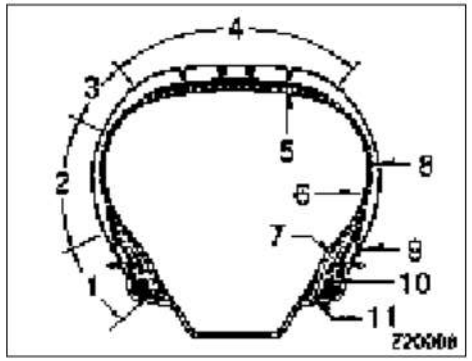

This illustration indicates typical tire size.

1. Tire use (P=Passenger car, T=Temporary use)
2. Section width (in millimeters)
3. Aspect ratio (tire height to section width)
4. Tire construction code (R=Radial, D=Diagonal)
5. Wheel diameter (in inches)
6. Load index (2 digits or 3 digits)
7. Speed symbol (alphabet with one letter)




1. Section width
2. Tire height
3. Wheel diameter

**—Name of each section of tire**




1. Bead
2. Sidewall
3. Shoulder
4. Tread
5. Belt
6. Inner liner
7. Reinforcing rubber
8. Carcass
9. Rim lines
10. Bead wires
11. Chafer

### —Uniform tire quality grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation. It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Toyota vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Toyota dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

**DOT quality grades—All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

**Treadwear—**The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1- 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

**Traction AA, A, B, C—**The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

**Temperature A, B, C—**The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No.109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades for this tire are established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## —Glossary of tire terminology

| Tire related term | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Accessory weight | the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory- installed equipment (whether installed or not) |
| Cold tire inflation pressure | tire inflation pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or more, or it has not been driven more than 1.5 km or 1 mile under that condition |
| Curb weight | the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, and, if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine |
| Intended outboard sidewall | (A) the sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or<br>(B) the outward facing sidewall of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle |
| Maximum inflation pressure | the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated and it is shown on the sidewall of the tire |
| Maximum loaded vehicle weight | the sum of—<br>(a) curb weight;<br>(b) accessory weight;<br>(c) vehicle capacity weight; and<br>(d) production options weight |

| Tire related term | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Normal occupant weight | 68 kg (150 lb.) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1 that follows |
| Occupant distribution | distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1 that follows |
| Production options weight | the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 2.3 kg (5 lb.) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim |
| Recommended inflation pressure | cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer |
| Rim | a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated |
| Rim diameter (Wheel diameter) | nominal diameter of the bead seat |
| Rim size designation | rim diameter and width |
| Rim type designation | the industry of manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code |
| Rim width | nominal distance between rim flanges |
| Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity) | the rated cargo and luggage load plus 68 kg (150 lb.) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity |
| Vehicle maximum load on the tire | the load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two |

| Tire related term | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Vehicle normal load on the tire | the load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1 that follows) and dividing by two |
| Weather side | the surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire |

**Table 1—Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities**

| Designated seating capacity, number of occupants | Vehicle normal load, number of occupants | Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle |
|---|---|---|
| 2 through 4 | 2 | 2 in front |
| 5 through 10 | 3 | 2 in front, 1 in second seat |

## Vehicle load limits

Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity. Follow the load limits shown below. Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity. Follow the load limits shown below. Total load capacity and seating capacity are also described on the tire and loading information label. For location of the tire and loading information label, see "Checking tire inflation pressure" on page 305.

**Total load capacity:**

Coupe
410 kg (900 lb.)

Convertible
342 kg (754 lb.)

Total load capacity means combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage. Tongue load is included when trailer towing.

**Seating capacity:**

Coupe
Total 5 (Front 2, Rear 3)

Convertible
Total 4 (Front 2, Rear 2)

Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is supposed to be 68 kg (150 lb.) per person. Depending on the weight of each person, the seating capacity given may exceed the total load capacity.

***NOTICE***

***Even if the number of occupants are within the seating capacity, do not exceed the total load capacity.***

**Towing capacity**

Toyota does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing.

**Cargo capacity**

Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the size (weight) and the number of occupants. For details, see "Capacity and distribution" that follows.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not apply the load more than each load limit. That may cause not only damage to the tires, but also deterioration to the steering ability and braking ability, which may cause an accident.**

## Cargo and luggage— —Stowage precautions

When stowing cargo and luggage in the vehicle, observe the following:

◀ Put cargo and luggage in the trunk when at all possible. Be sure all items are secured in place.

◀ Be careful to keep the vehicle balanced. Locating the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain balance.

◀ For better fuel economy, do not carry unneeded weight.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**◀ To prevent cargo and luggage from sliding forward during braking, do not stack anything in the enlarged trunk. Keep cargo and luggage low, as close to the floor as possible.**

**◀ Never allow anyone to ride in the enlarged trunk. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer serious bodily injury, in the event of sudden braking or a collision.**

**◀ Do not place anything on the package tray behind the rear seatback. Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or an accident.**

**◀ Do not drive with objects left on top of the instrument panel. They may interfere with the driver's field of view. Or they may move during sharp vehicle acceleration or turning, and impair the driver's control of the vehicle. In an accident they may injure the vehicle occupants.**

## —Capacity and distribution

**Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.**

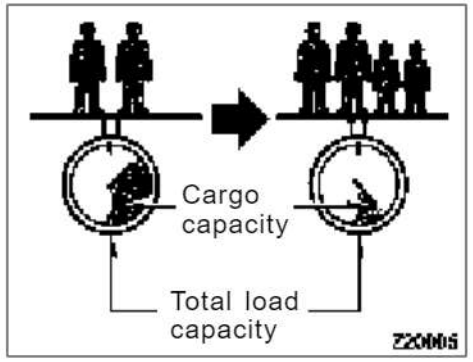
(Cargo capacity) = (Total load capacity) – (Total weight of occupants)

**STEPS FOR DETERMINING CORRECT LOAD LIMIT**

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX pounds" on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or XXX pounds.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400–750 (5x150)=650 lbs).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Toyota does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing.




**EXAMPLE ON YOUR VEHICLE**

Coupe—In case that 2 people with the combined weight of 166 kg (366 lb.) are riding in your vehicle with the total load capacity of 410 kg (900 lb.), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be as follows:
410 kg – 166 kg = 244 kg.
(900 lb. – 366 lb. = 534 lb.)

Convertible—In case that 2 people with the combined weight of 166 kg (366 lb.) are riding in your vehicle with the total load capacity of 342 kg (754 lb.), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be as follows:
342 kg – 166 kg = 176 kg.
(754 lb. – 366 lb. = 388 lb.)

From this condition, if 2 more passengers with the combined weight of 93 kg (205 lb.) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced as follows:

Coupe
244 kg – 93 kg = 151 kg.
(534 lb. – 205 lb. = 329 lb.)

Convertible
176 kg – 93 kg = 83 kg.
(388 lb. – 205 lb. = 183 lb.)

As shown in the above example, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load equaling the combined weight of occupants who got on later must be reduced. In other words, if the increase in the number of occupants causes the excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you have to reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.

For details about total load capacity, see "Vehicle load limits" on page 243.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Even if the total load of occupant's weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly. That may cause not only damage to the tire but also deterioration to the steering ability due to imbalance of the vehicle possibly causing an accident.**

## Types of tires

**Determine what kind of tires your vehicle is originally equipped with.**

### 1. Summer tires

Summer tires are high- speed capability tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions.

Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow- covered or icy roads. For driving on snow- covered or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

### 2. All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use all year round.

All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

The details about how to distinguish summer tires from all season tires are described on page 233.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**◀Do not mix summer and all season tires on your vehicle as this can cause dangerous handling characteristics, resulting in loss of control.**

**◀Do not use tires other than the manufacturer's designated tires, and never mix tires or wheels of the sizes different from the originally equipped tires and wheels.**

# SECTION 3

# STARTING AND DRIVING

## Starting and driving

Before starting the engine ..... 248
How to start the engine ..... 248
Tips for driving in various conditions ..... 249
Winter driving tips ..... 250
Dinghy towing ..... 251
Trailer towing ..... 252
How to save fuel and make your vehicle last longer ..... 253

## Before starting the engine

1. Check the area around the vehicle before entering it.
2. Adjust seat position, seatback angle, seat cushion height, head restraint height and steering wheel angle and length.
3. Adjust the inside and outside rear view mirrors.
4. Lock all doors.
5. Fasten seat belts.

## How to start the engine—(a) Before cranking

1. Apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. **Manual transmission:** Press the clutch pedal to the floor and shift the transmission into neutral. Hold the clutch pedal to the floor until the engine is started. A starter safety device will prevent the starter from operating if the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.

   **Automatic transmission:** Put the selector lever in "P". If you need to restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, put the selector lever in "N". A starter safety device will prevent the starter from operating if the selector lever is in any drive position.
4. **Automatic transmission only:** Depress the brake pedal and hold it to the floor until driving off.

## (b) Starting the engine

Before starting the engine, be sure to follow the instructions in "(a) Before cranking".

**Normal starting procedure**

The multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system in your engine automatically controls the proper air-fuel mixture for starting. You can start a cold or hot engine as follows:

With your foot off the accelerator pedal, crank the engine by turning the key to "START". Release it when the engine starts.

Engine should be warmed up by driving, not in idle. For warming up, drive with smoothly turning engine until engine coolant temperature is within normal range.

**If the engine stalls...**

Simply restart it, using the correct procedure given in normal starting.

**If the engine will not start...**

See "If your vehicle will not start" on page 256 in Section 4.

**NOTICE**

- ***Do not crank for more than 30 seconds at a time. This may overheat the starter and wiring systems.***
- ***Do not race a cold engine.***
- ***If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have the engine checked immediately.***

## Tips for driving in various conditions

◀Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. This will allow you much better control.

◀Drive slowly onto curbs and, if possible, at a right angle. Avoid driving onto high, sharp-edged objects and other road hazards. Failure to do so can lead to severe tire damage such as a tire burst.

Drive slowly when passing over bumps or traveling on a bumpy road. Otherwise, the impact could cause severe damage to the tires and/or wheels.

◀When parking on a hill, turn the front wheels until they touch the curb so that the vehicle will not roll. Apply the parking brake, and place the transmission in "P" (automatic) or in first or reverse (manual). If necessary, block the wheels.

◀Washing your vehicle or driving through deep water may get the brakes wet. To see whether they are wet, check that there is no traffic near you, and then press the pedal lightly. If you do not feel a normal braking force, the brakes are probably wet. To dry them, drive the vehicle cautiously while lightly pressing the brake pedal with the parking brake applied. If they still do not work safely, pull to the side of the road and call a Toyota dealer for assistance.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**◀Before driving off, make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the parking brake reminder light is off.**

**◀Do not leave your vehicle unattended while the engine is running.**

**◀Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving. It can cause dangerous overheating, needless wear, and poor fuel economy.**

**◀To drive down a long or steep hill, reduce your speed and downshift. Remember, if you ride the brakes excessively, they may overheat and not work properly.**

**Be careful when accelerating, upshifting, downshifting or braking on a slippery surface. Sudden acceleration or engine braking could cause the vehicle to skid or spin.**

**Do not drive in excess of the speed limit. Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 140 km/h (85 mph) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 140 km/h (85 mph) may result in tire failure, loss of control and possible injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.**

**Do not continue normal driving when the brakes are wet. If they are wet, your vehicle will require a longer stopping distance, and it may pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Also, the parking brake will not hold the vehicle securely.**

## Winter driving tips

**Make sure your coolant is properly protected against freezing.**

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. (Coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology is a combination of low phosphates and organic acids.)

See "Checking the engine coolant level" on page 302 in Section 7-2 for details of coolant type selection.

For the U.S.A.—"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. This coolant provides protection down to about -35°C (-31°F).

For Canada—"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. This coolant provides protection down to about -42°C (-44°F).

| *NOTICE* |
| --- |
| *Do not use plain water alone.* |

**Check the condition of the battery and cables.**

Cold temperatures reduce the capacity of any battery, so it must be in top shape to provide enough power for winter starting. Section 7-3 tells you how to visually inspect the battery. Your Toyota dealer and most service stations will be pleased to check the level of charge.

**Make sure the engine oil viscosity is suitable for the cold weather.**

See page 300 in Section 7-2 for recommended viscosity. Leaving a heavy summer oil in your vehicle during winter months may cause harder starting. If you are not sure about which oil to use, call your Toyota dealer—they will be pleased to help.

**Keep the door locks from freezing.**

Squirt lock de-icer or glycerine into the locks to keep them from freezing.

**Use a washer fluid containing an antifreeze solution.**

This product is available at your Toyota dealer and most auto parts stores. Follow the manufacturer's directions for how much to mix with water.

**NOTICE**

***Do not use engine antifreeze or any other substitute because it may damage your vehicle's paint.***

**Do not use your parking brake when there is a possibility it could freeze.**

When parking, put the transmission into "P" (automatic) or into first or reverse (manual) and block the rear wheels. Do not use the parking brake, or snow or water accumulated in and around the parking brake mechanism may freeze, making it hard to release.

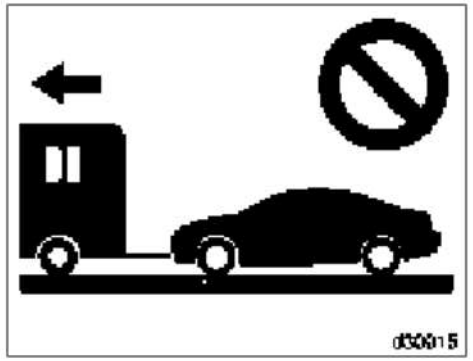
**Keep ice and snow from accumulating under the fenders.**

Ice and snow built up under your fenders can make steering difficult. During bad winter driving, stop and check under the fenders occasionally.

**Depending on where you are driving, we recommend you carry some emergency equipment.**

Some of the things you might put in the vehicle are tire chains, window scraper, bag of sand or salt, flares, small shovel, jumper cables, etc.

## Dinghy towing (with automatic transmission)

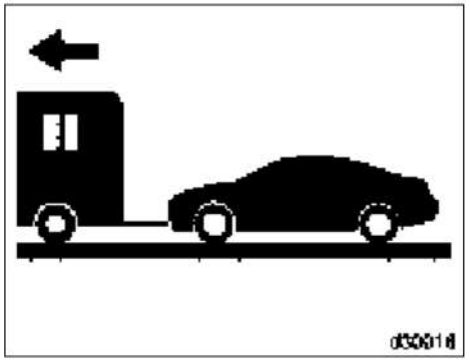


**Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with four wheels on the ground) behind a motorhome.**

**NOTICE**

***Do not tow your vehicle with four wheels on the ground. This may cause serious damage to your vehicle.***

## Dinghy towing (with manual transmission)



**Your vehicle can be dinghy towed (with four wheels on the ground) from the front behind a motorhome.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Dinghy towing requires special equipment and accessories. Please refer to your service outlet of the motorhome manufacture for the recommended equipment.**

**NOTICE**

***Dinghy towing does not eliminate the possibility of damage to your vehicle.***

### DINGHY TOWING TIPS

**Before dinghy towing, be sure to observe the following in order to reduce the damage to your vehicle.**

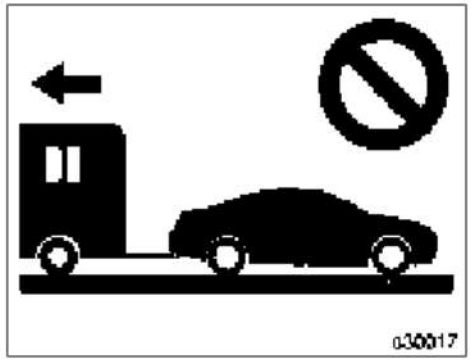
1. Put the shift lever in neutral.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the "ACC" position. Make sure the audio is turned off and any item is not plugged into the power outlet.

**NOTICE**

***To avoid the locking of the steering wheel, turn the ignition switch to the "ACC" position.***

3. Release the parking brake.

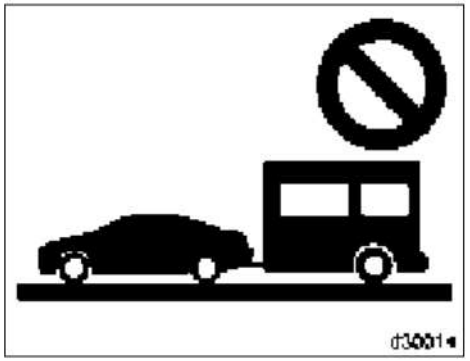
After dinghy towing, let the engine idle for more than 3 minutes before driving the vehicle.



**NOTICE**

***Do not tow your vehicle from the rear. This may cause serious damage to your vehicle.***

## Trailer towing



**Toyota does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing.**

## How to save fuel and make your vehicle last longer

Improving fuel economy is easy—just take it easy. It will help make your vehicle last longer, too. Here are some specific tips on how to save money on both fuel and repairs:

- **Keep your tires inflated at the correct pressure.** Underinflation causes tire wear and wastes fuel. See page 305 in Section 7-2 for instructions.
- **Do not carry unneeded weight in your vehicle.** Excess weight puts a heavier load on the engine, causing greater fuel consumption.
- **Avoid lengthy warm-up idling.** Once the engine is running smoothly, begin driving—but gently. Remember, however, that on cold winter days this may take a little longer.
- **Put the selector lever into the "D" when engine brake is not required.** Driving without the "D" position will reduce the fuel economy. (For details, see "Automatic transmission" on page 141 in Section 1-7.)
- **Accelerate slowly and smoothly.** Avoid jackrabbit starts. Get into high gear as quickly as possible.
- **Avoid long engine idling.** If you have a long wait and you are not in traffic, it is better to turn off the engine and start again later.
- **Avoid engine lugging or over-revving.** Use a gear position suitable for the road on which you are traveling.
- **Avoid continuous speeding up and slowing down.** Stop-and-go driving wastes fuel.
- **Avoid unnecessary stopping and braking.** Maintain a steady pace. Try to time the traffic signals so you only need to stop as little as possible or take advantage of through streets to avoid traffic lights. Keep a proper distance from other vehicles to avoid sudden braking. This will also reduce wear on your brakes.
- **Avoid heavy traffic or traffic jams whenever possible.**
- **Do not rest your foot on the clutch or brake pedal.** This causes premature wear, overheating and poor fuel economy.
- **Maintain a moderate speed on highways.** The faster you drive, the greater the fuel consumption. By reducing your speed, you will cut down on fuel consumption.
- **Keep the front wheels in proper alignment.** Avoid hitting the curb and slow down on rough roads. Improper alignment not only causes faster tire wear but also puts an extra load on the engine, which, in turn, wastes fuel.
- **Keep the bottom of your vehicle free from mud, etc.** This not only lessens weight but also helps prevent corrosion.
- **Keep your vehicle tuned-up and in top shape.** A dirty air cleaner, improper valve clearance, dirty plugs, dirty oil and grease, brakes not adjusted, etc. all lower engine performance and contribute to poor fuel economy. For longer life of all parts and lower operating costs, keep all maintenance work on schedule, and if you often drive under severe conditions, see that your vehicle receives more frequent maintenance. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Scheduled Maintenance Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".)

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Never turn off the engine to coast down hills. Your power steering and brake booster will not function without the engine running. Also, the emission control system operates properly only when the engine is running.**

# SECTION 4

# IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

## In case of an emergency

If your vehicle will not start ..... 256
If your engine stalls while driving ..... 259
If you cannot increase engine speed ..... 260
If your vehicle overheats ..... 260
If you have a flat tire ..... 261
If your vehicle becomes stuck ..... 270
If your vehicle needs to be towed ..... 271
If you cannot shift automatic transmission selector lever ..... 274
If the convertible top does not rise or lower ..... 274
If you lose your keys ..... 275
If you lose your wireless remote control transmitter ..... 276

## If your vehicle will not start—
## (a) Simple checks

Before making these checks, make sure you have followed the correct starting procedure given in "How to start the engine" on page 248 in Section 3 and that you have sufficient fuel. Also, check whether the other keys will start the engine. If they work, your key may be broken. Have the key checked at your Toyota dealer. If none of your keys work, there may be a malfunction in the immobilizer system. Call your Toyota dealer. (See "Keys" on page 12 in Section 1-2.)

**If the engine is not turning over or is turning over too slowly—**

1. Check that the battery terminals are tight and clean.
2. If the battery terminals are O.K., switch on the interior light.
3. If the light is out, dim or goes out when the starter is cranked, the battery is discharged. You may try jump starting. See "(c) Jump starting" on page 257 for further instructions.

If the light is O.K., but the engine still will not start, it needs adjustment or repair. Call a Toyota dealer or qualified repair shop.

***NOTICE***

***Do not pull- or push-start the vehicle. It may damage the vehicle or cause a collision when the engine starts. Also the three-way catalytic converter may overheat and become a fire hazard.***

**If the engine turns over at its normal speed but will not start—**

1. Turn the ignition key to "ACC" or "LOCK" and try starting the engine again.
2. If the engine will not start, the engine may be flooded because of repeated cranking. See "(b) Starting a flooded engine" on page 256 for further instructions.
3. If the engine still will not start, it needs adjustment or repair. Call a Toyota dealer or qualified repair shop.

## (b) Starting a flooded engine

**If the engine will not start, your engine may be flooded because of repeated cranking.**

If this happens, turn the key to "START" with the accelerator pedal fully depressed. Keep the key and accelerator pedal in these positions for 15 seconds and release them. Then try starting the engine with your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If the engine does not start after 15 seconds of cranking, release the key, wait a few minutes and try again.

If the engine still will not start, it needs adjustment or repair. Call a Toyota dealer or qualified repair shop for assistance.

***NOTICE***

***Do not crank for more than 30 seconds at a time. This may overheat the starter and wiring systems.***

## (c) Jump starting

**To avoid serious personal injury and damage to your vehicle which might result from battery explosion, acid burns, electrical burns, or damaged electronic components, these instructions must be followed precisely.**

If you are unsure about how to follow this procedure, we strongly recommend that you seek the help of a competent mechanic or towing service.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**◀Batteries contain sulfuric acid which is poisonous and corrosive. Wear protective safety glasses when jump starting, and avoid spilling acid on your skin, clothing, or vehicle.**

**◀If you should accidentally get acid on yourself or in your eyes, remove any contaminated clothing and flush the affected area with water immediately. Then get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while enroute to the medical office.**

**◀The gas normally produced by a battery will explode if a flame or spark is brought near. Use only standardized jumper cables and do not smoke or light a match while jump starting.**

***NOTICE***

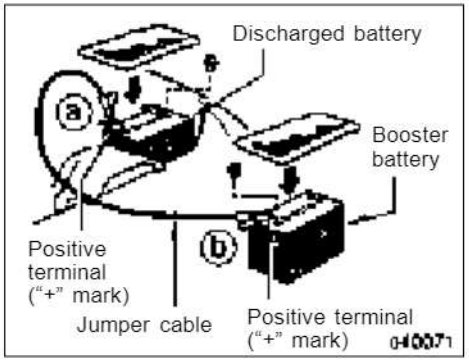
***The battery used for boosting must be 12 V. Do not jump start unless you are sure that the booster battery is correct.***

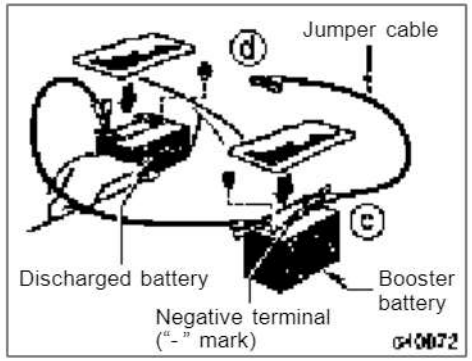
**JUMP STARTING PROCEDURE**

1. If the booster battery is installed in another vehicle, make sure the vehicles are not touching. Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.

   When boosting, use the battery of matching or higher quality. Any other battery may be difficult to jump start with.

   If jump starting is difficult, charge the battery for several minutes.
2. If required, remove all the vent plugs from the booster and discharged batteries. Lay a cloth over the open vents on the batteries. (This helps reduce the explosion hazard, personal injuries and burns.)
3. If the engine in the vehicle with the booster battery is not running, start it and let it run for a few minutes. During jump starting run the engine at about 2000 rpm with the accelerator pedal lightly depressed.




4. Make the cable connections in the order a, b, c, d.

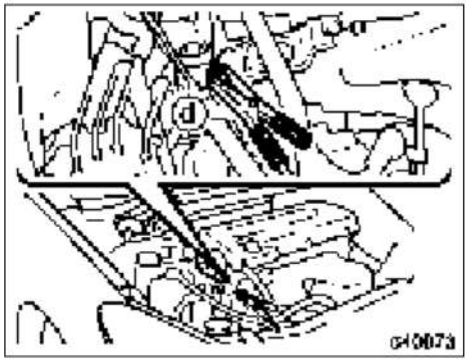
   a. Connect the clamp of the positive (red) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery.

   b. Connect the clamp at the other end of the positive (red) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on the booster battery.

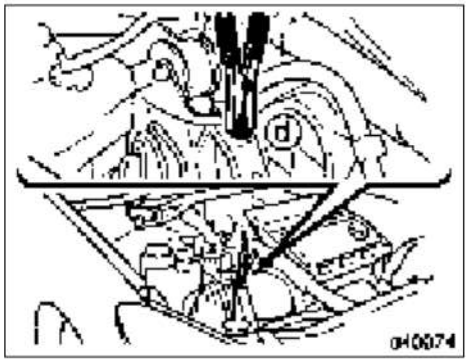
   c. Connect the clamp of the negative (black) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal on the booster battery.

   d. Connect the clamp at the other end of the negative (black) jumper cable to a solid, stationary, unpainted, metallic point of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

   The recommended connecting points are shown in the following illustrations:




**Connecting point for 2AZ-FE engine**




**Connecting point for 3MZ-FE engine**

Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When making the connections, to avoid serious injury, do not lean over the battery or accidentally let the jumper cables or clamps touch anything except the correct battery terminals or the ground.**

5. Start your engine in the normal way. After starting, run it at about 2000 rpm for several minutes with the accelerator pedal lightly depressed.
6. Carefully disconnect the cables in the exact reverse order: the negative cable and then the positive cable.
7. Carefully dispose of the battery cover cloths—they may now contain sulfuric acid.
8. If removed, replace all the battery vent plugs.

If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent (for example, lights left on), you should have it checked at your Toyota dealer.

**If the first start attempt is not successful...**

Check that the clamp on the jumper cables are tight. Recharge the discharged battery with the jumper cables connected for several minutes and restart your engine in the normal way.

If the another attempt is not successful, the battery may be depleted. Have it checked at your Toyota dealer.

## If your engine stalls while driving

If your engine stalls while driving...

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Turn the ignition key to "ACC" or "LOCK", and try starting the engine again.

If the engine will not start, see "If your vehicle will not start" on page 256 in this Section.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not work so steering and braking will be much harder than usual.**

## If you cannot increase engine speed

If engine speed does not increase when the accelerator pedal is depressed, there may be a problem somewhere in the electronic throttle control system.

At this time, vibration may occur. However, if you depress the accelerator pedal more firmly and slowly, you can drive your vehicle at low speeds. Have your vehicle checked by your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

Even if the abnormality of the electronic throttle control system is corrected during low speed driving, the system may not be recovered until the engine is stopped and the ignition key is turned to "ACC" or "LOCK" position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Be especially careful to prevent erroneous pedal operation.**

## If your vehicle overheats

**If your engine coolant temperature gauge indicates overheating, if you experience a loss of power, or if you hear a loud knocking or pinging noise, the engine has probably overheated. You should follow this procedure...**

1. Pull safely off the road, stop the vehicle and turn on your emergency flashers. Put the transmission in "P" (automatic) or neutral (manual) and apply the parking brake. Turn off the air conditioning if it is being used.
2. If coolant or steam is boiling out of the radiator or reservoir, stop the engine. Wait until the steam subsides before opening the hood. If there is no coolant boiling over or steam, leave the engine running and make sure the electric cooling fan is operating. If it is not, turn the ignition off.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**To help avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until there is no steam. Escaping steam or coolant is a sign of very high pressure.**

3. Look for obvious coolant leaks from the radiator, hoses,and under the vehicle. However, note that water draining from the air conditioning is normal if it has been used.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When the engine is running, keep hands and clothing away from the moving fan and engine drive belts.**

4. If the coolant is leaking, stop the engine immediately. Call a Toyota dealer for assistance.
5. If there are no obvious leaks, check the coolant reservoir. If it is dry, add coolant to the reservoir while the engine is running. Fill it about half full. For the coolant type, see "Coolant type selection" on page 303 in Section 7-2.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not attempt to remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injury could result from scalding hot fluid and steam blown out under pressure.**

6. After the engine coolant temperature has cooled to normal, again check the coolant level in the reservoir. If necessary, bring it up to half full again. Serious coolant loss indicates a leak in the system. You should have it checked as soon as possible at your Toyota dealer.

### If you have a flat tire—

1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place well away from the traffic. Avoid stopping on the center divider of a highway. Park on a level spot with firm ground.
2. Stop the engine and turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Firmly set the parking brake and put the transmission in "P" (automatic) or reverse (manual).
4. Have everyone get out of the vehicle on the side away from traffic.
5. Read the following instructions thoroughly.

**⚠ CAUTION**

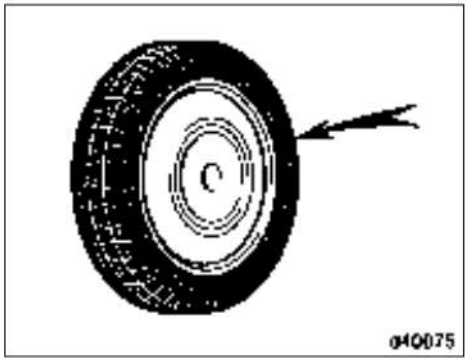
**When jacking, be sure to observe the following to reduce the possibility of personal injury:**

- **Follow jacking instructions.**
- **Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by the jack. Otherwise, personal injury may occur.**
- **Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.**
- **Stop the vehicle on a level firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and put the transmission in "P" (automatic) or reverse (manual). Block the wheel diagonally opposite to the one being changed if necessary.**

- ◀Make sure to set the jack properly in the jack point. Raising the vehicle with jack improperly positioned will damage the vehicle or may allow the vehicle to fall off the jack and cause personal injury.
- ◀Never get under the vehicle when the vehicle is supported by the jack alone.
- ◀Use the jack only for lifting your vehicle during wheel changing.
- ◀Do not raise the vehicle with someone in the vehicle.
- ◀When raising the vehicle, do not place any objects on top of or underneath the jack.
- ◀Raise the vehicle only high enough to remove and change the tire.

***NOTICE***

***Do not continue driving with a deflated tire. Driving even a short distance can damage a tire and wheel beyond repair.***




**Compact spare tire (on some models)**

**The compact spare tire is designed for temporary emergency use only.**

The compact spare tire is identified by the distinctive wording "TEMPORARY USE ONLY" molded into the side wall of the tire.

The compact spare tire saves space in your luggage compartment, and its lighter weight helps to improve fuel economy and permits easier installation in case of a flat tire.

The compact spare tire can be used many times, if necessary. It has tread life of up to 4800 km (3000 miles) depending on road conditions and your driving habits. When tread wear indicators appear on the tire, replace the tire.

See also the tire information on page 308 in Section 7- 2 for details on the tread wear indicators and other service information.

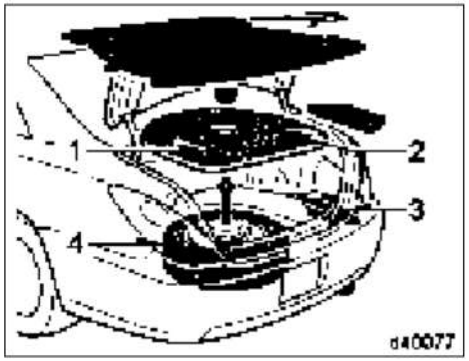
**⚠ CAUTION**

- **The compact spare tire was designed especially for your Toyota. Do not use it on any other vehicle.**
- **Do not use more than one compact spare tire at the same time.**
- **The pressure for the compact spare tire must be 420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm$^2$ or bar, 60 psi).**
- **Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when driving with the compact spare tire.**
- **Replace the compact spare tire with the standard tire as soon as possible.**
- **Avoid sudden acceleration, sudden deceleration and sharp turns with the compact spare tire.**

***NOTICE***

***Your ground clearance is reduced when the compact spare tire is installed so avoid driving over obstacles and drive slowly on rough, unpaved roads and speed bumps. Also, do not attempt to go through an automatic car wash as the vehicle may get caught, resulting in damage.***

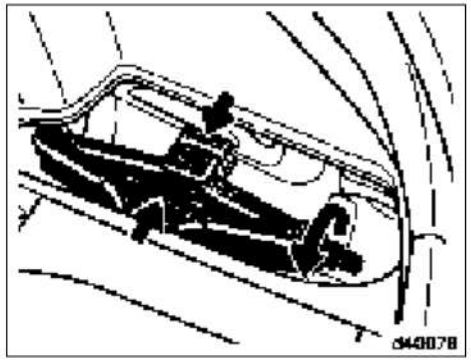
**—Required tools and spare tire**



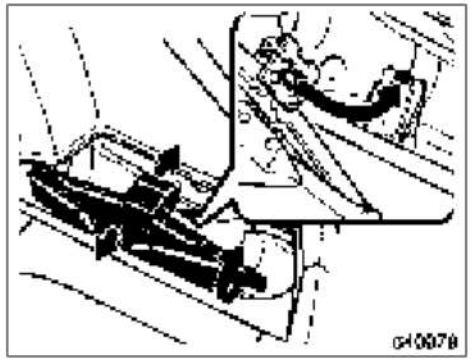

**1. Get the required tools and spare tire.**

1. Jack handle
2. Wheel nut wrench
3. Jack
4. Spare tire

To prepare yourself for an emergency, you should familiarize yourself with the use of the jack, each of the tools and their storage locations.

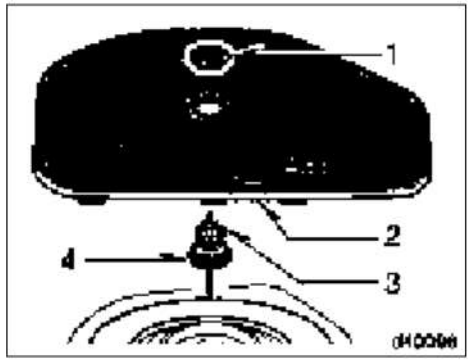


To remove the jack, turn the jack joint counterclockwise by hand until the jack becomes free.



To store the jack, align the hole of the jack head with the vehicle hook. Turn the jack joint clockwise until the jack base fits securely with the vehicle body.

This prevents the jack from flying forward during a collision or sudden stop.



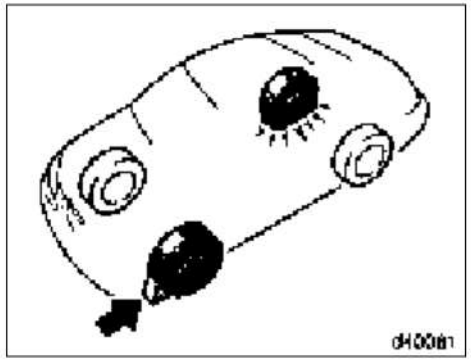

To remove the spare tire:

1. Loosen the nut and remove it.
2. Remove the spare tire cover.
3. Loosen the bolt and remove it.
4. Remove the spacer.

Then take the spare tire out of the vehicle.

When storing the spare tire, put it in place with the outer side of the wheel facing up. Then secure the tire by repeating the above removal steps in reverse order to prevent it from flying forward during a collision or sudden braking.

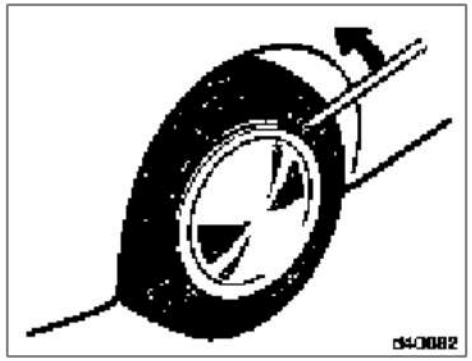
—Blocking the wheel



**2. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire to keep the vehicle from rolling when it is jacked up.**

When blocking the wheel, place a wheel block in front of one of the front wheels or behind one of the rear wheels.

—Removing wheel ornament (steel wheels)



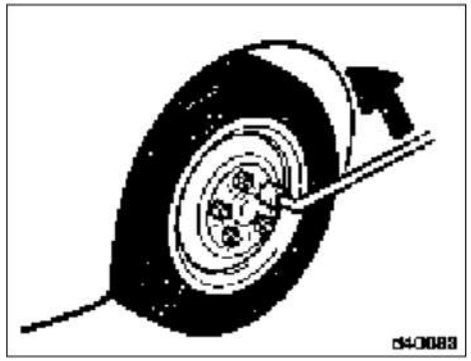
**3. Remove the wheel ornament.**

Pry off the wheel ornament, using the beveled end of the wheel nut wrench as shown.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not try to pull off the ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.**

—Loosening wheel nuts



**4. Loosen all the wheel nuts.**

Always loosen the wheel nuts before raising the vehicle.

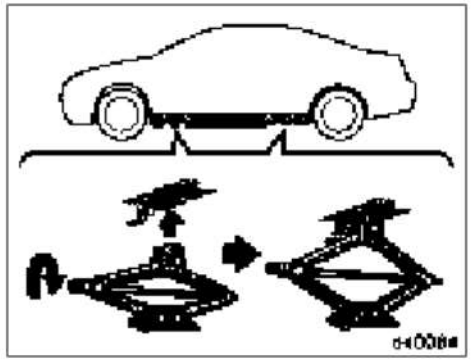
Turn the wheel nuts counterclockwise to loosen. To get maximum leverage, fit the wrench to the nut so that the handle is on the right side, as shown above. Grab the wrench near the end of the handle and pull up on the handle. Be careful that the wrench does not slip off the nut.

Do not remove the nuts yet—just unscrew them about one- half turn.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Never use oil or grease on the bolts or nuts. The nuts may loose and the wheels may fall off, which could cause a serious accident.**

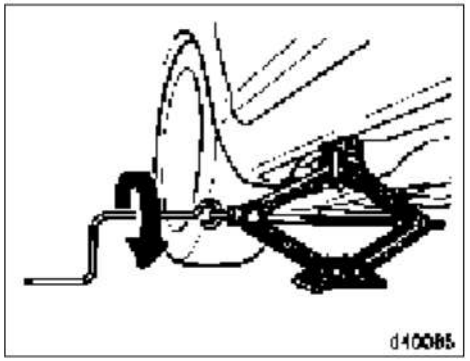
**—Positioning the jack**



**5. Position the jack at the correct jack point as shown. Rotate the load rest 90° from storage position to lifting position.**

Make sure the jack is positioned on a level and solid place.

**—Raising your vehicle**



**6. After making sure that no one is in the vehicle, raise it high enough so that the spare tire can be installed.**

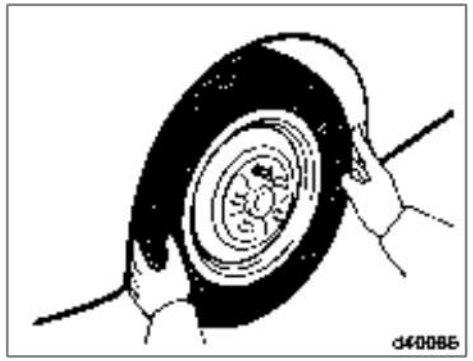
Remember you will need more ground clearance when putting on the spare tire than when removing the flat tire.

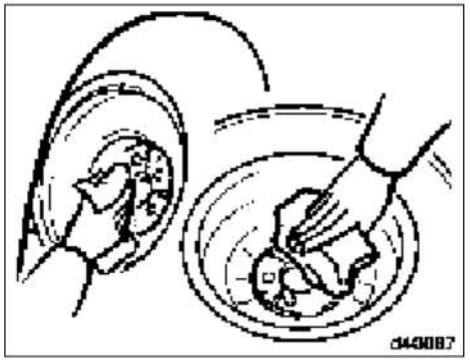
To raise the vehicle, insert the jack handle into the jack (it is a loose fit) and turn it clockwise. As the jack touches the vehicle and begins to lift, double- check that it is properly positioned.

**—Changing wheels**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Never get under the vehicle when the vehicle is supported by the jack alone.**



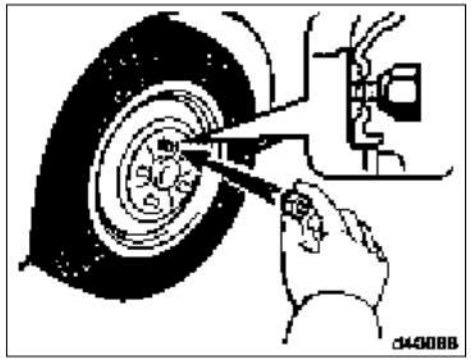

**7. Remove the wheel nuts and change tires.**

Lift the flat tire straight off and put it aside.

Roll the spare wheel into position and align the holes in the wheel with the bolts. Then lift up the wheel and get at least the top bolt started through its hole. Wiggle the tire and press it back over the other bolts.

Before putting on wheels, remove any corrosion on the mounting surfaces with a wire brush or such. Installation of wheels without good metal- to- metal contact at the mounting surface can cause wheel nuts to loosen and eventually cause a wheel to come off while driving.

### —Reinstalling wheel nuts



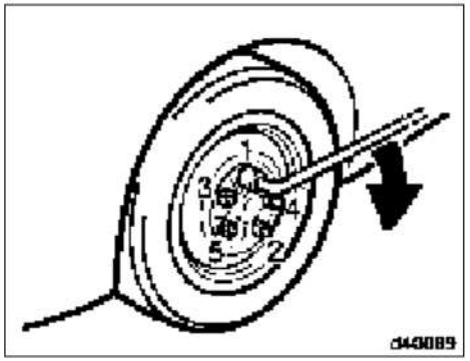

**8. Reinstall all the wheel nuts finger tight.**

Reinstall the wheel nuts (tapered end inward) and tighten them as much as you can by hand. Press back on the tire and see if you can tighten them more.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Never use oil or grease on the bolts or nuts. Doing so may lead to overtightening the nuts and damaging the bolts. The nuts may loose and the wheels may fall off, which could cause a serious accident. If there is oil or grease on any bolt or nut, clean it.**

### —Lowering your vehicle




**9. Lower the vehicle completely and tighten the wheel nuts.**

Turn the jack handle counterclockwise to lower the vehicle.

Use only the wheel nut wrench to tighten the nuts. Do not use other tools or any additional leverage other than your hands, such as a hammer, pipe or your foot. Make sure the wrench is securely engaged over the nut.

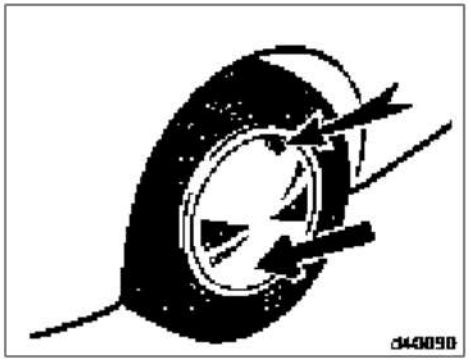
Tighten each nut a little at a time in the order shown. Repeat the process until all the nuts are tight.

**—Reinstalling wheel ornament (steel wheels)**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**◀When lowering the vehicle, make sure all portions of your body and all other persons around will not be injured as the vehicle is lowered to the ground.**

**◀Have the wheel nuts tightened with torque wrench to 104 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 77 ft·lbf), as soon as possible after changing wheels. Otherwise, the nuts may loosen and the wheels may fall off, which could cause a serious accident.**



**10.Reinstall the wheel ornament.**

1. Put the wheel ornament into position.

Align the cutout of the wheel ornament with the valve stem as shown.

2. Press hand firmly on one side of wheel ornament and then firmly tap the other side around the edge of wheel ornament with the heel of your hand to snap into place.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.**

### —After changing wheels

**11. Check the air pressure of the replaced tire.**

Adjust the air pressure to the specification designed on page 330 in Section 8. If the pressure is lower, drive slowly to the nearest service station and fill to the correct pressure.

Do not forget to reinstall the tire inflation valve cap as dirt and moisture could get into the valve core and possibly cause air leakage. If the cap is missing, have a new one put on as soon as possible.

**12. Restow all the tools, jack and flat tire securely.**

As soon after changing wheels as possible, tighten the wheel nuts to the torque specified on page 330 in Section 8 with a torque wrench. Have a technician repair the flat tire and replace the spare tire with it.

**Initial adjustment of the tire pressure warning system is necessary after you have rotated your tires. See "Tire pressure warning system" on page 150 in Section 1-7.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Before driving, make sure all the tools, jack and flat tire are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.**

### If your vehicle becomes stuck

**If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward.**

**Vehicles with traction control system—Turn off the traction control system to become unstuck to allow the tires to spin enough to remove the vehicle from the obstruction. (For details, see "Traction control system" on page 146 in Section 1-7.)**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.**

**NOTICE**

*If you rock your vehicle, observe the following precautions to prevent damage to the transmission and other parts.*

- *Do not depress the accelerator pedal while shifting the selector lever or before the transmission is completely shifted to forward or reverse gear.*
- *Do not race the engine and avoid spinning the wheels.*
- *If your vehicle remains stuck after rocking the vehicle several times, consider other ways such as towing.*

## If your vehicle needs to be towed—

(a) Towing with wheel lift type truck—

—From front



—From rear



(b) Using flat bed truck



**If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by your Toyota dealer or a commercial tow truck service. In consultation with them, have your vehicle towed using either (a) or (b).**

**Manual transmission models with towing eyelet—Only when you cannot receive a towing service from a Toyota dealer or commercial tow truck service, tow your vehicle carefully in accordance with the instructions given in "—Emergency towing" on page 273 in this Section.**

Proper equipment will help ensure that your vehicle is not damaged while being towed. Commercial operators are generally aware of the state/provincial and local laws pertaining to towing.

Your vehicle can be damaged if it is towed incorrectly. Although most operators know the correct procedure, it is possible to make a mistake. To avoid damage to your vehicle, make sure the following precautions are observed. If necessary, show this page to the tow truck driver.

**TOWING PRECAUTIONS:**

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by the state/provincial and local laws. The wheels and axle on the ground must be in good condition. If they are damaged, use a towing dolly.

**(a) Towing with wheel lift type truck**

**NOTICE**

***When lifting wheels, take care to ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Otherwise, the bumper and/or underbody of the towed vehicle will be damaged during towing.***

**From front—**Release the parking brake.

**From rear—**

◀Manual transmission:

We recommend using a towing dolly under the front wheels. If you do not use a towing dolly, place the ignition key in the "ACC" position and put the transmission in neutral.

**NOTICE**

***Do not tow with the key removed or in the "LOCK" position when towing from the rear without a towing dolly. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.***

◀Automatic transmission:

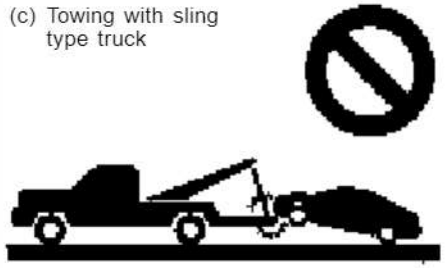
Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

**NOTICE**

***Never tow a vehicle with an automatic transmission from the rear with the front wheels on the ground, as this may cause serious damage to the transmission.***

**(b) Using flat bed truck**

(c) Towing with sling type truck

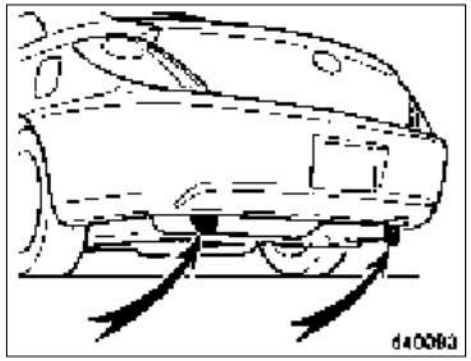


**(c) Towing with sling type truck**

**NOTICE**

***Do not tow with sling type truck, either from the front or rear. This may cause body damage.***

## —Emergency towing



Towing eyelet (on some models)

**If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by your Toyota dealer or a commercial tow truck service.**

**Manual transmission models with towing eyelet—**

**If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed by a cable or chain secured to one of the emergency towing eyelets under the vehicle. Use extreme caution when towing vehicles.**

***NOTICE***

- ***Only use specified towing eyelet; otherwise your vehicle may be damaged.***
- ***Vehicles with an automatic transmission, never tow a vehicle from the rear with four wheels on the ground. This may cause serious damage to the transmission.***

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speeds. Also, the wheels, axles, drive train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Use extreme caution when towing vehicles. Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelets and towing cable or chain. The eyelets and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.**

***NOTICE***

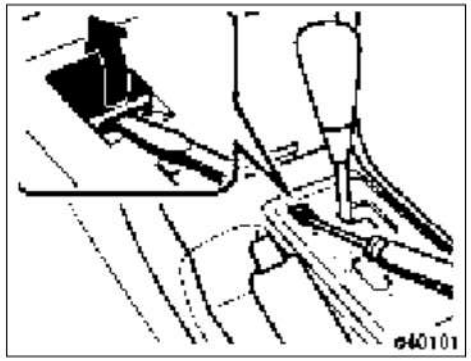
***Use only a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing eyelets provided.***

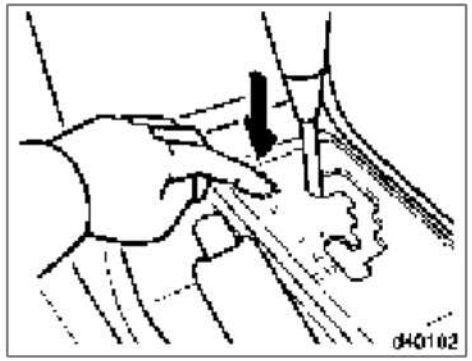
Before towing, release the parking brake and put the transmission in neutral. The key must be in "ACC" (engine off) or "ON" (engine running).

**⚠ CAUTION**

**If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not work so steering and braking will be much harder than usual.**

## If you cannot shift automatic transmission selector lever




**If you cannot shift the selector lever out of "P" position to other positions even though the brake pedal is depressed, use the shift lock override button as follows:**

1. **Turn the ignition key to "LOCK" position. Make sure the parking brake is on.**
2. **Pry up the cover with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent.**
3. **Insert your finger into the hole to push down the shift lock override button. You can shift out of "P" position only while pushing the button.**
4. **Shift into "N" position.**
5. **Insert the cover.**
6. **Start the engine. For your safety, keep the brake pedal depressed.**

Be sure to have the system checked by your Toyota dealer as soon as possible.

## If the convertible top does not rise or lower

**If the convertible top does not rise or lower during convertible top control switch operation, have your vehicle checked at your Toyota dealer.**

If raising the convertible top manually is unavoidable, see "RAISING THE CONVERTIBLE TOP MANUALLY". Then you should have it checked as soon as possible at your Toyota dealer.

***NOTICE***

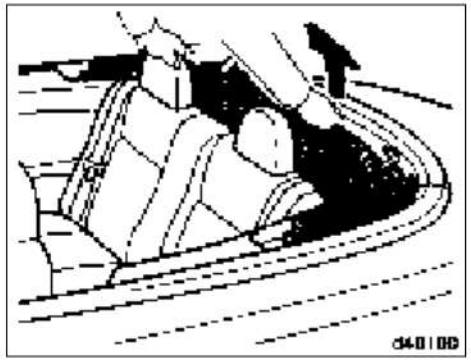
***Do not lower the convertible top manually. It may cause damage to the system.***

**RAISING THE CONVERTIBLE TOP MANUALLY**

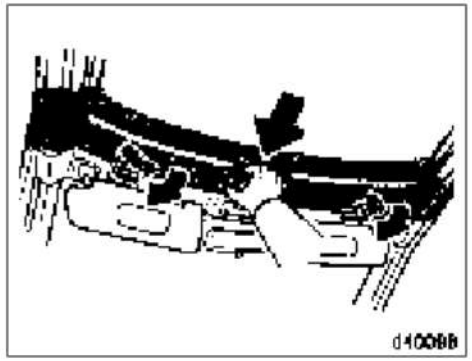
1. **Lower the side windows, quarter windows and sun visors.**

If the battery is discharged and the windows cannot be lowered, open both doors.

2. **Turn the ignition switch to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position. Open either door or wait for 43 seconds before raising the convertible top manually.**



3. **From the rear seat, place one hand on top of the rear seat head restraint. With the other hand, grasp the edge of the convertible top at the center and slowly raise the top halfway.**



4. **Move to the front seat, and grasp the handle underneath the convertible top. Pull the top forward. Holding the convertible top against the windshield frame, push the latch handles fully forward until they are hooked.**

Visually check that the latch handles are fully seated in the strikers. Also, pull on the convertible top side rails to make sure the top is securely hooked.

## If you lose your keys

**You can purchase a new key at your Toyota dealer if you can give them the key number. If your vehicle is equipped with the engine immobilizer system, the dealer will also need your master key.**

Even if you lose only one key, contact your Toyota dealer to make a new key. If you lose all your master keys, you cannot make new keys; the whole engine immobilizer system must be replaced.

See the suggestion given in “Keys” on page 12 in Section 1-2.

If your keys are locked in the vehicle and you cannot get a duplicate, many Toyota dealers can still open the door for you, using their special tools. If you must break a window to get in, we suggest breaking the smallest side window because it is the least expensive to replace. Be extremely cautious to avoid cuts from the glass.

## If you lose your wireless remote control transmitter

**You can purchase a new wireless remote control transmitter at your Toyota dealer.**

Have the registered identification numbers of your transmitters deleted from your vehicle by your Toyota dealer as soon as possible to avoid the possibility of theft or an accident. Then, have the identification number of your new transmitter registered. At the same time, you must bring all of the remaining transmitters to have them registered again as well.

You can use the wireless remote control system with the new transmitter. Contact your Toyota dealer for detailed information.

# SECTION 5

# CORROSION PREVENTION AND APPEARANCE CARE

## Corrosion prevention and appearance care

Protecting your Toyota from corrosion . . . . . 278
Washing and waxing your Toyota . . . . . 279
Cleaning the interior . . . . . 282

## Protecting your Toyota from corrosion

Toyota, through diligent research, design and use of the most advanced technology available, helps prevent corrosion and provides you with the finest quality vehicle construction. Now, it is up to you. Proper care of your Toyota can help ensure long-term corrosion prevention.

**The most common causes of corrosion to your vehicle are:**

- The accumulation of road salt, dirt and moisture in hard-to-reach areas under the vehicle.
- Chipping of paint, or undercoating caused by minor accidents or by stones and gravel.

**Care is especially important if you live in particular areas or operate your vehicle under certain environmental conditions:**

- Road salt or dust control chemicals will accelerate corrosion, as will the presence of salt in the air near the seacoast or in areas of industrial pollution.
- High humidity accelerates corrosion especially when temperatures range just above the freezing point.
- Wetness or dampness to certain parts of your vehicle for an extended period of time, may cause corrosion even though other parts of the vehicle may be dry.
- High ambient temperatures can cause corrosion to those components of the vehicle which do not dry quickly due to lack of proper ventilation.

The above signifies the necessity to keep your vehicle, particularly the underside, as clean as possible and to repair any damage to paint or protective coatings as soon as possible.

**To help prevent corrosion on your Toyota, follow these guidelines:**

**Wash your vehicle frequently.** It is, of course, necessary to keep your vehicle clean by regular washing, but to prevent corrosion, the following points should be observed:

- If you drive on salted roads in the winter or if you live near the ocean, you should hose off the undercarriage at least once a month to minimize corrosion.
- High pressure water or steam is effective for cleaning the vehicle's underside and wheel housings. Pay particular attention to these areas as it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to simply wet the mud and debris without removing. The lower edge of doors, rocker panels and frame members have drain holes which should not be allowed to clog with dirt as trapped water in these areas can cause corrosion.
- Wash the underside of the vehicle thoroughly when winter is over.

See "Washing and waxing your Toyota" on page 279 for more tips.

**Check the condition of your vehicle's paint and trim.** If you find any chips or scratches in the paint, touch them up immediately to prevent corrosion from starting. If the chips or scratches have gone through the bare metal, have a qualified body shop make the repair.

**Check the interior of your vehicle.** Water and dirt can accumulate under the floor mats and could cause corrosion. Occasionally check under the mats to make sure the area is dry. Be particularly careful when transporting chemicals, cleansers, fertilizers, salt, etc.; these should be transported in proper containers. If a spill or leak should occur, immediately clean and dry the area.

**Use mud shields on your wheels.** If you drive on salted or gravel roads, mud shields help protect your vehicle. Full-size shields, which come as near to the ground as possible, are the best. We recommend that the fittings and the area where the shields are installed be treated to resist corrosion. Your Toyota dealer will be happy to assist in supplying and installing the shields if they are recommended for your area.

**Keep your vehicle in a well ventilated garage or a roofed place. Do not park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage.** If you wash your vehicle in the garage, or if you drive it covered with water or snow, your garage may be so damp as to cause corrosion. Even if your garage is heated, a wet vehicle can corrode if the ventilation is poor.

## Washing and waxing your Toyota

### Washing your Toyota

**Keep your vehicle clean by regular washing.**

The following cases may cause weakness to the paint or corrosion to the body and parts. Wash your vehicle as soon as possible.

- When driving in a coastal area
- When driving on a road sprinkled with antifreeze
- When exposed to coal tar, tree sap, bird droppings and carcass of an insect
- When driving in areas where there is a lot of smoke, soot, dust, iron dust or chemical substances
- When the vehicle becomes remarkably dirty with dust and mud

### Hand-washing your Toyota

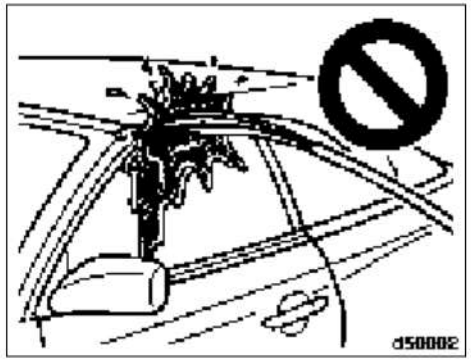
**Work in the shade and wait until the vehicle body is not hot to the touch.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When cleaning under floor or chassis, be careful not to injure your hands.**

Convertible—For washing instructions for the convertible top, see "Washing convertible top" on page 281 in this Section.

1. Rinse off loose dirt with a hose. Remove any mud or road salt from the underside of the vehicle or in the wheel wells.




Convertible—Spray water on the side windows or top seals from above, at a 45° angle to the ground.

**NOTICE**

***Convertible—Do not spray water at side windows and top seals in a way which may cause water to enter the vehicle.***

2. Wash with a mild car-wash soap, mixed according to the manufacturer's instructions. Use a soft cotton mitt and keep it wet by dipping it frequently into the wash water. Do not rub hard—let the soap and water remove the dirt.

Fuel filler door: Do not apply water (high-pressure car wash, for example) at or near the fuel tank inlet with the fuel filler door opened. If the water enters the air vent, you may experience trouble with refueling or rough engine idling.

Plastic wheel ornaments: The plastic wheel ornaments are damaged easily by organic substances. If any organic substances splashes an ornament, be sure to wash it off with water and check if the ornament is damaged.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not attach a heavily damaged plastic wheel ornament. It may fly off the wheel and cause accidents while the vehicle is moving.**

Aluminum wheels: Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent.

Plastic bumpers: Wash carefully. Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners. The bumper faces are soft.

Road tar: Remove with turpentine or cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces.

**NOTICE**

***Do not use organic substances (gasoline, kerosene, benzine or strong solvents), which may be toxic or cause damage.***

3. Rinse thoroughly—dried soap can cause streaking. In hot weather you may need to rinse each section right after you wash it.
4. To prevent water spots, dry the vehicle using a clean soft cotton towel. Do not rub or press hard—you might scratch the paint.

### Automatic car wash

Coupe—Your vehicle may be washed in an automatic car wash, but remember that the paint can be scratched by some types of brushes, unfiltered washing water, or the washing process itself. Scratching reduces paint durability and gloss, especially on darker colors. The manager of the car wash should be able to advise you whether the process is safe for the paint on your vehicle.

**NOTICE**

***Convertible—Do not run convertible through automatic car washes or possible damage to the convertible top may result.***

### Waxing your Toyota

**Polishing and waxing is recommended to maintain the original beauty of your Toyota's finish.**

Apply wax once a month or if the vehicle surface does not repel water well.

1. Always wash and dry the vehicle before you begin waxing, even if you are using a combined cleaner and wax.
2. Use a good quality polish and wax. If the finish has become extremely weathered, use a car-cleaning polish, followed by a separate wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Be sure to polish and wax the chrome trim as well as the paint.

Windshield washer nozzles: Make sure that the nozzles do not become blocked when waxing. If a nozzle becomes blocked, contact your Toyota dealer to have the vehicle serviced.

**NOTICE**

***If a nozzle becomes blocked, do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.***

3. Wax the vehicle again when water does not bead but remains on the surface in large patches.

**NOTICE**

***Always remove the plastic bumpers if your vehicle is re-painted and placed in a high heat paint waxing booth. High temperatures could damage the bumpers.***

### Washing convertible top

General cleaning—

Follow the procedure shown below.

1. Brush off any loose dirt and rinse off with a hose.
2. Using a sponge, wash with a mild solution of soap (hand soap) in lukewarm water (below 38°C or 100°F).
3. Rinse thoroughly to remove soap.

**NOTICE**

- ***Do not use harsh or abrasive cleaners as they may damage the top material.***
- ***Do not use water-repellents, wax or other preservative finishes as they may stain the top material.***

Additional cleaning (for more difficult stains)—

Follow the procedure shown below using a mild cleaning solution composed of the following ingredient.

- ◀110 g (4 oz.) of chlorine bleach
- ◀60 g (2 oz.) of soap (hand soap)
- ◀3.8 L (1.0 gal., 0.8 Imp. gal.) of lukewarm water (below 38°C or 100°F)

1. Rinse the top, then spread the mild cleaning solution on the entire top. Do not put excessive amounts of liquid on the fabric.
2. Scrub with a small, soft bristle hand-brush. Add water as needed until the cleaner becomes soapy. Allow solution to settle for two to five minutes. Use a cloth or sponge to remove dirt so it will not be ground into the top. Be careful not to allow any cleaner to dry on the body paint as it may cause streaks.
3. Rinse thoroughly.

If any dirt is left, repeat the procedure.

After the top has been cleaned, rinse the vehicle with clean water to remove all the cleaner.

After cleaning, always make sure the top is completely dry before you lower it. Lowering the top while wet or damp may cause interior water damage, water stains or mildew of the top material.

## Cleaning the interior

**⚠ CAUTION**

**◀Vehicles with side airbags and curtain shield airbags:**

**Be careful not to splash water or spill liquid on the floor. This may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, resulting in serious injury.**

**◀Do not wash the vehicle floor with water, or allow water to get onto the floor when cleaning the vehicle interior or exterior. Water may get into audio components or other electrical components above or under the floor carpet (or mat) and cause a malfunction; and it may cause body corrosion.**

**Vinyl interior**

**The vinyl upholstery may be easily cleaned with a mild soap or detergent and water.**

First vacuum over the upholstery to remove loose dirt. Then, using a sponge or soft cloth, apply the soap solution to the vinyl. After allowing it to soak in for a few minutes to loosen the dirt, remove the dirt and wipe off the soap with a clean damp cloth. If all the dirt do not come off, repeat the procedure. Commercial foaming-type vinyl cleaners are also available which work well. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

**NOTICE**

***Do not use solvent, thinner, gasoline or window cleaner on the interior.***

**Carpets**

**Use a good foam-type shampoo to clean the carpets.**

Begin by vacuuming thoroughly to remove as much dirt as possible. Several types of foam cleaners are available; some are in aerosol cans and others are powders or liquids which you mix with water to produce a foam. To shampoo the carpets, use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles.

Do not apply water—the best results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible. Read the shampoo instructions and follow them closely.

**Seat belts**

**The seat belts may be cleaned with mild soap and water or with lukewarm water.**

Use a cloth or sponge. As you are cleaning, check the belts for excessive wear, fraying, or cuts.

**NOTICE**

- ***Do not use dye or bleach on the belts—it may weaken them.***
- ***Do not use the belts until they become dry.***

**Windows**

**The windows may be cleaned with any household window cleaner.**

**NOTICE**

***When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or connectors.***

**Air conditioning control panel, audio panel, instrument panel, console panel and switches**

**Use a soft damp cloth for cleaning.**

Soak a clean soft cloth in water or lukewarm water then lightly wipe off dirt.

**NOTICE**

- ***Do not use organic substances (solvents, kerosene, alcohol, gasoline, etc.) or alkaline or acidic solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloring, staining or peeling of the surface.***
- ***If you use cleaners or polishing agents, make sure their ingredients do not include the substances mentioned above.***
- ***If you use a liquid car freshener, do not spill the liquid onto the vehicle's interior surfaces. It may contain the ingredients mentioned above. Immediately clean any spill using the method mentioned above.***

**Leather interior**

**The leather upholstery may be cleaned with neutral detergent for wool.**

Remove dirt using a soft cloth dampened with 5% solution of neutral detergent for wool. Then thoroughly wipe off all traces of detergent with a clean damp cloth.

After cleaning or whenever any part of the leather gets wet, dry with a soft clean cloth. Allow the leather to dry in a ventilated shaded area.

***NOTICE***

- ***If a stain should fail to come out with a neutral detergent, apply a cleaner that does not contain an organic solvent.***
- ***Never use organic substances such as benzine, alcohol or gasoline, or alkaline or acid solutions for cleaning the leather as these could cause discoloring.***
- ***Use of a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, etc. may scratch the fine grained surface of the leather.***
- ***Mildew may develop on soiled leather upholstery. Be especially careful to avoid oil spots. Try to keep your upholstery always clean.***
- ***Long exposure to direct sunlight may cause the leather surface to harden and shrink. Keep your vehicle in a shaded area, especially in the summer.***
- ***The interior of your vehicle is apt to heat up on hot summer days, so avoid placing on the upholstery items made of vinyl or plastic or containing wax as these tend to stick to leather when warm.***
- ***Improper cleaning of the leather upholstery could result in discoloration or staining.***

**If you have any questions about the cleaning of your Toyota, your local Toyota dealer will be pleased to answer them.**

# SECTION 6

# VEHICLE MAINTENANCE AND CARE

## Vehicle maintenance and care

Maintenance requirements ..... 286
General maintenance ..... 287
Does your vehicle need repairing? ..... 289
Emissions Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) programs ..... 290

For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Scheduled Maintenance Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".

## Maintenance requirements

Your Toyota vehicle has been designed for fewer maintenance requirements with longer service intervals to save both your time and money. However, each regular maintenance, as well as day-to-day care, is more important than ever before to ensure smooth, trouble-free, safe, and economical drivings.

It is the owner's responsibility to make sure the specified maintenance, including general maintenance service, is performed. Note that both the new vehicle and emission control system warranties specify that proper maintenance and care must be performed. See "Owner's Warranty Information Booklet" or "Owner's Manual Supplement" for complete warranty information.

**General maintenance**

General maintenance items are those day-to-day care practices that are important to your vehicle for proper operation. It is the owner's responsibility to insure that the general maintenance items are performed regularly.

These checks or inspections can be done either by yourself or a qualified technician, or if you prefer, your Toyota dealer will be pleased to do them at a nominal cost.

**Scheduled maintenance**

The scheduled maintenance items listed in the "Scheduled Maintenance Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement" are those required to be serviced at regular intervals.

For details of your maintenance schedule, read the "Scheduled Maintenance Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".

**It is recommended that any replacement parts used for maintenance or for the repair of the emission control system be Toyota supplied.**

**The owner may elect to use non-Toyota supplied parts for replacement purposes without invalidating the emission control system warranty. However, use of replacement parts which are not of equivalent quality may impair the effectiveness of the emission control systems.**

**You may also elect to have maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and system performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual without invalidating this warranty. See "Owner's Warranty Information Booklet" or "Owner's Manual Supplement" for complete warranty information.**

**Where to go for service?**

Toyota technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information through technical bulletins, service tips, and in-dealership training programs. They learn to work on Toyotas before they work on your vehicle, rather than while they are working on it.

You can be confident that your Toyota dealer's service department performs the best job to meet the maintenance requirements on your vehicle—reliably and economically.

Your copy of the repair order is proof that all required maintenance has been performed for warranty coverage. If any problems should arise with your vehicle while under warranty, your Toyota dealer will promptly take care of it. Again, be sure to keep a copy of the repair order for any service performed on your Toyota.

**What about do-it-yourself maintenance?**

Many of the maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools. Simple instructions for how to perform them are presented on page 291 in Section 7.

If you are a skilled do-it-yourself mechanic, the Toyota service manuals are recommended. Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance can affect your warranty coverage. See "Owner's Warranty Information Booklet" or "Owner's Manual Supplement" for the details.

## General maintenance

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed as frequently as specified. In addition to checking the items listed, if you notice any unusual noise, smell or vibration, you should investigate the cause or take your vehicle to your Toyota dealer or a qualified service shop immediately. It is recommended that any problem you notice be brought to the attention of your dealer or the qualified service shop for their advice.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Make these checks only with adequate ventilation if you run the engine.**

### IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

**Items listed below should be checked from time to time, e.g. each time when refueling.**

**Washer fluid**
Make sure there is sufficient fluid in the tank. See page 319 in Section 7-3 for additional information.

**Engine coolant level**
Make sure the coolant level is between the "F" and "L" lines on the see-through reservoir when the engine is cold. See page 302 in Section 7-2 for additional information.

**Radiator, condenser and hoses**
Check that the front of the radiator and condenser are clean and not blocked with leaves, dirt, or insects. See page 303 in Section 7-2 for additional information.

**Battery condition**
Check the battery condition by the indicator color. See page 316 in Section 7-3 for additional information.

**Brake fluid level**
Make sure the brake fluid level is correct. See page 304 in Section 7-2 for additional information.

**Engine oil level**
Check the level on the dipstick with the engine turned off and the vehicle parked on a level spot. See page 300 in Section 7-2 for additional information.

**Power steering fluid level**
Check the level through the reservoir. The level should be in the "HOT" or "COLD" range depending on the fluid temperature. See page 304 in Section 7-2 for additional information.

**Exhaust system**
If you notice any change in the sound of the exhaust or smell exhaust fumes, have the cause located and corrected immediately. (See "Engine exhaust cautions" on page 224 in Section 2.)

**INSIDE THE VEHICLE**

**Items listed below should be checked regularly, e.g. while performing periodic services, cleaning the vehicle, etc.**

**Lights**
Make sure the headlights, stop lights, tail lights, turn signal lights, and other lights are all working. Check headlight aim.

**Service reminder indicators and warning buzzers**
Check that all service reminder indicators and warning buzzers function properly.

**Steering wheel**
Be alert for changes in steering condition, such as hard steering or strange noise.

**Seats**
Check that all front seat controls such as seat adjusters, seatback recliner, etc. operate smoothly and that all latches lock securely in any position. Check that the head restraints move up and down smoothly and that the locks hold securely in any latched position. For folding-down rear seatbacks, check that the latches lock securely.

**Seat belts**
Check that the seat belt system such as buckles, retractors and anchors operate properly and smoothly. Make sure that the belt webbings not cut, frayed, worn or damaged.

**Accelerator pedal**
Check the pedal for smooth operation and uneven pedal effort or catching.

**Clutch pedal**
Check the pedal for smooth operation.

**Brake pedal**
Check the pedal for smooth operation and that the pedal has the proper clearance. Check the brake booster function.

**Brakes**
In a safe place, check that the brakes do not pull to one side when applied.

**Parking brake**
Check that the lever has the proper travel and that, on a safe incline, your vehicle is held securely with only the parking brake applied.

**Automatic transmission "Park" mechanism**
Check the lock release button of the selector lever for proper and smooth operation. On a safe incline, check that your vehicle is held securely with the selector lever in "P" position and all brakes released.

**OUTSIDE THE VEHICLE**

**Items listed below should be performed from time to time, unless otherwise specified.**

**Fluid leaks**
Check underneath for leaking fuel, oil, water or other fluid after the vehicle has been parked for a while. If you smell fuel fumes or notice any leak, have the cause found and corrected immediately.

**Doors and engine hood**
Check that all doors including trunk lid operate smoothly and all latches lock securely. Make sure the engine hood secondary latch secures the hood from opening when the primary latch is released.

**Tire inflation pressure**
Check the pressure with a gauge every two weeks, or at least once a month. See page 305 in Section 7- 2 for additional information.

**Tire surface and wheel nuts**
Check the tires carefully for cuts, damage or excessive wear. See page 308 in Section 7- 2 for additional information. When checking the tires, make sure no nuts are missing, and check the nuts for looseness. Tighten them if necessary.

**Tire rotation**
Rotate the tires according to the maintenance schedule. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Scheduled Maintenance Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".) See page 310 in Section 7- 2 for additional information.

## Does your vehicle need repairing?

Be on the alert for changes in performance, sounds, and visual tip- offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are as follows:

- Engine missing, stumbling, or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A leak under the vehicle (however, water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat- looking tire; excessive tire squeal when cornering; uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driving straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness; spongy feeling brake or clutch pedal; pedal almost touches floor; vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to your Toyota dealer as soon as possible. It probably needs adjustment or repair.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not continue driving with the vehicle unchecked. It could result in serious vehicle damage and possibly personal injury.**

## Emissions Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) programs

Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On- Board Diagnostics) checks.

The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system. When the OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system, the malfunction indicator lamp comes on. In this case, your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and need to be repaired. Contact your Toyota dealer to service the vehicle.

Even if the malfunction indicator lamp does not come on, your vehicle may not pass the I/M test as readiness codes have not been set in the OBD system.

Readiness codes are automatically set during ordinary driving. However, when the battery is disconnected or run down, the codes are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the codes may not be completely set.

Also, if the malfunction indicator lamp had come on recently due to temporary malfunction such as a loose fuel tank cap, your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after taking several driving trips, but the error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless about 40 trips or more are taken.

If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test even the malfunction indicator lamp does not come on, contact your Toyota dealer to prepare the vehicle for re- testing.

# SECTION 7- 1

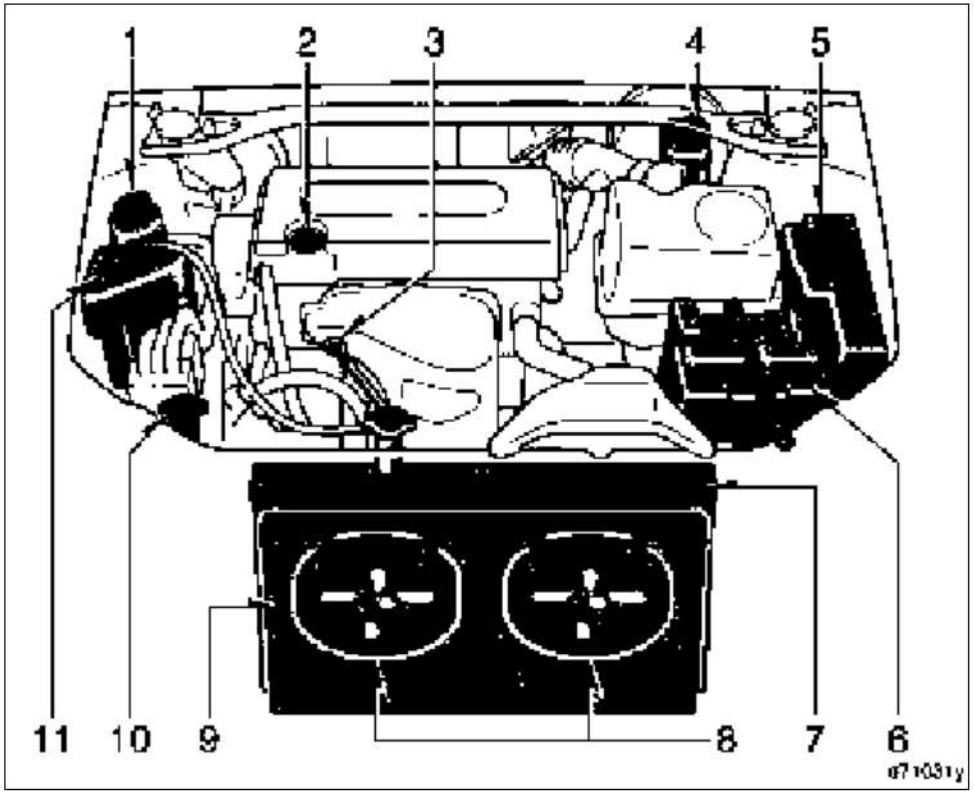
## DO- IT- YOURSELF MAINTENANCE

### Introduction

Engine compartment overview ..... 292
Fuse locations ..... 294
Do- it- yourself service precautions ..... 294
Positioning the jack ..... 296
Parts and tools ..... 297

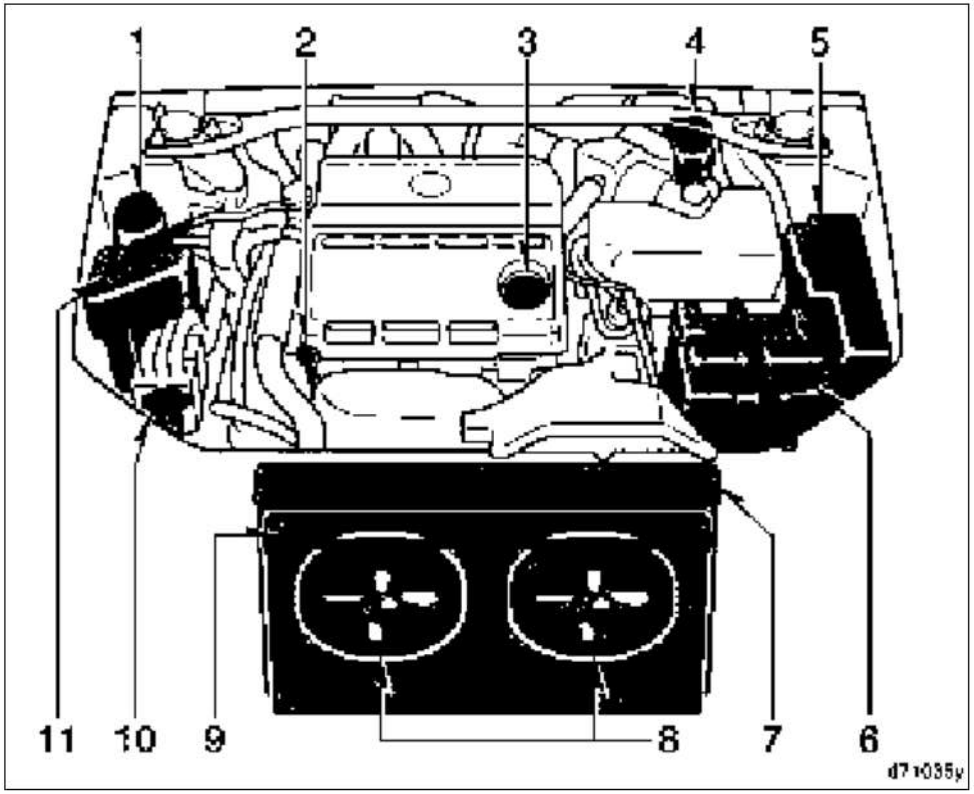
## Engine compartment overview

◀2AZ-FE engine



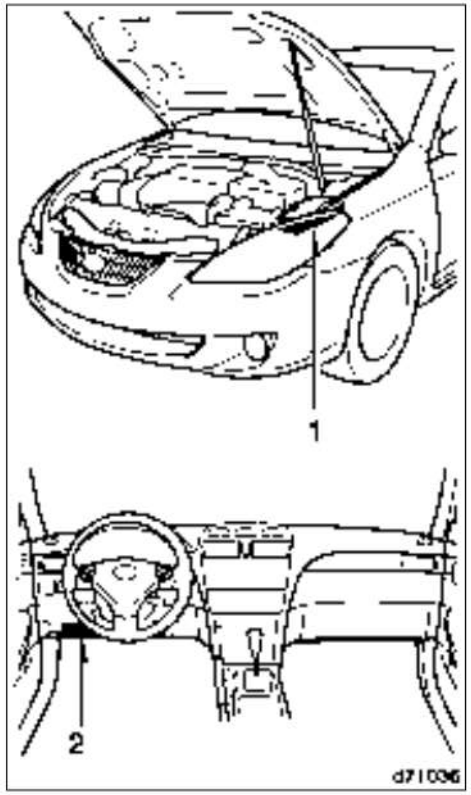

1. Power steering fluid reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Engine oil level dipstick
4. Brake fluid reservoir
5. Fuse block
6. Battery
7. Radiator
8. Electric cooling fans
9. Condenser
10. Windshield washer fluid tank
11. Engine coolant reservoir

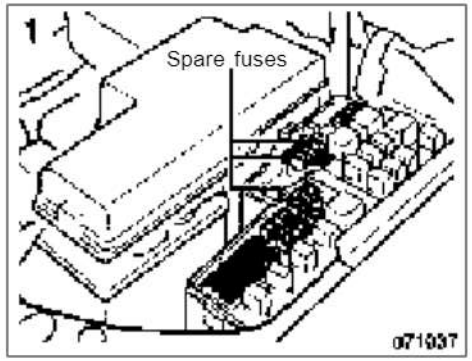
◀3MZ- FE engine

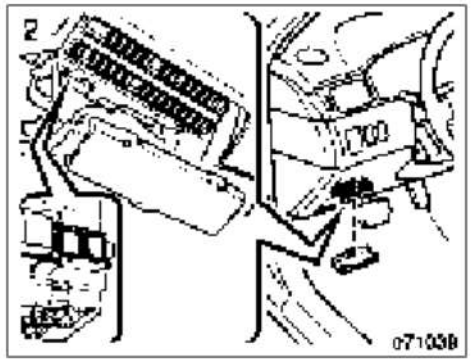



1. Power steering fluid reservoir
2. Engine oil level dipstick
3. Engine oil filler cap
4. Brake fluid reservoir
5. Fuse block
6. Battery
7. Radiator
8. Electric cooling fans
9. Condenser
10. Windshield washer fluid tank
11. Engine coolant reservoir

## Fuse locations




## Do-it-yourself service precautions

**If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure given in this Section.**

You should be aware that improper or incomplete servicing may result in operating problems.

Performing do-it-yourself maintenance during the warranty period may affect your warranty coverage. Read the separate Toyota Warranty statement for details and suggestions.

This Section gives instructions only for those items that are relatively easy for an owner to perform. As explained in Section 6, there are still a number of items that must be done by a qualified technician with special tools.

For information on tools and parts for do-it-yourself maintenance, see "Parts and tools" on page 297 in this Section.

Utmost care should be taken when working on your vehicle to prevent accidental injury. Here are a few precautions that you should be especially careful to observe:

**⚠ CAUTION**

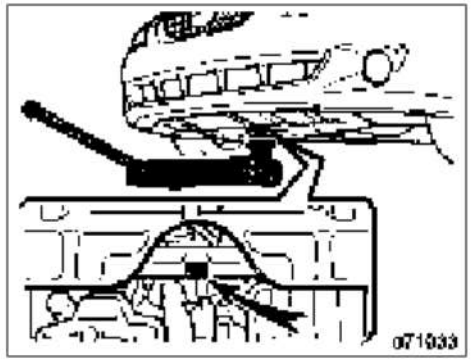
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belts. (Removing rings, watches, and ties is advisable.)
- Right after driving, the engine compartment—the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and spark plug boots, etc.—will be hot. So be careful not to touch them. Oil, fluids and spark plugs may also be hot.
- If the engine is hot, do not remove the radiator cap or loosen the drain plugs to prevent burning yourself.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper or rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or allow open flames around fuel or the battery. Their fumes are flammable.
- Do not get under your vehicle with just the body jack supporting it. Always use automotive jack stands or other solid supports.
- Be sure that the ignition is off if you work near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille. With the ignition on, the electric cooling fans will automatically start to run if the engine coolant temperature is high and/or the air conditioning is on.
- Use eye protection whenever you work on or under your vehicle where you may be exposed to flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc.
- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact with it. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Do not leave used oil within the reach of children.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Dispose of used oil and filter only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filter in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your dealer or a service station for information concerning recycling or disposal.

***NOTICE***

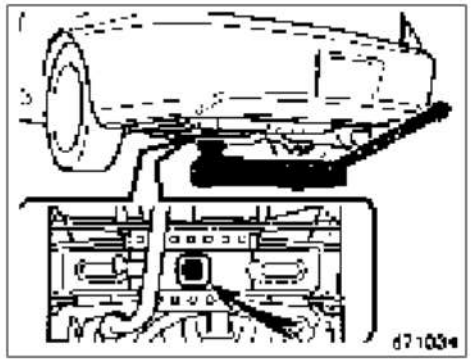
- *Remember that battery and ignition cables carry high currents or voltages. Be careful of accidentally causing a short circuit.*
- *Add only "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology to fill the radiator. "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water (for the U.S.A.) or 55% coolant and 45% deionized water (for Canada).*
- *If you spill some of the coolant, be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging the parts or paint.*

- *Do not allow dirt or anything else to fall through the spark plugholes.*
- *Use only spark plugs of the specified type. Using other types will cause engine damage, loss of performance or radio noise.*
- *Do not reuse iridium-tipped spark plugs by cleaning or regapping.*
- *Do not overfill automatic transmission fluid, or the transmission could be damaged.*
- *Do not drive with the air cleaner filter removed, or excessive engine wear could result. Also backfiring could cause a fire in the engine compartment.*
- *Be careful not to scratch the glass surface with the wiper frame.*
- *When closing the engine hood, check to see that you have not forgotten any tools, rags, etc.*

## Positioning the jack



Front



Rear

When jacking up your vehicle with the jack, position the jack correctly as shown in the illustrations.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When jacking, be sure to observe the following to reduce the possibility of personal injury:**

- **Follow jacking instructions.**
- **Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by the jack. Personal injury may occur.**
- **Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.**
- **Stop the vehicle on a level firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and put the transmission in "P" (automatic) or reverse (manual). Block the wheels on the opposite side of the jack up point if necessary.**
- **Make sure to set the jack properly in the jack point. Raising the vehicle with jack improperly positioned will damage the vehicle or may allow the vehicle to fall off the jack and cause personal injury.**

- **Never get under the vehicle when the vehicle is supported by the jack alone; use vehicle support stands.**
- **Do not raise the vehicle with someone in the vehicle.**
- **When raising the vehicle, do not place any objects on top of or underneath the jack.**

***NOTICE***

***Make sure to place the jack correctly, or your vehicle may be damaged.***

## Parts and tools

Here is a list of parts and tools you will need to perform do-it-yourself maintenance. Remember all Toyota parts are designed in metric sizes, so your tools must be metric.

**CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL**

**Parts (if level is low):**

- "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent

  See page 300 in Section 7-2 for details about engine oil selection.

**Tools:**

- Rag or paper towel
- Funnel (only for adding oil)

**CHECKING THE ENGINE COOLANT LEVEL**

**Parts (if level is low):**

- "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

  "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water (for the U.S.A.) or 55% coolant and 45% deionized water (for Canada).

**Tools:**

- Funnel (only for adding coolant)

**CHECKING BRAKE FLUID**

**Parts (if level is low):**

- SAE J1703 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 brake fluid

**Tools:**

- Rag or paper towel
- Funnel (only for adding fluid)

**CHECKING POWER STEERING FLUID**

**Parts (if level is low):**

- Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON◆II or III

**Tools:**

- Rag or paper towel
- Funnel (only for adding fluid)

**CHECKING BATTERY CONDITION**

**Tools:**

- Warm water
- Baking soda
- Grease
- Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)

**CHECKING AND REPLACING FUSES**

**Parts (if replacement is necessary):**

- Genuine Toyota fuse or equivalent with same amperage rating as original

**ADDING WASHER FLUID**

**Parts:**

- Water
- Washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use)

**Tools:**

- Funnel

**REPLACING LIGHT BULBS**

**Parts:**

- Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original (See charts in “Replacing light bulbs” on page 320 in Section 7- 3.)

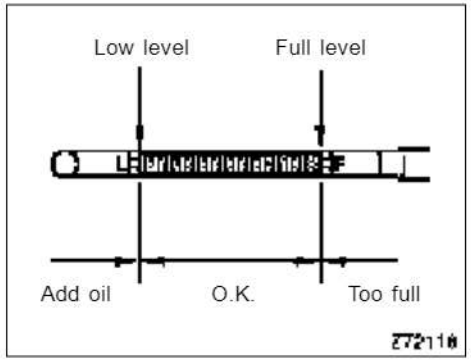
# SECTION 7- 2

## DO- IT- YOURSELF MAINTENANCE

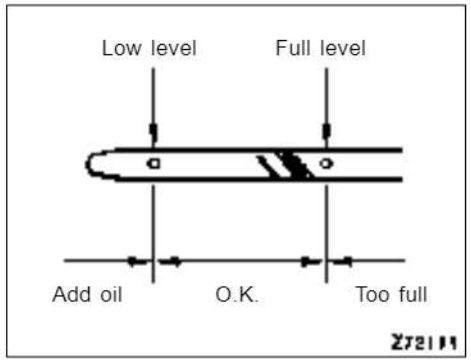
### Engine and Chassis

Checking the engine oil level ..... 300
Checking the engine coolant level ..... 302
Checking the radiator and condenser ..... 303
Checking brake fluid ..... 304
Checking power steering fluid ..... 304
Checking tire inflation pressure ..... 305
Checking and replacing tires ..... 308
Rotating tires ..... 310
Installing snow tires and chains ..... 311
Replacing wheels ..... 313
Aluminum wheel precautions ..... 313

## Checking the engine oil level




**2AZ- FE engine**




**3MZ- FE engine**

**With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.**

1. To get a correct reading, the vehicle should be on level ground. After turning off the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.
2. Pull the dipstick out, hold a rag under the end and wipe it clean.
3. Reinsert the dipstick—push it in as far as it will go, or the reading will not be correct.
4. Pull the dipstick out and look at the oil level while holding a rag under the end.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Be careful not to touch the hot exhaust manifold.**

***NOTICE***

***Be careful not to drop engine oil on the vehicle components.***

**If the oil level is below or only slightly above the low level line, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine.**

Remove the oil filler cap and add engine oil in small quantities at a time, checking the dipstick. We recommend that you use a funnel when adding oil.

The approximate quantity of oil needed to raise the level between low and full on the dipstick is indicated as follows:

2AZ- FE engine
1.0 L (1.1 qt., 0.9 Imp. qt.)
3MZ- FE engine
1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp. qt.)

For the engine oil capacity, see "Service specifications" on page 327 in Section 8.

When the level reaches within the correct range, install the filler cap hand- tight.

**NOTICE**

- ***Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.***
- ***Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.***
- ***Check the oil level on the dipstick once again after adding the oil.***

**ENGINE OIL SELECTION**

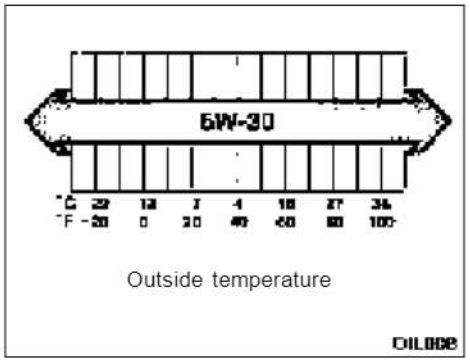
"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Toyota vehicle. Use Toyota approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade:

API grade SL "Energy-Conserving" or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity:

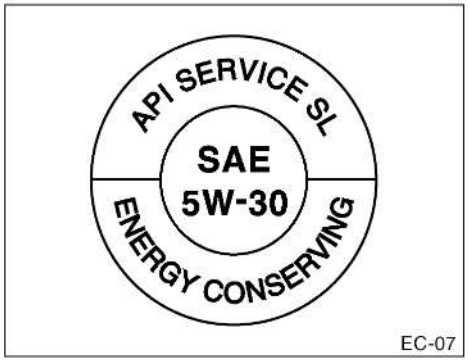
SAE 5W-30




Outside temperature

**SAE 5W-30 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.**

**If SAE 5W-30 is not available, SAE 10W-30 may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 5W-30 at the next oil change.**




**API service symbol**




**ILSAC certification mark**

### Oil identification marks

**Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.**

The API Service Symbol is located anywhere on the outside of the container.

The top portion of the label shows the oil quality by API (American Petroleum Institute) designations such as SL. The center portion of the label shows the SAE viscosity grade such as SAE 5W-30. "Energy-Conserving" shown in the lower portion, indicates that the oil has fuel-saving capabilities.

The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.




To ensure excellent lubrication performance for your engine, "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is available, which has been specifically tested and approved for all Toyota engines.

Please contact your Toyota dealer for further details about "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil".

## Checking the engine coolant level

**Look at the see-through coolant reservoir when the engine is cold. The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir. If the level is low, add the coolant. (For the coolant type, see "Coolant type selection" described below.)**

The coolant level in the reservoir will vary with engine temperature. However, if the level is on or below the "L" line, add coolant. Bring the level up to the "F" line.

If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing, there may be a leak in the system. Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant filler cap, radiator cap and drain cock and water pump.

If you can find no leak, have your Toyota dealer test the cap pressure and check for leaks in the cooling system.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**To prevent burning yourself, do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot.**

### Coolant type selection

Use of improper coolants may damage your engine cooling system.

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. (Coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology is a combination of low phosphates and organic acids.)

For the U.S.A.—"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. This coolant provides protection down to about -35°C (-31°F).

For Canada—"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. This coolant provides protection down to about -42°C (-44°F).

**NOTICE**

***Do not use plain water alone.***




Toyota recommends "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant", which has been tested to ensure that it will not cause corrosion nor result in malfunction of your engine coolant system with proper usage. "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is formulated with long-life hybrid organic acid technology and has been specifically designed to avoid engine cooling system malfunction on Toyota vehicles.

Please contact your Toyota dealer for further details.

### Checking the radiator and condenser

If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, take your vehicle to a Toyota dealer.

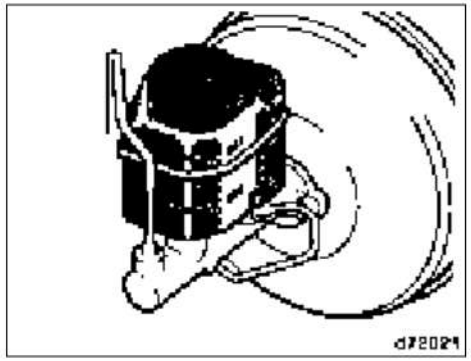
**⚠ CAUTION**

**To prevent burning yourself, be careful not to touch the radiator or condenser when the engine is hot.**

**NOTICE**

***To prevent damage to the radiator and condenser, do not perform the work by yourself.***

## Checking brake fluid



**To check the fluid level, simply look at the see-through reservoir. The level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the reservoir.**

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear. So be sure to keep the reservoir filled.

If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious mechanical problem.

**If the level is low, add SAE J1703 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 brake fluid to the brake reservoir.**

Remove and replace the reservoir cap by hand. Fill the brake fluid to the dotted line. This brings the fluid to the correct level when you put the cap back on.

Use only newly opened brake fluid. Once opened, brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air, and excess moisture can cause a dangerous loss of braking.

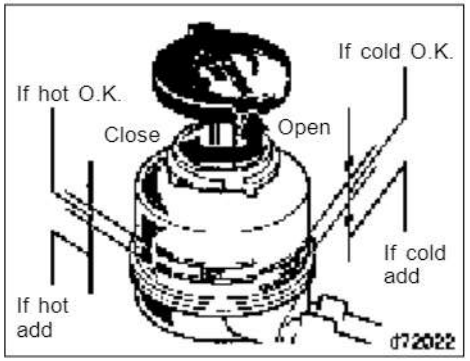
**⚠ CAUTION**

**Take care when filling the reservoir because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes. If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately. If you still feel uncomfortable with your hands or eyes, go to the doctor.**

***NOTICE***

***If you spill some of the fluid, be sure to wipe it off to prevent it from damaging the parts or paintwork.***

## Checking power steering fluid




**Check the fluid level through the reservoir. If necessary, add automatic transmission fluid DEXRON◆II or III.**

If the vehicle has been driven around 80 km/h (50 mph) for 20 minutes (a little more in frigid temperatures), the fluid is hot (60°C—80°C or 140°F—175°F). You may also check the level when the fluid is cold (about room temperature, 10°C—30°C or 50°F—85°F) if the engine has not been run for about five hours.

Clean all dirt from the outside of the reservoir tank and look at the fluid level. If the fluid is cold, the level should be in the "COLD" range. Similarly, if it is hot, the fluid level should be in the "HOT" range. If the level is at the low side of either range, add automatic transmission fluid DEXRON◆II or III to bring the level within the range.

To remove the reservoir cap, turn it counterclockwise and lift up. To reinstall it, turn it clockwise. After replacing the reservoir cap, visually check the steering box case, vane pump and hose connections for leaks or damage.

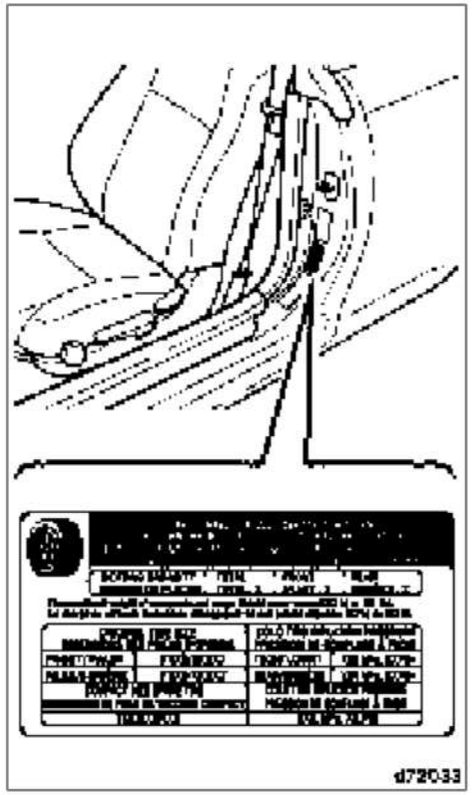
**⚠ CAUTION**

**The reservoir tank may be hot so be careful not to burn yourself.**

***NOTICE***

***Avoid overfilling, or the power steering could be damaged.***

## Checking tire inflation pressure



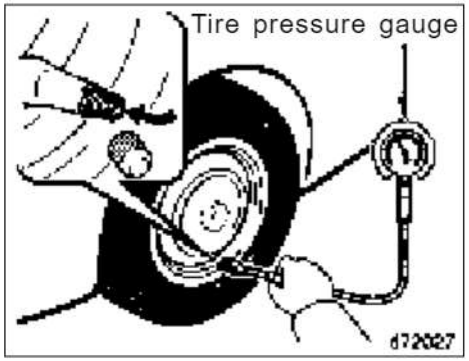

**Keep your tire inflation pressures at the proper level.**

The recommended cold tire inflation pressures, tire sizes and the combined weight of occupants and cargo (vehicle capacity weight) are described on pages 326 and 330. They are also on the tire and loading information label.

You should check the tire inflation pressure every two weeks, or at least once a month. And do not forget the spare!

**The following instructions for checking tire inflation pressure should be observed:**

- **The pressure should be checked only when the tires are cold.** If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile since, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- **Always use a tire pressure gauge.** The appearance of a tire can be misleading. Besides, tire inflation pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.
- **Take special care when adding air to the compact spare tire.** The smaller tire size can gain pressure very quickly. Add compressed air in small quantities and check the pressure often until it reaches the specified pressure.
- **Do not bleed or reduce tire inflation pressure after driving.** It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- **Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.** Passenger and luggage weight should be located so that the vehicle is balanced.




**INSPECTION AND ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURE**

1. Remove the tire valve cap.
2. Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge to the tire valve.
3. Read the pressure using the graduations of the gauge.
4. In case the tire inflation pressure is not within the prescribed range, insert the compressed air from the valve. In case of applying too much air, press the center of the valve and release the air to adjust.

5. After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.
6. Install the tire valve cap.

If a gauge and air pump are not available, have your vehicle checked by your Toyota dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps. Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If the caps have been lost, have new ones put on as soon as possible.**

Incorrect tire inflation pressure may waste fuel, reduce the comfort of driving, reduce tire life and make your vehicle less safe to drive.

If a tire frequently needs refilling, have it checked by your Toyota dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and cause an accident resulting in death or serious injuries.**

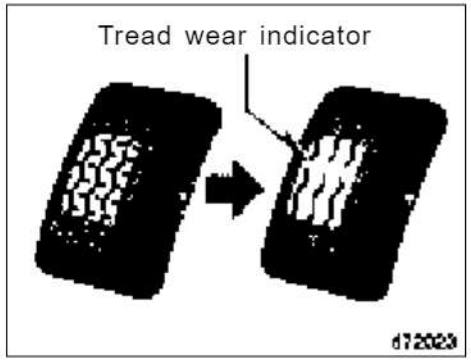
**Low tire pressure (underinflation)—**

- **◀Excessive wear**
- **◀Uneven wear**
- **◀Poor handling**
- **◀Possibility of blowouts from an overheated tire**
- **◀Poor sealing of the tire bead**
- **◀Wheel deformation and/or tire separation**
- **◀A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards**

**High tire pressure (overinflation)—**

- **◀Poor handling**
- **◀Excessive wear**
- **◀Uneven wear**
- **◀A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards**

## Checking and replacing tires




### CHECKING YOUR TIRES

**Check the tire's tread for tread wear indicators. If the indicators show, replace the tires. The location of tread wear indicators is shown by the "TWI" or "△" marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.**

The tires on your Toyota have built- in tread wear indicators to help you know when the tires need replacement. When the tread depth wears to 1.6 mm (0.06 in.) or less, the indicators will appear. If you can see the indicators in two or more adjacent grooves, the tire should be replaced. The lower the tread, the higher the risk of skidding.

**The effectiveness of snow tires is lost if the tread wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.).**

**If you have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, or bulges indicating internal damage, the tire should be replaced.**

If a tire often goes flat or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage, it should be replaced. If you are not sure, consult with your Toyota dealer.

If air loss occurs while driving, do not continue driving. Driving even a short distance can damage a tire beyond repair.

**Any tires which are over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if damage is not obvious.**

Tires deteriorate with age even if they have never or seldom been used.

This applies also to the spare tire and tires stored for future use.

## REPLACING YOUR TIRES

**When replacing a tire, use a tire of the same size and construction, and the same or greater maximum load as the originally installed tires.**

Using any other size or type of tire may seriously affect handling, ride, speedometer/odometer calibration, ground clearance, and clearance between the body and tires or snow chains.

Check that the maximum load of the replaced tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater. As for the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire, and as for the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR), see the Certification Label.

For details about the side wall of the tire and the Certification Label, see pages 233 and 230.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Observe the following instructions. Otherwise, an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.**

- **◀Do not mix radial, bias belted, or bias-ply tires on your vehicle, as this may cause dangerous handling characteristics resulting in loss of control.**
- **◀Do not use tires other than the manufacturer's recommended size, as this may cause dangerous handling characteristics resulting in loss of control.**

**Toyota recommends all four tires, or at least both of the front or rear tires be replaced at a time as a set.**

See "If you have a flat tire" on page 261 for tire change procedure.

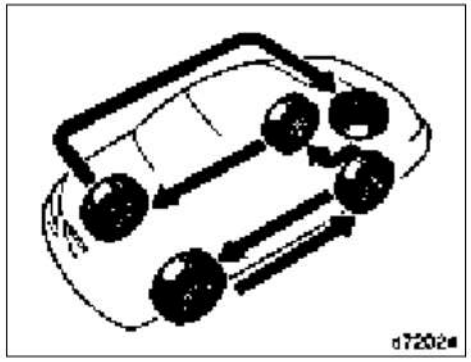
**When a tire is replaced, the wheel should always be balanced.**

An unbalanced wheel may affect vehicle handling and tire life. Wheels can get out of balance with regular use and should therefore be balanced occasionally.

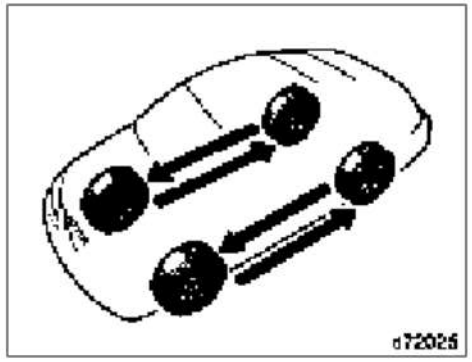
**When replacing a tubeless tire, the air valve should also be replaced with a new one.**

**Initial adjustment of the tire pressure warning system is necessary after you have rotated your tires. See "Tire pressure warning system" on page 150 in Section 1-7.**

## Rotating tires



**With a spare tire of the same wheel type as the installed tires**



**With a spare tire of different wheel type from the installed tires**

**To equalize the wear and help extend tire life, Toyota recommends that you rotate your tires according to the maintenance schedule. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Scheduled Maintenance Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".) However, the most appropriate timing for tire rotation may vary according to your driving habits and road surface conditions.**

See "If you have a flat tire" on page 261 in Section 4 for tire change procedure.

When rotating tires, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tire pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of- balance wheels, or severe braking.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not include a compact spare tire when rotating the tires. It is designed for temporary use only.**

**Initial adjustment of the tire pressure warning system is necessary after you have rotated your tires. See "Tire pressure warning system" on page 150 in Section 1-7.**

## Installing snow tires and chains

### WHEN TO USE SNOW TIRES OR CHAINS

**Snow tires or chains are recommended when driving on snow or ice.**

On wet or dry roads, conventional tires provide better traction than snow tires.

### SNOW TIRE SELECTION

**If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires.**

Do not use tires other than those mentioned above. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restrictions.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not use snow tires other than the manufacturer's recommended size, as this may cause dangerous handling characteristics resulting in loss of control. Otherwise, an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.**

### SNOW TIRE INSTALLATION

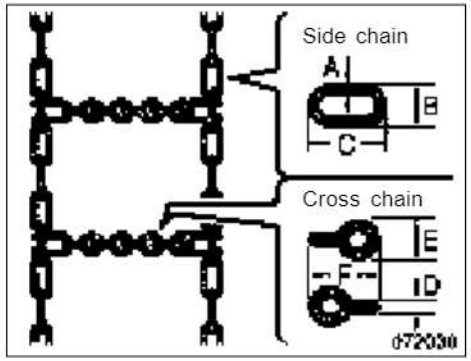
**Snow tires should be installed on all wheels.**

Installing snow tires on the front wheels only can lead to an excessive difference in road grip capability between the front and rear tires which could cause loss of vehicle control.

When storing removed tires you should store them in a cool dry place. Mark the direction of rotation and be sure to install them in the same direction when replacing.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not drive with the snow tires incorrectly inflated.**
- **Never drive over 120 km/h (75 mph) with any type of snow tires.**




**TIRE CHAIN SELECTION**

**Use the tire chains of correct size.**

For P215/60R16 and P215/55R17 tires, use the following type chains.

| | | mm (in.) |
|---|---|---|
| A | Diameter of side chain | 3 (0.12) |
| B | Width of side chain | 10 (0.39) |
| C | Length of side chain | 30 (1.18) |
| D | Diameter of cross chain | 4 (0.16) |
| E | Width of cross chain | 14 (0.55) |
| F | Length of cross chain | 25 (0.98) |

**Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary according to location or type of road, so always check local regulations before installing chains.**

***NOTICE***

***If the wrong combination of tire and chain is used, the chains could damage the vehicle body.***

**CHAIN INSTALLATION**

**Install the chains on the front tires as tightly as possible. Do not use tire chains on the rear tires. Retighten chains after driving 0.5—1.0 km (1/4—1/2 mile).**

When installing chains on your tires, carefully follow the instructions of the chain manufacturer.

If wheel covers are used, they will be scratched by the chain band, so remove the covers before putting on the chains.

If the chains are installed, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly. For details, see "Tire pressure warning system" on page 150 in Section 1-7.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.**
- **Drive carefully avoiding bumps, holes, and sharp turns, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or locked-wheel braking, as use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.**
- **When driving with chains installed, be sure to drive carefully. Slow down before entering curves to avoid losing control of the vehicle. Otherwise an accident may occur.**

***NOTICE***

***Do not attempt to use a tire chain on the compact spare tire, as it may result in damage to the vehicle as well as the tire.***

## Replacing wheels

### WHEN TO REPLACE YOUR WHEELS

**If you have wheel damage such as bending, cracks or heavy corrosion, the wheel should be replaced.**

If you fail to replace a damaged wheel, the tire may slip off the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

### WHEEL SELECTION

**When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that the wheels are replaced by ones with the same load capacity, diameter, rim width, and offset.**

Correct replacement wheels are available at your Toyota dealer.

A wheel of a different size or type may adversely affect handling, wheel and bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer/odometer calibration, stopping ability, headlight aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or snow chain clearance to the body and chassis.

Replacement with used wheels is not recommended as they may have been subjected to rough treatment or high mileage and could fail without warning. Also, bent wheels which have been straightened may have structural damage and therefore should not be used. Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not use wheels other than the manufacturer's recommended size, as this may cause dangerous handling characteristics resulting in loss of control. Otherwise, an accident may occur resulting in death or serious injuries.**

**Initial adjustment of the tire pressure warning system is necessary after you have rotated your tires. See "Tire pressure warning system" on page 150 in Section 1-7.**

## Aluminum wheel precautions

- When installing aluminum wheels, check that the wheel nuts are tight after driving your vehicle the first 1600 km (1000 miles).
- If you have rotated, repaired, or changed your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
- When using tire chains, be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels.
- Use only Toyota wheel nuts and wrench designed for your aluminum wheels.
- When balancing your wheels, use only Toyota balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer.
- As with any wheel, periodically check your aluminum wheels for damage. If damaged, replace immediately.

# SECTION 7- 3

## DO- IT- YOURSELF MAINTENANCE

### Electrical components

Checking battery condition ..... 316
Battery recharging precautions ..... 317
Checking and replacing fuses ..... 318
Adding washer fluid ..... 319
Replacing light bulbs ..... 320

## Checking battery condition—
## —Precautions

**⚠ CAUTION**

**BATTERY PRECAUTIONS**

**The battery produces flammable and explosive hydrogen gas.**

- **Do not cause a spark from the battery with tools.**
- **Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.**

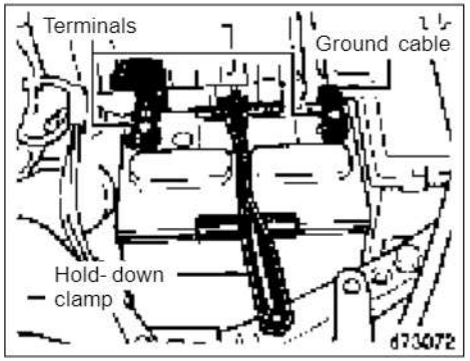
**The electrolyte contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.**

- **Avoid contact with eyes, skin or clothes.**
- **Never ingest electrolyte.**
- **Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.**
- **Keep children away from the battery.**

**EMERGENCY MEASURES**

- **If electrolyte gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water immediately and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while en route to the medical office.**
- **If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contact area. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.**
- **If electrolyte gets on your clothes, there is a possibility of its soaking through to your skin, so immediately take off the exposed clothing and follow the procedure above, if necessary.**
- **If you accidentally swallow electrolyte, drink a large quantity of water or milk. Follow with milk of magnesia, beaten raw egg or vegetable oil. Then go immediately for emergency help.**

## —Checking battery exterior




**Check the battery for corroded or loose terminal connections, cracks, or loose hold- down clamp.**

a. If the battery is corroded, wash it off with a solution of warm water and baking soda. Coat the outside of the terminals with grease to prevent further corrosion.

b. If the terminal connections are loose, tighten their clamp nuts—but do not overtighten.

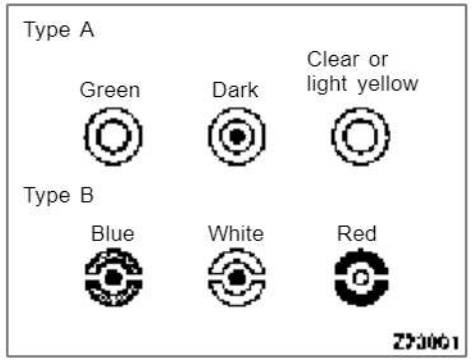
c. Tighten the hold- down clamp only enough to keep the battery firmly in place. Overtightening may damage the battery case.

**NOTICE**

- ***Be sure the engine and all accessories are off before performing maintenance.***
- ***When checking the battery, remove the ground cable from the negative terminal ("-" mark) first and reinstall it last.***
- ***Be careful not to cause a short circuit with tools.***
- ***Take care no solution gets into the battery when washing it.***

**If the battery is disconnected or run down,** the driver's power window and moon roof may not operate automatically and the jam protection will not function correctly after you reconnect, replace or recharge the battery. In any of these cases, you should initialize the power window and moon roof. To initialize the power window and moon roof, see "Power windows" on page 24 and "Electric moon roof" on page 34 in Section 1-2.

## —Checking battery condition




### CHECKING BY INDICATOR

**Check the battery condition by the indicator color.**

| Indicator color | | Condition |
|---|---|---|
| Type A | Type B | |
| Green | Blue | Good |
| Dark | White | Charging necessary. Have battery checked by your Toyota dealer. |
| Clear or light yellow | Red | Have battery checked by your Toyota dealer. |

## Battery recharging precautions

**During recharging, the battery is producing hydrogen gas.**

Therefore, before recharging:

1. If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
2. Be sure the power switch on the recharger is off when connecting the charger cables to the battery and when disconnecting them.

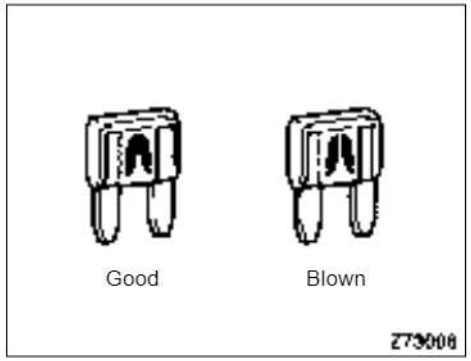
**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Always charge the battery in an unconfined area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.**
- **Only do a slow charge (5 A or less). Charging at a quicker rate is dangerous. The battery may explode, causing personal injuries.**

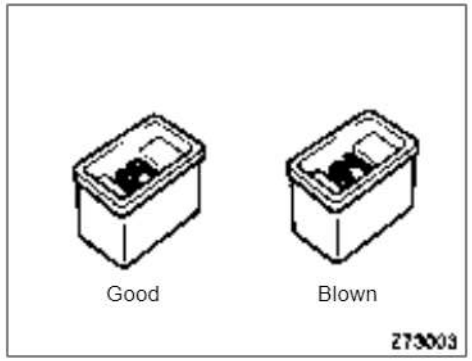
**NOTICE**

***Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.***

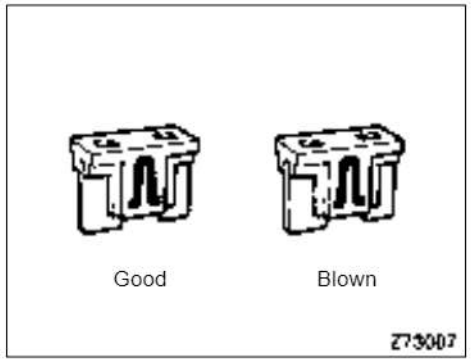
## Checking and replacing fuses



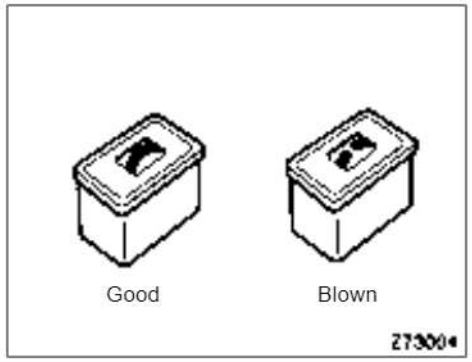

Type A



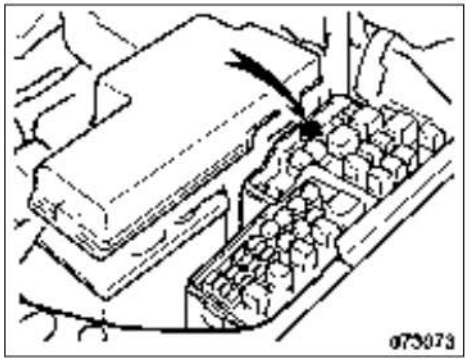

Type C




Type B




Type D




**If the headlights or other electrical components do not work, check the fuses. If any of the fuses are blown, they must be replaced.**

See "Fuse locations" on page 294 in Section 7-1 for locations of the fuses.

**Turn the ignition switch and inoperative component off. Pull the suspected fuse straight out and check it.**

Determine which fuse may be causing the problem. The lid of the fuse box shows the name of the circuit for each fuse. See page 330 in Section 8 for the functions controlled by each circuit.

Type A and B fuses can be pulled out by the pull-out tool. The location of the pull-out tool is shown in the illustration.

If you are not sure whether the fuse has blown, try replacing the suspected fuse with one that you know is good.

**If the fuse has blown, push a new fuse into the clip.**

Only install a fuse with the amperage rating designated on the fuse box lid.

If you do not have a spare fuse, in an emergency you can pull out the "P/POINT" or "RAD1" fuse, which may be dispensable for normal driving, and use it if its amperage rating is the same.

If you cannot use one of the same amperage, use one that is lower, but as close to the rating as possible. If the amperage is lower than that specified, the fuse might blow out again but this does not indicate anything wrong. Be sure to get the correct fuse as soon as possible and return the substitute to its original clip.

It is a good idea to purchase a set of spare fuses and keep them in your vehicle for emergencies.

If the new fuse immediately blows out, there is a problem with the electrical system. Have your Toyota dealer correct it as soon as possible.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Never use a fuse with a higher amperage rating, or any other object, in place of a fuse. This may cause extensive damage and possibly a fire.**

## Adding washer fluid

**If any washer does not work or the low windshield washer fluid level warning light comes on, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.**

You may use plain water as washer fluid. However, in cold areas where temperatures range below the freezing point, use washer fluid containing antifreeze. This product is available at your Toyota dealer and most auto parts stores. Follow the manufacturer's directions for how much to mix with water.

***NOTICE***

***Do not use engine antifreeze or any other substitute because it may damage your vehicle's paint.***

## Replacing light bulbs—

The following illustrations show how to gain access to the bulbs. When replacing a bulb, make sure the ignition switch and light switch are off. Use bulbs with the wattage ratings given in the table.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**◀To prevent burning yourself, do not replace the light bulbs while they are hot.**

**◀Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and require special handling. They can burst or shatter if scratched or dropped. Hold a bulb only by its plastic or metal case. Do not touch the glass part of a bulb with bare hands.**

***NOTICE***

***Only use a bulb of the listed type.***

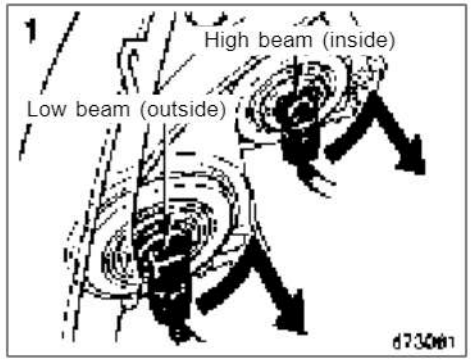
The inside of the lens of exterior lights such as headlights may temporarily fog up when the lens becomes wet in the rain or in a car wash. This is not a problem because the fogging is caused by the temperature difference between the outside and inside of the lens, just like the windshield fogs up in the rain. However, if there is a large drop of water on the inside of the lens, or if there is water pooled inside the light, contact your Toyota dealer.

| Light bulbs | Bulb No. | W | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| Headlights (low beam) | — | 55 | A |
| Headlights (high beam) | 9005 | 60 | B |
| Front fog lights | 9145 | 42 | C |
| Parking, front side marker and front turn signal lights | 3457NA | 30/8 | D |
| Rear turn signal lights | 3156K | 27 | D |
| Stop/tail and rear side marker lights | 3157K | 27/7 | D |
| Back-up lights | 921 | 18 | D |
| License plate lights | 194 | 3.8 | D |
| High mounted stoplight (coupe) | 921 | 18 | D |
| Personal lights (coupe) | — | 5 | D |
| Personal lights (convertible) | — | 8 | E |
| Interior light | — | 8 | F |

| Light bulbs | Bulb No. | W | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| Vanity lights (coupe) | — | 1.4 | F |
| Vanity lights (convertible) | — | 1.5 | E |
| Glove box light | — | 1.2 | D |
| Quarter trim courtesy light | 194 | 3.8 | E |
| Trunk light (coupe) | 2825 | 5 | D |
| Trunk light (convertible) | — | 3.8 | D |

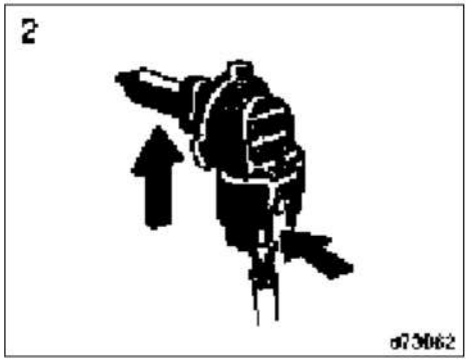
A: H11 halogen bulbs
B: HB3 halogen bulbs
C: H10 halogen bulbs
D: Wedge base bulbs
E: Single end bulbs
F: Double end bulbs

## —Headlights



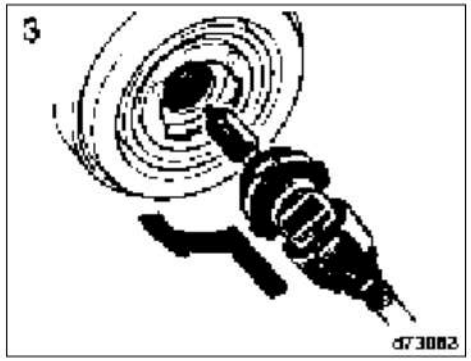

**1. Open the hood. Turn the bulb base counterclockwise to the front of the vehicle as shown.**

The above illustration shows the left-hand headlight.




**2. Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.**

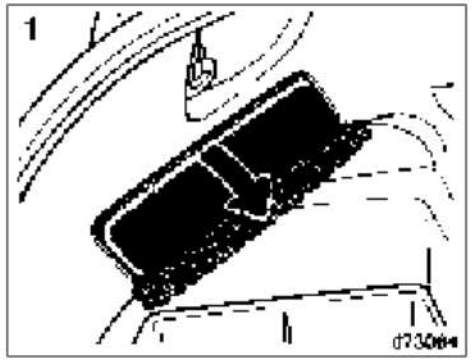
If the connector is tight, wiggle it.

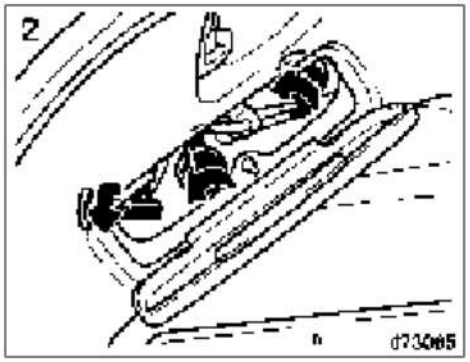


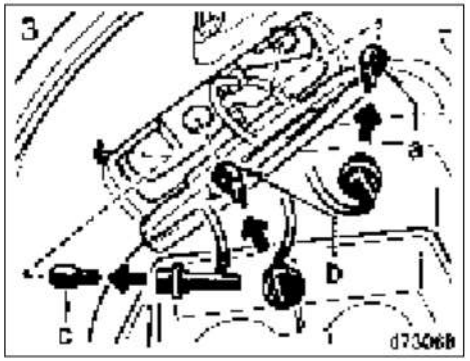

**3. Plug in a new bulb into the connector and install it into the mounting hole.**

Aiming is not necessary after replacing the bulb. When aiming adjustment is necessary, contact your Toyota dealer.

## —Rear turn signal, back-up, stop/tail and rear side marker lights

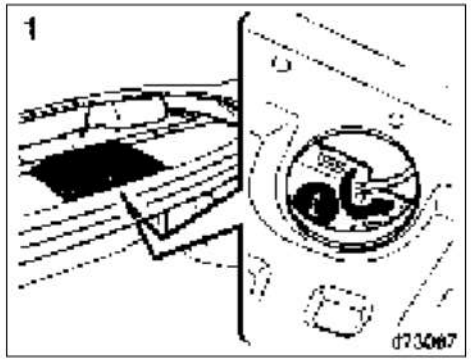


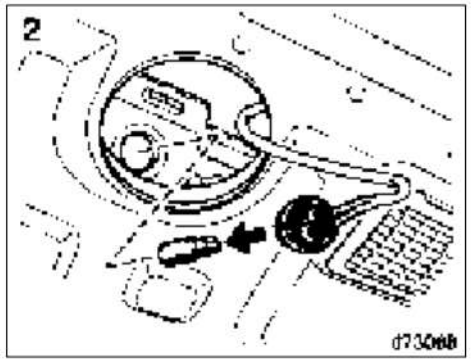



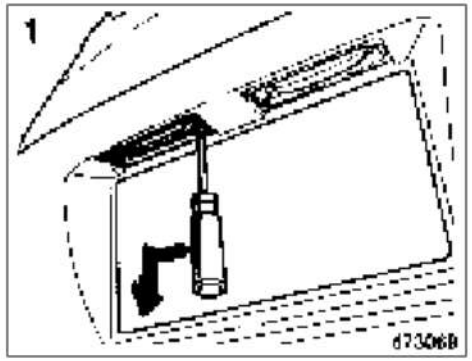

a: Rear turn signal light
b: Stop/tail and rear side marker light
c: Back-up light

**—High mounted stoplight (coupe)**

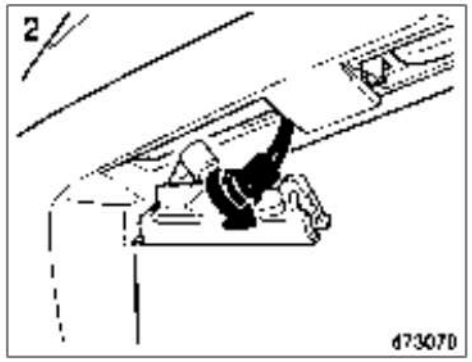


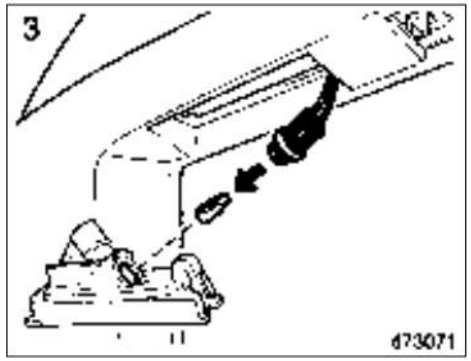




**—License plate lights**




Use a flathead screwdriver.



### —Front fog, parking, front side marker and front turn signal lights

If either the left or right front fog, parking, front side marker and front turn signal lights burns out, contact your Toyota dealer.

| *NOTICE* |
| --- |
| *Do not try to replace the front fog, parking, front side marker and front turn signal light bulbs by yourself. You may damage the vehicle.* |

# SECTION 8

# SPECIFICATIONS

## Specifications

Dimensions and weight . . . . . 326
Engine . . . . . 326
Fuel . . . . . 327
Service specifications . . . . . 327
Tires . . . . . 330
Fuses . . . . . 330

## Dimensions and weight

| | | Coupe | Convertible |
|---|---|---|---|
| Overall length | mm (in.) | 4890 (192.5) | 4890 (192.5) |
| Overall width | mm (in.) | 1815 (71.5) | 1815 (71.5) |
| Overall height* | mm (in.) | 1440 (56.7) | 1450 (57.1) |
| Wheelbase | mm (in.) | 2720 (107.1) | 2720 (107.1) |
| Front tread | mm (in.) | 1545 (60.8) | 1545 (60.8) |
| Rear tread | mm (in.) | 1535 (60.4) | 1535 (60.4) |
| Vehicle capacity weight (occupants + luggage) | kg (lb.) | 410 (900) | 342 (754) |

*: Unladen vehicle

## Engine

Model:
2AZ-FE and 3MZ-FE

Type:

2AZ-FE engine
4 cylinder in line, 4 cycle, gasoline

3MZ-FE engine
6 cylinder V type 4 cycle, gasoline

Bore and stroke, mm (in.):

2AZ-FE engine
88.5 × 96.0 (3.48 × 3.78)

3MZ-FE engine
92.0 × 83.0 (3.62 × 3.27)

Displacement, $cm^3$ (cu. in.):

| | |
|---|---|
| 2AZ-FE engine | 2362 (144.1) |
| 3MZ-FE engine | 3311 (201.9) |

## Fuel

Fuel type:

2AZ-FE engine
Unleaded gasoline, Octane Rating 87 (Research Octane Number 91) or higher

3MZ-FE engine
Unleaded gasoline, Octane Rating 87 (Research Octane Number 91) or higher. For improved vehicle performance, the use of premium unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher is recommended.

Fuel tank capacity, L (gal., Imp. gal.):
70 (18.5, 15.4)

## Service specifications

### ENGINE

Valve clearance (engine cold), mm (in.):

| | |
|---|---|
| 2AZ-FE engine | |
| Intake | 0.19—0.29 (0.007—0.011) |
| Exhaust | 0.30—0.40 (0.012—0.016) |
| 3MZ-FE engine | |
| Intake | 0.15—0.25 (0.006—0.010) |
| Exhaust | 0.25—0.35 (0.010—0.014) |

Spark plug type:

| | |
|---|---|
| DENSO | SK20R11 |
| NGK | IFR6A11 |

Spark plug gap, mm(in.):
1.1 (0.043)

3MZ-FE engine only—Drive belt tension measured with Borroughs drive belt tension gauge No.BT-33-73F (used belt), lbf:
115 ± 20

### ENGINE LUBRICATION

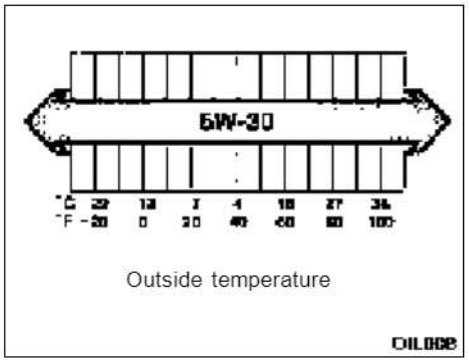
Oil capacity (drain and refill), L (qt., Imp. qt.):

| | |
|---|---|
| 2AZ-FE engine | |
| With filter | 3.8 (4.0, 3.3) |
| Without filter | 3.6 (3.8, 3.2) |
| 3MZ-FE engine | |
| With filter | 4.7 (5.0, 4.1) |
| Without filter | 4.5 (4.8, 4.0) |

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Toyota vehicle. Use Toyota approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade:
API grade SL "Energy-Conserving" or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

Recommended oil viscosity:
SAE 5W-30




Outside temperature

Please contact your Toyota dealer for further details.

**COOLING SYSTEM**

Total capacity, L (qt., Imp. qt.):

| | |
|---|---|
| 2AZ-FE engine | 6.2 (6.6, 5.4) |
| 3MZ-FE engine | 9.2 (9.8, 8.1) |

Coolant type:

"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is used in your Toyota vehicle at factory fill. In order to avoid technical problems, only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. (Coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology is a combination of low phosphates and organic acids.)

Do not use plain water alone.

Please contact your Toyota dealer for further details.

**BATTERY**

Open voltage* at 20◀C (68◀F):

| | |
|---|---|
| 12.6—12.8 V | Fully charged |
| 12.2—12.4 V | Half charged |
| 11.8—12.0 V | Discharged |

*: Voltage that is checked 20 minutes after the key is removed with all the lights turned off

Charging rates:
5 A max.

NOTE: If replacement is necessary, make sure to do so with a battery that meets the same standard as the original.

**CLUTCH**

Pedal free play, mm (in.):
5—15 (0.2—0.6)

Fluid type:
SAE J1703 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 3

**MANUAL TRANSAXLE**

Oil capacity, L (qt., Imp. qt.):
2.5 (2.6, 2.2)

Oil type:
Gear oil API GL-4 or GL-5

Recommended oil viscosity:
SAE 75W-90

**AUTOMATIC TRANSAXLE**

Fluid capacity (drain and refill), L (qt., Imp. qt.):
3.5 (3.7, 3.1)

Fluid type:
Toyota Genuine ATF Type T-IV

Change automatic transmission fluid only as necessary.

Generally, it is necessary to change automatic transmission fluid only if your vehicle is driven under one of the Special Operating Conditions listed in your "Scheduled Maintenance Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement". When changing the automatic transmission fluid, use only "Toyota Genuine ATF Type T-IV" (ATF JWS3309 or NWS6500) to aid in assuring optimum transaxle performance.

**Notice: Using automatic transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF Type T-IV" may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the automatic transmission of your vehicle.**

Please contact your Toyota dealer for further details.

**BRAKES**

Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with the force of 490 N (50 kgf, 110 lbf) with the engine running, mm (in.):

With vehicle stability control system
78 (3.1)

Without vehicle stability control system
68.5 (2.7)

Pedal free play, mm (in.):
1—6 (0.04—0.24)

Pad wear limit, mm (in.):
1.0 (0.04)

Lining wear limit, mm (in.):
1.0 (0.04)

Parking brake adjustment when pulled with the force of 196 N (20 kgf, 44 lbf):
6—9 clicks

Fluid type:
SAE J1703 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 3

**STEERING**

Wheel free play:
Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)

Power steering fluid type:
Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III

## Tires

**Tire size and cold tire inflation pressure:**

kPa (kgf/cm$^2$ or bar, psi)

| Tire size | Front | Rear | Wheel size |
|---|---|---|---|
| P215/60R16 94V | 200 (2.0, 29) | 200 (2.0, 29) | 16 × 6 1/2 JJ |
| P215/55R17 93V | 220 (2.2, 32) | 220 (2.2, 32) | 17 × 7 JJ |

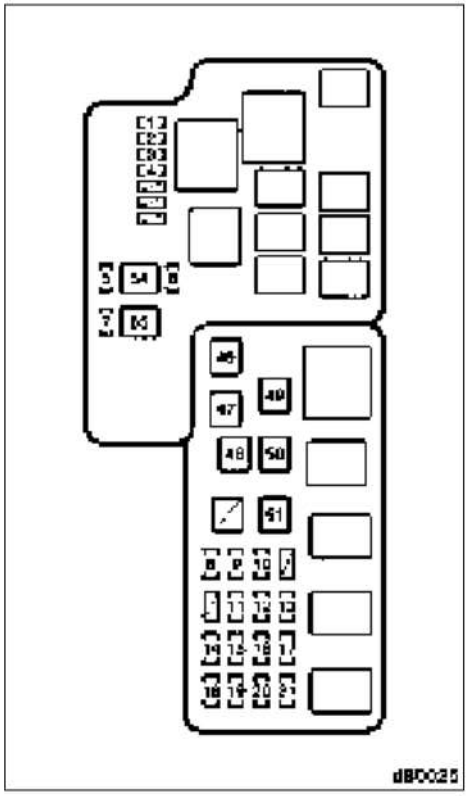
When driving at sustained high speeds above 160 km/h (100 mph), in countries where such speeds are permitted by- law, add 40 kPa (0.4 kgf/cm$^2$ or bar, 6 psi) to the front and rear tires and it does not exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure molded on the tire sidewall.

| Compact spare tire | kPa (kgf/cm$^2$ or bar, psi) | Wheel size |
|---|---|---|
| T155/70R17 110M | 420 (4.2, 60) | 17 × 4T |

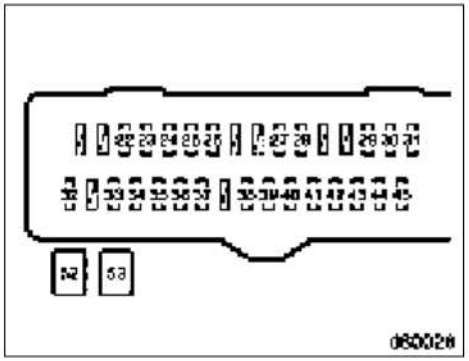
**Wheel nut torque, N·m (kgf·m, ft·lbf):**
104 (10.5, 77)

NOTE: For a complete information on tires (e.g. replacing tires or replacing wheels), see "Checking tire inflation pressure" through "Aluminum wheel precautions", pages 305 through 313, in Section 7- 2.

## Fuses



Engine compartment



Instrument panel

**Fuses (type A)**

1. **HEAD LH LWR 15 A:** Left-hand headlight (low beam)
2. **HEAD RH LWR 15 A:** Right-hand headlight (low beam)
3. **DRL 5 A:** Daytime running light system
4. **A/C 10 A:** Air conditioning system
5. **SPARE 10 A:** Spare fuse
6. **SPARE 15 A:** Spare fuse
7. **SPARE 5 A:** Spare fuse
8. **AM2 30 A:** Starting system, "IGN" and "IG2" fuses
9. **HEAD LH UPR 10 A:** Left-hand headlight (high beam)
10. **HEAD RH UPR 10 A:** Right-hand headlight (high beam)
11. **ALT-S 5 A:** Charging system
12. **IGN 15 A:** Ignition system, multi-information display
13. **IG2 10 A:** Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, SRS airbag system, cruise control system, gauges and meters, front passenger occupant classification system
14. **DOOR1 25 A:** Multiplex communication system (power door lock system, auto-door locking system, wireless remote control system)
15. **EFI 20 A:** Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, emission control system
16. **HORN 10 A:** Horns
17. **D.C.C 30 A:** "ECU-B", "RAD1" and "DOME" fuses
18. **A/F 25 A:** Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
19. **ABS No.2 25 A:** Anti-lock brake system, vehicle stability control system, traction control system, brake assist system
20. **ETCS 10 A:** Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
21. **HAZ 15 A:** Emergency flashers

**Fuses (type B)**

22. **P/W No.2 7.5 A (convertible):** Side power windows
23. **FOG 10 A:** Front fog lights
24. **OBD 7.5 A:** On-board diagnosis system
25. **AMP 25 A:** Audio system
26. **STOP 15 A:** Stop lights, high mounted stoplight, anti-lock brake system, shift lock control system, vehicle stability control system, multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
27. **AM1 7.5 A:** Starting system
28. **P/W 25 A:** Power windows
29. **S/ROOF 25 A:** Electric moon roof
30. **TAIL 10 A:** Tail lights, parking lights, license plate lights, front fog lights, multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system

31. **PANEL 10 A:** Glove box light, multi-information display, instrument cluster lights, instrument panel lights
32. **ECU-IG 10 A:** SRS airbag system, anti-lock brake system, vehicle stability control system, traction control system, brake assist system, compass, anti-glare inside rear view mirror, electric moon roof, power windows, multiplex communication system
33. **HTR 10 A:** Air conditioning system, rear window defogger, outside rear view mirror defoggers
34. **WASH 15 A:** Windshield washer
35. **S/HTR 20 A:** Seat heaters
36. **GAUGE1 10 A:** Gauges and meters, multi-information display, shift lock control system, turn signal lights, back-up lights, cruise control system, charging system, theft deterrent system, automatic transmission
37. **WIP 25 A:** Windshield wipers
38. **RAD1 20 A:** Audio system
39. **ECU-B 10 A:** Multiplex communication system (power door lock system, security system, auto-door locking system, automatic light control system, headlight delay off system, tail light auto cut system, illuminated entry system, daytime running light system, wireless remote control system), air conditioning system, front passenger occupant classification system, gauges and meters, vehicle stability control system
40. **DOME 7.5 A:** Ignition switch light, interior light, personal lights, trunk light, vanity lights, wireless remote control system, multi-information display
41. **ECU ACC 7.5 A:** Power rear view mirrors, multi-information display, gauges and meters, automatic transmission, multiplex communication system
42. **CIG 15 A:** Power outlet
43. **P/POINT 15 A:** Power outlet
44. **RAD2 10 A:** Audio system
45. **MIR HTR 10 A:** Outside rear view mirror defoggers, multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system

**Fuses (type C)**

46. **MAIN 40 A:** Headlights, daytime running light system, multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, "HEAD LH LWR", "HEAD RH LWR", "HEAD LH UPR", "HEAD LH UPR" and "DRL" fuses
47. **ABS No.1 50 A:** Anti-lock brake system, vehicle stability control system, traction control system, brake assist system
48. **CDS 30 A:** Electric cooling fan
49. **RDI 30 A:** Electric cooling fan
50. **HTR 50 A:** Air conditioning system
51. **TSK 30 A (convertible):** Convertible top control system, quarter windows
52. **PWR 30 A:** Side power windows
53. **P/SEAT 30 A:** Power seats

**Fuses (type D)**

54. **ALT 120 A:** "HEAD LH LWR", "HEAD RH LWR", "DRL", "A/C", "AM2", "HEAD LH UPR", "HEAD RH UPR", "ALT-S", "IGN", "IG2", "DOOR1", "EFI", "HORN", "D.C.C", "A/F", "ABS No.2", "ETCS", "HAZ", "DEF", "MAIN", "ABS No.1", "CDS", "RDI" and "HTR (50 A)" fuses
55. **DEF 40 A:** Rear window defogger, outside rear view mirror defoggers

# SECTION 9

# REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS FOR U.S. OWNERS

## Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners ..... 334

### Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.
(Toll-free: 1-800-331-4331).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-800-424-9393 (or 366-0123 in Washington, D.C. area) or write to: NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, D.C. 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the Hotline.

hU¿3

## Quick index

◀If a service reminder indicator or warning buzzer comes on ..... 131
◀If your vehicle will not start ..... 256
◀If your engine stalls while driving ..... 259
◀If your vehicle overheats ..... 260
◀If you have a flat tire ..... 261
◀If your vehicle needs to be towed ..... 271
◀Tips for driving during break- in period ..... 220
◀How to start the engine ..... 248
◀General maintenance ..... 287
◀Complete index ..... NO TAG

## Gas station information

**Fuel type:**

2AZ- FE engine: UNLEADED gasoline, Octane Rating 87 (Research Octane Number 91) or higher

3MZ- FE engine: UNLEADED gasoline, Octane Rating 87 (Research Octane Number 91) or higher.
For improved vehicle performance, the use of premium unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher is recommended.

See page 220 for detailed information.

**Fuel tank capacity:**
70 L (18.5 gal., 15.4 Imp. gal.)

**Engine oil:**
API grade SL “Energy- Conserving” or ILSAC multigrade engine oil is recommended.

See page 301 for detailed information.

**Tire information:** See pages 305 through 313.

**Tire inflation pressure:** See page 330.

**Publication No. OM33667U**
**Part No. 01999-33667**
Printed in Japan 01- 0502- 00 C

# Important information about this manual

## Safety and vehicle damage warnings

Throughout this manual, you will see safety and vehicle damage warnings. You must follow these warnings carefully to avoid possible injury or damage.

The types of warnings, what they look like, and how they are used in this manual are explained as follows:

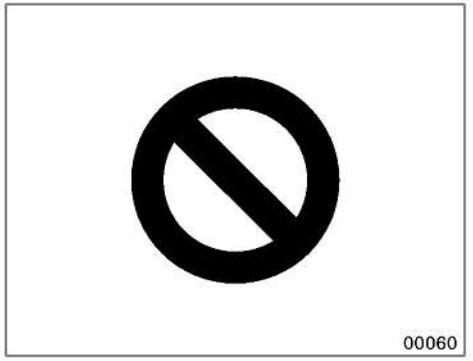
**⚠ CAUTION**

**This is a warning against anything which may cause injury to people if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.**

***NOTICE***

***This is a warning against anything which may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your vehicle and its equipment.***

## Safety symbol




**When you see the safety symbol shown above, it means: "Do not..."; "Do not do this"; or "Do not let this happen".**

# Important information about your Toyota

## Occupant restraint systems

Toyota encourages you and your family to take the time to read Section 1-3 of this Owner's Manual carefully. In terms of helping you understand how you can receive the maximum benefit of the occupant restraint systems this vehicle provides, Section 1-3 of this Owner's Manual is the most important Section for you and your family to read.

Section 1-3 describes the function and operation concerning seats, seat belts, SRS airbags and child restraint systems of this vehicle and some potential hazards you should be aware of. These systems work together along with the overall structure of this vehicle in order to provide occupant restraint in the event of a crash. The effect of each system can be enhanced when it is used properly and together with other systems. No single occupant restraint system can, by itself, provide you or your family with the restraint equal to that which these systems can provide when used together. That is why it is important for you and your family to understand the purpose and proper use of each of these systems and how they relate to each other.

The purpose of all occupant restraint systems is to help reduce the possibility of death or serious injury in the event of a collision. None of these systems, either individually or together, can ensure that there is no injury in the event of collision. However, the more you know about these systems and how to use them properly, the greater your chances become of surviving an accident without death or serious injury.

Seat belts provide the primary restraint to all occupants of the vehicle, and every occupant of the vehicle should wear seat belts properly at all times. Children should always be secured in child restraint systems that are appropriate for their age and size. SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) airbags are, as their names imply, designed to work with, and supplement the seat, seat belts and are not substitutes for them. SRS airbags can be very effective in reducing the risk of head and chest injuries by reducing the chance of contact by the head and chest with interior portions of the vehicle.

In order to be effective, the SRS airbags must deploy with tremendous speed. The rapid deployment of the SRS airbags makes the SRS airbags themselves potential sources of serious injury if an occupant is too close to an airbag, or if an object or some part of his or her body has been placed between the occupant and the airbag at the time of deployment. This is just one example of how the instructions in Section 1-3 of this Owner's Manual will help ensure proper use of the occupant restraint systems, and increase the safety they can provide to you and your family in the event of an accident.

Toyota recommends you to read the provisions in Section 1-3 carefully and refer to them as needed during your time of ownership of this vehicle.

## Event data recorder

Your vehicle has computers that monitor and control certain aspects of your vehicle. These computers assist in driving and maintaining optimal vehicle performance. Besides storing data useful for troubleshooting, there is a system to record data in a crash or a near car crash event. This is called an Event Data Recorder (EDR).

The SRS airbag sensor assembly contains the EDR. In a crash or a near car crash event, this device may record some or all of the following information:

- ◀Engine speed
- ◀Whether the brake pedal was applied or not
- ◀Vehicle speed
- ◀To what extent the accelerator pedal was depressed
- ◀Position of the transmission selector lever
- ◀Whether the driver and front passenger wore the seat belts or not
- ◀Driver's seat position
- ◀Front passenger's occupant classification

◀SRS airbag deployment data

◀SRS airbag system diagnostic data

If your vehicle is equipped with a vehicle stability control (VSC) system, its Electronic Control Unit (ECU) may contain another EDR. There are a variety of driving situations which include activating the VSC under which the VSC EDR will record certain information. The VSC EDR may record some or all of the following information:

◀Behavior of the vehicle

◀Steering wheel angle

◀Vehicle speed

◀To what extent the accelerator pedal was depressed

◀To what extent the brake pedal was applied

◀To what extent the ECU controlled the condition of the 4 wheels

◀Vehicle stability control system diagnostic data

The information above is intended to be used for the purpose of improving vehicle safety performance. Unlike general data recorders, the EDR does not record sound data such as conversation between passengers.

Toyota will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

◀An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the leasing company for a leased vehicle) is obtained

◀Officially requested by the police or other authorities

◀Used as a defense for Toyota in a law suit

◀Ordered by the court

However, if necessary Toyota will:

◀Use the data for research on Toyota vehicle safety performance

◀Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing details of the vehicle owner, and only when it is deemed necessary

◀Disclose summarized data cleared of vehicle identification information to a non-Toyota organization for research purposes

## New vehicle warranty

Your new vehicle is covered by the following Toyota limited warranties:

- ◀New vehicle warranty
- ◀Emission control systems warranty
- ◀Others

For further information, please refer to the "Owner's Warranty Information Booklet" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".

## Your responsibility for maintenance

It is the owner's responsibility to make sure that the specified maintenance is performed. Section 6 gives details of these maintenance requirements. Also included in Section 6 is general maintenance. For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Scheduled Maintenance Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".

## Important health and safety information about your Toyota

**⚠ CAUTION**

**◀WARNING: Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. In addition, oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.**

**◀Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.**

## Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Toyota

A wide variety of non- genuine spare parts and accessories for Toyota vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Toyota vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non- genuine Toyota products. Modification with non- genuine Toyota products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

## Spark ignition system of your Toyota

The spark ignition system in your Toyota meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference- Causing Equipment Standard.

## Installation of a mobile two- way radio system

As the installation of a mobile two- way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, electronic throttle control system, cruise control system, anti- lock brake system, traction control system, vehicle stability control system, SRS airbag system and seat belt pretensioner system, be sure to check with your Toyota dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation.

## Tires and loading on your Toyota
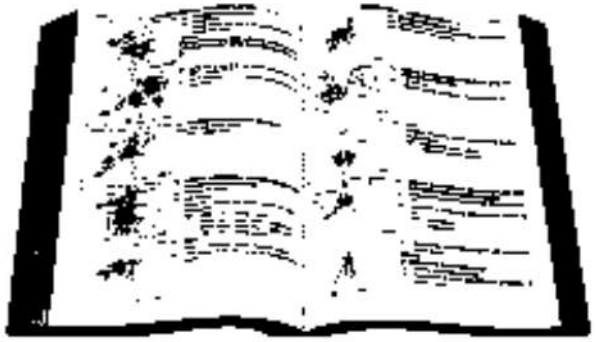
Underinflated or overinflated tire pressure and the excess load may result in the deterioration of steering ability and braking ability, leading to an accident. Check the tire inflation pressure periodically and be sure to keep the load limits given in this Owner's Manual. For details about tire inflation pressure and load limits, see pages 305 and 243.

## Scrapping of your Toyota

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Toyota contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by the qualified service shop or by your Toyota dealer before you dispose of your vehicle.

# You should know as much about the quality and importance of proper maintenance of your new vehicle as the people who built it.

## The Toyota authorized Repair Manual tells you how to maintain your vehicle and enables you to correctly perform your own maintenance.



The best way to keep your new vehicle in top running order is to maintain it properly from the moment you drive it off the showroom floor.

The Toyota authorized Repair Manual is packed with literally everything you need to know to perform your own maintenance in virtually every area of your new vehicle.

# Maintenance procedures for the engine, chassis, body, electrical system, and more, are clearly explained and illustrated.

## Periodic maintenance and tune–up

Periodic maintenance and tune- up helps to prevent small problems from growing into larger ones later on. The repair manual outlines exactly what maintenance is required and clearly explains how to do the work yourself step- by- step.

Areas covered include such things as spark plug replacement, valve clearance adjustment and engine oil and filter replacement.

## Where to obtain the Repair Manual

The repair manual for CAMRY SOLARA may be purchased from any Toyota dealer or the Material Distribution Center. To purchase the repair manual, please contact your Toyota dealer or call the Material Distribution Center toll- free at 1- 800- 622- 2033.

## WE REALLY CARE ABOUT YOU — PLEASE BUCKLE UP

Toyota has made a special effort to encourage use of seat belts.



Toyota belts are:

- **Comfortable**
- **Easy to use**
- **Convenient**

We encourage you to use your belts every time you drive.

# Introduction

**Thank you for your purchase of the Navigation System. Please read this manual carefully to ensure proper use. Keep this manual in your vehicle at all times.**

The Navigation System is one of the most technologically advanced vehicle accessories ever developed. The system receives satellite signals from the Global Positioning System (GPS) operated by the U.S. Department of Defense. Using these signals and other vehicle sensors, the system indicates your present position and assists in locating a desired destination.

The navigation system is designed to select efficient routes from your present starting location to your destination. The system is designed to direct you to a destination that is unfamiliar to you in an efficient manner. The system uses the maps of DENSO. The calculated routes may not be the shortest nor the least traffic congested. Your own personal local knowledge or "short cut" may at times be faster than the calculated routes.

The navigation system's database includes about 75 Point of Interest categories to allow you to easily select destinations such as restaurants and banks. If a destination is not in the database, you can enter the street address or a major intersection close to it and the system will guide you there. The system will provide both a visual map and audio instructions. The audio instructions will announce the distance remaining and the direction to turn in approaching a fork or intersection. These voice instructions will help you keep your eyes on the road and are timed to provide enough time to allow you to maneuver, change lanes or slow down.

**Please be aware that all current vehicle navigation systems have certain limitations that may affect their ability to perform properly. The accuracy of the vehicle's position depends on the satellite condition, road configuration, vehicle condition or other circumstances. For more information on the limitations of the system, refer to pages 10 through 12.**

**TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION**

SECTION I

# BASIC FUNCTIONS



## Basic information before operation

Display operation ..... 2
Touch switch operation ..... 2
Inputting letters and numbers ..... 3
Current position display ..... 5
Screen scroll operation (one-touch scroll) ..... 5
Map scale ..... 9
Orientation of the map ..... 9
Limitations of the navigation system ..... 10
Map database information and updates ..... 12

## Display operation



**You can adjust the angle of the display by pushing the "TILT" button. Each push of the "TILT" button will tilt the display to positions [1], [2], [3] and then back to [0] in the reverse order.**

If you turn the ignition switch off, the display will automatically move back to position [0]. The display will automatically resume the previous position when the ignition switch is turned to the "ACC" or "ON" position.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Take care not to jam your hand while the display is moving. Otherwise, you could be injured.**

***NOTICE***

***Do not obstruct the display while it is moving. It could damage your navigation system.***

***INFORMATION***

***Under extremely cold conditions, the display may react slowly or operation sound may become louder.***

## Touch switch operation

**This system is operated mainly by the switches on the screen. To prevent damage to the screen, lightly touch switches on the screen with your finger. When you touch a switch on the screen, a beep sounds.**

**Do not use objects other than your finger to touch the screen.**

***INFORMATION***

- ***If the system does not respond to a touch of a switch, move your finger away from the screen and then touch it again.***
- ***You cannot operate dimmed switches.***
- ***Wipe off fingerprints on the surface of the display using a glass cleaning cloth.***
- ***The displayed image may become darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the display is cold.***
- ***Under extremely cold conditions, the map may not be displayed and the data input by a user may be deleted. Also, the switches may be harder than usual to depress.***

## Inputting letters and numbers

When searching for an address or a name, or entering a memo, you can input letters and numbers via the touch screen.

### ◀ To input letters

To display the alphabet keys, touch the **"A-Z"** switch or the **"À–Ý"** switch.



Enter letters by touching the alphabet keys directly.

◄: Touching this switch erases one letter. Holding this switch will continue to erase letters.

### ◀ To input numerals and symbols

To display the number keys and symbol keys, touch the **"0-9"** switch.



Enter numerals and symbols by touching the number keys and symbol keys directly.

◄: Touching this switch erases one letter. Holding this switch will continue to erase letters.

►: Touching this switch displays other symbols.

### ◀ To display the list



To search for an address or a name, touch the **"List"** switch. Matching items from the database are listed even if the entered address or name is incomplete.

If the number of matches is four or less, the list is displayed without touching the **"List"** switch.



| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| ***The number of matching items is shown to the right side of the screen. If the number of matching items is more than 9,999, the system displays "****" on the screen.*** |

### ◀ List screen operation

When a list is displayed, you can scroll or page through the list by using the appropriate switch.



To shift to the next or previous page.

To scroll up or down one item at a time.

This expresses a displayed screen position.

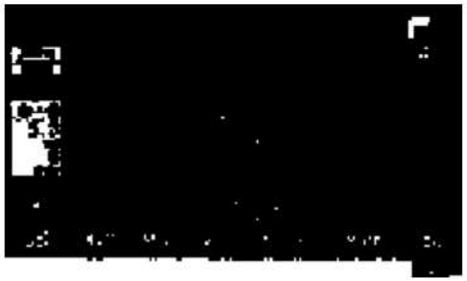
If appears to the right of the item name, the complete name is too long for the display. Touch to scroll to the end of the name.

Touch to scroll to the beginning of the name.

## Current position display

When starting the navigation system, the current position is displayed first.

This screen displays the current vehicle position and a map of the surrounding local area.



The current vehicle position mark appears in the center or bottom center of the map screen. You can return to this map screen showing your current position at any time from any screen by pushing the **"MAP/ VOICE"** button.

During driving, the current vehicle position mark is fixed in the screen and the map moves.

The current position is automatically set as your vehicle receives signals from the GPS (Global Positioning System). If your current position is not correct, it is automatically corrected after your vehicle receives signals from the GPS.

***INFORMATION***

- ◀ ***After battery disconnection, or on a new vehicle, the current position may not be correct. As soon as the system receives signals from the GPS, the correct current position is displayed.***
- ◀ ***To correct the current position manually, see page 81.***

## Screen scroll operation (one-touch scroll)

**Touch any point on the map and that point moves to the center of the screen and is shown by the cursor mark.**



If you wish to look at a point on the map which is different to your current vehicle position, you can bring the desired point to the center of the screen by using the scroll feature.

If you continue to hold your finger on the screen, the map will continue scrolling in that direction until you lift your finger.

After you scroll the screen, the map remains centered at the selected location until you activate another function. The current vehicle position mark will continue to move along your actual route and may move off the screen. When you push the **"MAP/VOICE"** button, the current vehicle position mark returns to the center of the screen and the map moves as you proceed along the designated route.

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| ***When you use the one-touch scroll feature, the current vehicle position mark may disappear from the screen. Move the map with a one-touch scroll again or push the "MAP/VOICE" button to return to the current vehicle position map location display.*** |

### ◀ To set the cursor position as a destination

You can set a specific point on the map as a destination using the one-touch scroll function.



**Touch the "Enter ⊙" switch.**

**The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)**

If there is already a preset destination, touch the **"Add to ⊙"** switch or the **"Replace ⊙"** switch.

When there is already a preset destination, using the **"Add to ⊙"** switch to set an additional destination, will set the new one as the first point of arrival.

### ◀ To register the cursor position as a memory point

Memory point registration enables easy access to a specific point.



**Touch the "Mark" switch.**

When you touch the **"Mark"** switch, the following screen appears for a few seconds, and then the map screen returns.



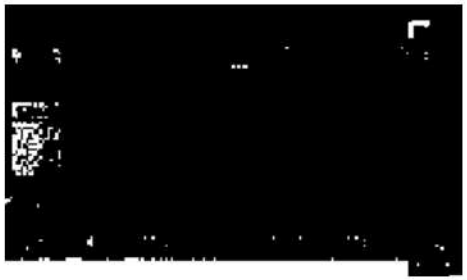
The registered point is shown by ⚑ on the map.

To change the icon or name, etc., see page 72.

You can register up to 106 memory points. If you attempt to register more than 106, a message appears for confirmation.



### ◀ To see information about the icon where the cursor is set



To display information about an icon, set the cursor on it.

**POI INFORMATION**

When the cursor is set on a POI icon, the name and **"Info."** switch are displayed on the top of the screen.



**Touch the "Info." switch.**




Information such as the name, address, and phone number are displayed.

If you touch the **"Enter ⊙"** switch, the position of cursor is set as a destination.

If there is already a preset destination, the **"Add to ⊙"** switch and the **"Replace ⊙"** switch are displayed.

When there is already a preset destination, using the **"Add to ⊙"** switch to set an additional destination, will set the new one as the first point of arrival.

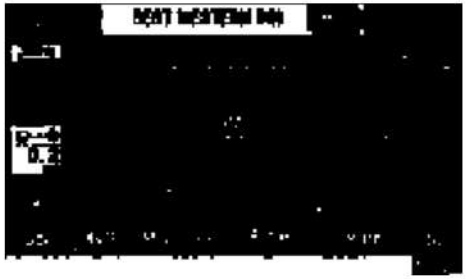
To register this POI as a memory point, touch the **"Mark"** switch. (For details, see page 70.)

## *INFORMATION*

***The desired Point of Interest can be displayed on the map screen. (For details, see page 53.)***

### MEMORY POINT INFORMATION

When the cursor is set on a memory point icon, the name and **"Info."** switch are displayed on the top of screen.



**Touch the "Info." switch.**




Information such as the name, location, and phone number are displayed.

If you touch the **"Enter ⊙"** switch, the position of cursor is set as a destination.

If there is already a set destination, the **"Add to ⊙"** switch and the **"Replace ⊙"** switch are displayed.

When there is already a preset destination, using the **"Add to ⊙"** switch to set an additional destination, will set the new one as the first point of arrival.

To edit a memory point, touch the **"Edit"** switch. (For details, see page 72.)

## Map scale



Touch the or switch to change the scale of the map display. The scale bar and indicator at the bottom of the screen indicates the map scale menu. The scale ranges 150 feet (50 m) to 250 miles (400 km).

Touch the or switch until the scale bar changes normally. If you continue to touch on the switch, the scale bar changes smoothly.

You can change the scale of the map display by touching the scale bar directly. It is not available during driving.

The map scale is displayed under the north-up symbol or heading-up symbol at the top left of the screen.

### *INFORMATION*

*When the map scale is at the maximum range of 250 miles (400 km), is not shown. When the map scale is at the minimum range of 150 feet (50 m), is not shown. However, in the area where the foot print map is contained, when the map scale is changed to 150 feet (50 m), the switch changes to the switch.*

## Orientation of the map



North-up screen



Heading-up screen

**You can change the orientation of the map from north-up to heading-up by touching the orientation symbol at the top left of the screen.**



**North-up symbol**

Regardless of the direction of vehicle travel, North is always up.



**Heading-up symbol**

The direction of vehicle travel is always up. A red arrow indicates North.

## Limitations of the navigation system

**This navigation system calculates the current vehicle position using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, map data, etc. However, the accurate position may not be shown depending on the satellite condition, road configuration, vehicle condition or other circumstances.**

The Global Positioning System (GPS) developed and operated by the U.S. Department of Defense provides an accurate current vehicle position using 3 to 4 satellites. The GPS system has a certain level of inaccuracy. While the navigation system will compensate for this most of the time, occasional positioning errors of up to 300 feet (100 m) can and should be expected. Generally, position errors will be corrected within a few seconds.



When your vehicle is receiving signals from the satellites, the “GPS” mark appears at the top left of the screen.

The GPS signal may be physically obstructed, leading to inaccurate vehicle position on the map display. Tunnels, tall buildings, trucks, or even the placement of objects on the instrument panel may obstruct the GPS signals.

The installation of window tinting may also obstruct the GPS signals. Most window tinting contains some metallic content that will interfere with GPS signal reception. We advice against the use of window tinting on vehicles equipped with navigation systems.

The GPS satellites may not send signals due to repairs or improvements being made to them.

Even when the navigation system is receiving clear GPS signals, the vehicle position may not be shown accurately or inappropriate route guidance may occur in some cases.

## (a) Accurate current vehicle position may not be shown in the following cases:

- When driving on a small angled Y-shaped road.
- When driving on a winding road.
- When driving on a slippery road such as in sand, gravel, snow, etc.
- When driving on a long straight road.
- When freeway and surface streets run in parallel.
- After moving by ferry or vehicle carrier.
- When a long route is searched during high speed driving.
- When driving without setting the current position calibration correctly.
- After repeating a change of direction by going forward and backward, or turning on a turntable in the parking lot.
- When leaving a covered parking lot or parking garage.
- When a roof carrier is installed.
- When driving with tire chains installed.
- When the tires are worn.
- After replacing a tire or tires.
- When using tires that are smaller or larger than the factory specifications.
- When the tire pressure in any of the four tires is not correct.

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| ***If your vehicle cannot receive GPS signals, you can correct the current position manually. For information on setting the current position calibration, see page 81.*** |

## (b) Inappropriate route guidance may occur in the following cases:

- ◀ When turning at an intersection off the designated route guidance.
- ◀ If you set more than one destination but skip any of them, auto reroute will display a route returning to the destination on the previous route.
- ◀ When turning at an intersection for which there is no route guidance.
- ◀ When passing through an intersection for which there is no route guidance.
- ◀ During auto reroute, the route guidance may not be available for the next turn to the right or left.
- ◀ It may take a long time to operate auto reroute during high speed driving. In auto reroute, a detour route may be shown.
- ◀ After auto reroute, the route may not be changed.
- ◀ An unnecessary U-turn may be shown or announced.
- ◀ A location may have multiple names and the system will announce one or more.
- ◀ Some routes may not be searched.
- ◀ If the route to your destination includes gravel, unpaved roads or alleys, the route guidance may not be shown.
- ◀ Your destination point might be shown on the opposite side of the street.
- ◀ When a portion of the route has regulations prohibiting the entry of the vehicle that vary by time or season or other reasons.
- ◀ The road and map data stored in your navigation system may not be complete or may not be the latest version.

**After replacing the tire, implement the operation described in the "◀Tire change calibration". (For details, see page 82.)**

This navigation system uses tire turning data and is designed to work with factory-specified tires for your vehicle. Installing tires that are larger or smaller than the originally equipped diameter may cause inaccurate display of the vehicle's position. The tire pressure also affects the diameter of the tires so please make sure the tire pressure of all four tires is correct.

## Map database information and updates

**This system uses the maps of DENSO.**

♥ GDT, Geographic Data Technology, Inc.

♥ 2003 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.

Data by infoUSA Copyright ♥2003, All Rights Reserved.

♥ 2003 VISA Corporation
National Research Bureau ♥2003

The Bullseye Design is a resistered trademark of Target Brands, Inc.

**END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT**

PLEASE READ THIS AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

THIS IS A LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR YOUR COPY OF THE MAP DATABASE ("The DATABASE"), ORIGINALLY MADE BY Geographic Data Technology, Inc. ("GDT"), USED IN THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM. BY USING THE DATABASE, YOU ACCEPT AND AGREE TO ALL TERMS AND CONDITIONS SET FORTH BELOW.

OWNERSHIP
The DATABASE and the copyrights and intellectual property or neighboring rights therein are owned by GDT or its licensors.

LICENSE GRANT
GDT grants you a non-exclusive license to use your copy of the DATABASE for your personal use or for use in your business' internal operations. This license does not include the right to grant sub-licenses.

LIMITATIONS ON USE
The DATABASE is restricted for use in the specific system for which it was created. Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory laws, you may not extract or re-utilize any portion of the contents of the DATABASE, nor reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the DATABASE.

TRANSFER
You may not transfer the DATABASE to third parties, except together with the system for which it was created, provided that you do not retain any copy of the DATABASE, and provided that the transferee agrees to all terms and conditions of this AGREEMENT.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY
GDT does not warrant or make any representations regarding, either express or implied, regarding the use or results of the use of the DATABASE in terms of its correctness, accuracy, reliability, or otherwise, and expressly disclaims any implied warranties of quality, performance, merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose or non-infringement. GDT does not warrant that the DATABASE is or will be error free. No oral or written information or advice provided by GDT, your supplier or any other person shall create a warranty.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY
The price of the DATABASE does not include any consideration for assumption of risk of consequential, indirect or unlimited direct damages which may arise in connection with your use of the DATABASE. Accordingly, in no event shall GDT or supplier of the navigation system using the DATABASE ("Supplier") be liable for any consequential, special, incidental or indirect damages, including without limitation, loss of revenue, data, or use, incurred by you or any third party arising out of your use of the DATABASE, whether in an action in contract or tort or based on a warranty, even if GDT or the Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. In any event GDT's liability for direct damages is limited to the price of your copy of the DATABASE.
THE DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY, SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, DO NOT AFFECT OR PREJUDICE YOUR STATUTORY RIGHTS WHERE YOU HAVE ACQUIRED THE DATABASE OTHERWISE THAN IN THE COURSE OF A BUSINESS. Some states and laws do not allow the exclusion of implied warranties, so the above disclaimer may not apply to you.

WARNINGS

The DATABASE reflects reality as existing before you received the DATABASE and it comprises data and information from government and other sources, which may contain errors and omissions. Accordingly, the DATABASE may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, and due to the nature of the sources used. The DATABASE does not include or reflect information on - inter alia - neighborhood safety; law enforcement; emergency assistance; construction work; road or lane closures; vehicle or speed restrictions; road slope or grade; bridge height, weight or other limits; road or traffic conditions; special events; traffic congestion; or travel time.

GOVERNMENT END USERS

If the DATABASE is for a region of North America and is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, the DATABASE is licensed with "limited rights." Utilization of the DATABASE is subject to the restrictions specified in the "Rights in Technical Data and Computer Database" clause at DFARS 252.227-7013, or the equivalent clause for non-defense agencies. Manufacturer of the DATABASE for North America is Geographic Data Technology, Inc., at 11 Lafayette Street, Lebanon, New Hampshire 03766, USA.

**END USER NOTICE**

PLEASE READ THIS NOTICE CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THIS NAVIGATION SYSTEM

The Point Of Interest Data ("POI" Data) in the navigation system is in part provided by infoUSA Inc. ("infoUSA"). By using the POI Data, you accept and agree to all terms and conditions set forth below.

1. Ownership

All rights, title and interest to the infoUSA POI Data shall be retained by infoUSA.

2. Limitations on use

Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory laws, you may not extract or re-utilize any portion of the contents of the POI Data, nor reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the POI Data.

3. Transfer

You may not transfer the POI Data to third parties, except together with the system for which it was created, provided that you do not retain any copy of the POI Data.

4. Disclaimer of warranty
EXCEPT AS STATED HEREIN, INFOUSA MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY.

5. Limitation of Liability
EITHER INFOUSA OR SUPPLIER OF POI DATA SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES MADE OR ALLEGED IN CONNECTION WITH YOUR USE OF THE POI DATA.

**END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT**

Personal Use Only. You agree to use this information for solely personal, non-commercial purposes, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. You may not modify the information or remove any copyright notices that appear on the information in any way. You may not decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this information, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose. Without limiting the foregoing, you may not use this information with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications.

No Warranty. This information is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. DENSO and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers, collectively “DENSO”) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, and DENSO expressly disclaims any warranties regarding content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, non-infringement, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this information, or that the information or server will be uninterrupted or error-free. Some states, territories and countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent, the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: DENSO SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF ITS NATURE, ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, WHETHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE OR CONTRACTS ARISING OUT OF YOUR POSSESSION, USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF DENSO OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some states, territories and countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Indemnity. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold DENSO and its licensors (including their respective licensors, suppliers, assignees, subsidiaries, affiliated companies, and the respective officers, directors, employees, shareholders, agents and representatives of each of them) free and harmless from and against any liability, loss, injury (including injuries resulting in death), demand, action, cost, expense, or claim of any kind or character, including but not limited to attorney's fees, arising out of or in connection with any use or possession by you of this information.

**END USER NOTICE**

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

**END-USER TERMS**

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and DENSO CORPORATION (hereinafter referred to as "DENSO") ("DENSO") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

♥ 2003 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Personal Use Only. You agree to use this Data together with the navigation system for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by DENSO, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. DENSO and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: DENSO AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: DENSO AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF DENSO OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Endorsement: Reference to any products, services, processes, hypertext links to third parties or other Data by trade name, trademark, manufacturer, supplier or otherwise does not necessarily constitute or imply its endorsement, sponsorship or recommendation by DENSO or its licensors. Product and service information are the sole responsibility of each individual vendor. The NAVTEQ Corporation name and logo, the NAVTEQ and NAVTEQ ON BOARD trademarks and logos, and other trademarks and trade names owned by NAVTEQ Corporation may not be used in any commercial manner without the prior written consent of NAVTEQ.

Export Control. You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

Indemnity. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold DENSO and its licensors (including their respective licensors, suppliers, assignees, subsidiaries, affiliated companies, and the respective officers, directors, employees, shareholders, agents and representatives of each of them) free and harmless from and against any liability, loss, injury (including injuries resulting in death), demand, action, cost, expense, or claim of any kind or character, including but not limited to attorney's fees, arising out of or in connection with any use or possession by you of this Data.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between DENSO (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the NAVTEQ Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, (i) for acquisitions conducted by the Department of Defense, the NAVTEQ Data is licensed with "Limited Rights" in accordance with the rights set forth at DFARS 252.227-7013(b)(3), TECHNICAL DATA-NONCOMMERCIAL ITEMS, and NAVTEQ Data delivered or otherwise furnished with "Limited Rights" shall be marked with the following "Limited Rights Notice" set forth at DFARS 252.227-7013(f)(3), and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

**LIMITED RIGHTS**

CONTRACT NO.:

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME:
NAVTEQ Corporation

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: 222 Merchandise Mart Plaza, Suite 900, Chicago, Illinois 60654.

The Government's rights to use, modify, reproduce, release, perform, display, or disclose these technical data are restricted by paragraph (b)(3) of the Rights in Technical Data-Noncommercial Items clause contained in the above identified contract. Any reproduction of technical data or portions thereof marked with this legend must also reproduce the markings. Any person, other than the Government, who has been provided access to such data must promptly notify the above named Contractor.

and; (ii) for civilian agency acquisitions, the NAVTEQ Data is licensed in accordance with the rights set forth at FAR 52.227-14(g)(1), RIGHTS IN DATA-GENERAL (Protection of limited rights data and computer software). In the event that the Contracting Officer requires the delivery of limited rights NAVTEQ Data that has been withheld or would otherwise be withholdable in accordance with FAR 52.227-14(g)(1), the NAVTEQ Data is licensed with "Limited Rights" as set forth in the following "Limited Rights Notice" at FAR 52.227-14(g)(2) (Alternate II), which shall be affixed to the NAVTEQ Data and the NAVTEQ Data shall be treated in accordance with such Notice (which shall be marked on any reproduction of these data, in whole or in part):

**LIMITED RIGHTS NOTICE (JUN 1987)**

These data are submitted with limited rights under Government Contract No. _____ (and subcontract _____, if appropriate). These data may be reproduced and used by the Government with the express limitation that they will not, without written permission of the Contractor, be used for purposes of manufacture nor disclosed outside the Government; except that the Government may disclose these data outside the Government for the following purposes, if any, provided that the Government makes such disclosure subject to prohibition against further use and disclosure: There are no additional purposes permitting disclosure of such Data.

The manufacturer/supplier of the Data is NAVTEQ Corporation, 222 Merchandise Mart Plaza, Suite 900, Chicago, Illinois 60654.

If the Contracting Officer refuses to use either of the licenses provided in (i) or (ii), herein, the Contracting Officer must notify NAVTEQ Corporation prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the NAVTEQ Data.

**There are two types of areas available for route guidance. In one type of area, primarily around metropolitan centers, detailed route guidance is available for the entire area. In the other type of area, all roads are displayed on the map but route guidance is limited. The navigation route might lack precision because the data (no right turns, one-way traffic, etc.) is not complete. It is still possible to reach the destination by following the arrow direction and distance as shown on the bottom left of the screen. The arrow points in the direction of the destination. The distance shown is as measured in a straight line from the current vehicle position to the destination area.**

In order to provide you with as accurate map information as possible, we are always gathering information such as on road repairs and carrying out on-site investigations. However, the names of roads, streets, facilities, and their locations are often changed. In some places, construction on roads may be in progress. For that reason, information on some areas in this system might be different from the actual location.



The map database is normally updated once a year. Contact your dealer for information about the availability and pricing of an update.

◀ **To confirm the database version and disc coverage area**

1. **Push the "MENU" button.**




2. **Touch the "Map DVD" switch.**



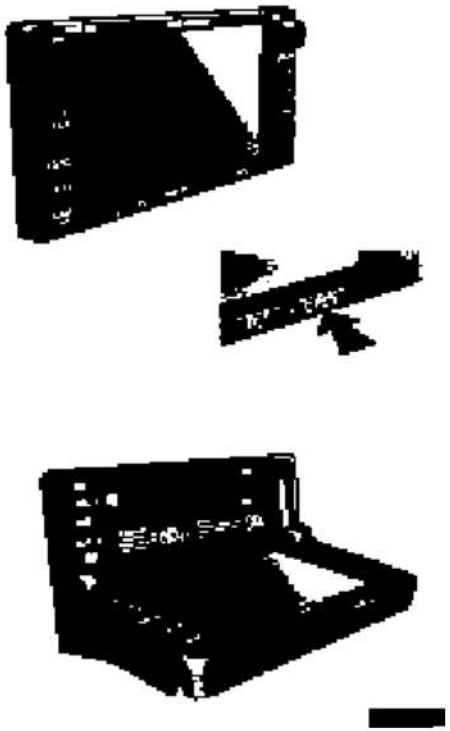

Make sure the version of the database on this screen. (The database version on the screen above may be different from the actual screen.)

To display the disc coverage area, touch the **"Covered Area"** switch. Confirm the covered area on the screen.

Contact your dealer to find out if there is a more recent update released.

**◀ To replace map disc**

**The slot for the map disc is behind the display.**



**To lower the display, push the "OPEN" button. After replacing map disc, push the button again to close the display.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **◀Do not place anything on the opened display, as such items may be thrown about in the compartment and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.**
- **◀To reduce the chance of injury in the case of an accident or sudden stopping while driving, keep the display closed.**
- **◀Take care not to jam your hand while the display is moving. Otherwise, you could be injured.**

***NOTICE***

*Do not obstruct the display while it is moving. It could damage your navigation system.*

***INFORMATION***

*Under extremely cold conditions, the display may react slowly or operation sound may become louder.*

# SECTION II

# DESTINATION INPUT AND ROUTE GUIDANCE

## Basic functions in frequent use

**Destination input** ..... 24
Selecting the search area ..... 24
Destination input by Home ..... 26
Destination input by Quick access ..... 26
Destination input by “Address” ..... 26
Destination input by “POI Name” ..... 30
Destination input by “POI Category” ..... 33
Destination input by “Emergency” ..... 36
Destination input by “Memory” ..... 37
Destination input by “Previous” ..... 38
Destination input by “Map” ..... 38
Destination input by “Intersection” ..... 39
Destination input by “Freeway Ent./Exit” ..... 40
Destination input by “Coordinates” ..... 41
Destination input by “Phone #” ..... 41
**Starting route guidance** ..... 42
Entering destination ..... 42
Route guidance screen ..... 44
Typical voice guidance prompts ..... 44
Setting and deleting destination ..... 46
Setting and deleting route ..... 48
Show POI icons ..... 53
Route overview ..... 55
Route preview ..... 56
Screen configuration ..... 57
Distance and time to destination ..... 61
Foot print map ..... 62

## Destination input —

**Push the "DEST" button and the "Destination" screen appears.**




You can use one of 13 different methods to enter your destination. (See pages 26 through 41.)

### *INFORMATION*

- *When inputting the destination, the response to the switch may be slow.*
- *The route for returning may not be the same as that for going.*
- *The route guidance to the destination may not be the shortest route nor a route without traffic congestion.*
- *Route guidance may not be available if there is no road data for the specified location.*
- *When setting the destination on a map with a scale larger than 0.5 mile (800 m), the map scale changes to 0.5 mile (800 m) automatically. Set the destination again.*
- *To select an "Address", "POI Name", "Freeway Ent./Exit", "Intersection" or "Phone #" in a different area, it is necessary to change the search area.*
- *If you enter a destination, the road nearest to the point you selected is set as the destination.*

### ⚠ CAUTION

**While you are driving, be sure to obey traffic regulations and keep the road conditions in mind. If a traffic sign on the road has been changed, the route guidance may provide wrong information.**

## — Selecting the search area

The "Destination" screen allows you to select the area to search for your destination.

**Touch the "Change" switch on the "Destination" screen to display a map of the United States and Canada divided into 11 areas. See page 12 for map database information and updates.**



**Touch one of the "US1" through "CAN" switches to select a search area. Touch the "OK" switch and the "Destination" screen returns.**

| U.S.A. | |
|---|---|
| Switch | States included in the search area |
| "US1" | Idaho<br>Oregon<br>Washington |
| "US2" | California<br>Nevada |
| "US3" | Arizona<br>Colorado<br>Montana<br>New Mexico<br>Utah<br>Wyoming |
| "US4" | Iowa<br>Kansas<br>Minnesota<br>Missouri<br>North Dakota<br>Nebraska<br>South Dakota |
| "US5" | Oklahoma<br>Texas |
| "US6" | Illinois<br>Indiana<br>Kentucky<br>Michigan<br>Ohio<br>Wisconsin |
| "US7" | Arkansas<br>Alabama<br>Louisiana<br>Mississippi<br>Tennessee |
| "US8" | Connecticut<br>Massachusetts<br>Maine<br>New Hampshire<br>New Jersey<br>New York<br>Rhode Island<br>Vermont |
| "US9" | Washington, D.C.<br>Delaware<br>Maryland<br>New Jersey<br>Pennsylvania<br>Virginia<br>West Virginia |
| "US10" | Florida<br>Georgia<br>North Carolina<br>South Carolina |

| Canada | |
|---|---|
| Switch | Provinces and regions included in the search area |
| "CAN" | All provinces and regions in Canada included in this switch. |

II

## — Destination input by Home




**Touch the home switch on the "Destination" screen.**

**The screen changes and displays the map location of your home and the route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)**

To use this function, it is necessary to set the "Attribute" for the memory point. (To register the "Home", see page 74.)

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| ***Guidance starts from your current position to your home if you touch the "Enter" switch even while driving.*** |

## — Destination input by Quick access




**Touch any of the quick access switches on the "Destination" screen.**

**The screen changes and displays the map location of the quick access point and the route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)**

To use this function, it is necessary to set the "Attribute" for each memory point. (To register the "Quick Access", see page 74.)

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| ***Guidance starts from your current position to the quick access point if you touch the "Enter" switch even while driving.*** |

## — Destination input by "Address"

**There are 2 ways to input a destination by address.**

**Touch the "Address" switch on the "Destination" screen.**



## (a) Inputting a house number and a street name



**Touch numerals directly on the screen to input a house number.**

After inputting a house number, touch the **"OK"** switch to display the screen for inputting a street name.

It is possible to input a street name first. Touch the **"Street"** switch to display the screen for inputting a street name.



**Input the street name.**



**When you find your desired street name, touch the corresponding switch.**

**The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)**

If the same address exists in more than one city, the current screen changes to the city list screen.

II



**Select or enter your desired city.**

**"Input Name":** To narrow down the listed items by inputting the city name.



If you input a street name first, the screen changes. You can then input the house number.



If the above screen appears, you can select an address range on the screen.

## (b) Selecting a city to search

**Touch the "City" switch.**



To search by city, the following three methods are possible.

1. Selecting from the last 5 cities
2. Selecting from the nearest 5 cities
3. Inputting the city name

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| ***To cancel the city setting, touch the "Any City" switch.*** |

### SELECTING FROM THE LAST 5 CITIES



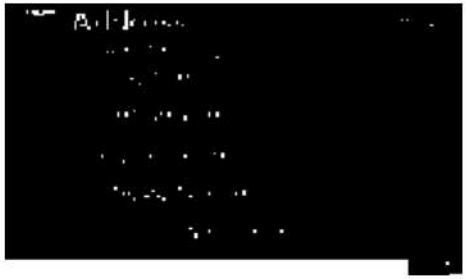
**Touch the switch of the desired city name.**

If you have not used the navigation yet, no cities will be displayed on the screen.

**The current screen changes to the screen for inputting a house number or a street name. (See page 27.)**

### SELECTING FROM THE NEAREST 5 CITIES

Touch the "Nearest 5 Cities" switch.



**Touch the switch of the desired city name from the displayed list.**

**The current screen changes to the screen for inputting a house number or a street name. (See page 27.)**

### INPUTTING THE CITY NAME

Touch the "Input City Name" switch.



**Input a city name.**

II



**Touch the switch of the desired city name from the displayed list.**

**"Map":** To display the selected destination and the route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)

**The current screen changes to the screen for inputting a house number or a street name. (See page 27.)**

## — Destination input by "POI Name"

**Touch the "POI Name" switch on the "Destination" screen.**



**Input the name of Point of Interest.**



**Touch the switch of the desired destination. The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)**

If you input the name of a specific Point of Interest and there are more than two sites with the same name, the list screen appears.



**Touch the switch of the desired destination.**

**"Dist. Sort":** In the order of distance from your current position. The distance from your current position up to the destination is displayed on the right of the name.

**"Name Sort":** In alphabetical order by name.

If the same name exists in more than one city, you can search for it more easily with the **"City"** and **"Category"** switches. (See "(a) Selecting a city to search" and "(b) Selecting from the categories".)

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| ***The desired Point of Interest can be displayed on the map screen. (For details, see page 53.)*** |

## (a) Selecting a city to search

**Touch the "City" switch.**



To search by city, the following three methods are possible.

1. Selecting from the last 5 cities
2. Selecting from the nearest 5 cities
3. Inputting the city name

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| ***To cancel the city setting, touch the "Any City" switch.*** |

### SELECTING FROM THE LAST 5 CITIES



**Touch the switch of the desired city name.**

If you have not used the navigation yet, no cities will be displayed on the screen.

II

### SELECTING FROM THE NEAREST 5 CITIES

Touch the "Nearest 5 Cities" switch.



Touch the switch of the desired city name.

### INPUTTING THE CITY NAME

Touch the "Input City Name" switch.



Input the city name.



Touch the switch of the desired city name from the displayed list.

### (b) Selecting from the categories

Touch the "Category" switch.



If the desired POI category is on the screen, touch the name to display a detailed list of the POI category.

If the desired POI category is not on the screen, touch the "List All Categories" switch to list all POI categories.



When you touch the desired category, the POI name list screen appears.

### — Destination input by "POI Category"

The destination can be set by selecting the POI category and the search point.

Touch the "POI Category" switch on the "Destination" screen.



## (a) Selecting the POI category

**If the desired POI category is on the screen, touch the name to display a detailed list of the POI category.**

**If the desired POI category is not on the screen, touch the "List All Categories" switch to list all POI categories.**



**Touch the desired POI category from the list.**

The selected category icon appears on the top left of the screen.

If you wish to delete the selected category, touch the **"Delete"** switch.

If you wish to select another category, touch the **"OK"** switch to return to the previous screen.

If you wish to select a destination from the category displayed by the icon, touch the **"List"** switch.

## (b) Setting a search point

It is possible to display the names of POIs located within approximately 20 miles (30 km) from the selected search point.

**Touch the "Search Point" switch.**

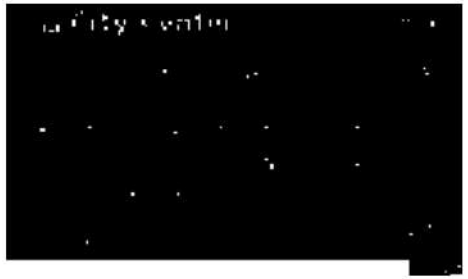


To set search points, the following four methods are possible.

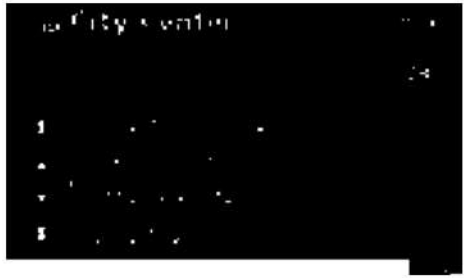
1. Inputting city center
2. Setting the current position as the search point
3. Setting the search point via the map screen
4. Setting the search point from the destinations

**INPUTTING CITY CENTER**

**Touch the "Input City Center" switch.**



**Input the city center name.**



**Touch the switch of the desired city center name.**



When you touch an arrow facing the desired point, the map scrolls in that direction. When you release your finger, scrolling stops.

To set the position of the cursor, touch the **"Enter"** switch.

### SETTING THE CURRENT POSITION AS THE SEARCH POINT

Touch the **"Current Position"** switch.



When you touch an arrow facing the desired point, the map scrolls in that direction. When you release your finger, scrolling stops.

To set the position of the cursor, touch the **"Enter"** switch.

### SETTING THE SEARCH POINT VIA THE MAP SCREEN

Touch the **"Map"** switch.



When you touch an arrow facing the desired point, the map scrolls in that direction. When you release your finger, scrolling stops.

To set the position of the cursor, touch the **"Enter"** switch.

### SETTING THE SEARCH POINT FROM THE DESTINATIONS

**Touch the destination switches at the bottom of the screen.**



When you touch an arrow facing the desired point, the map scrolls in that direction. When you release your finger, scrolling stops.

To set the position of the cursor, touch the **"Enter"** switch.

## (c) Selecting from a list

You can select the desired destination from the listed POI names.



**When you touch the switch of the desired item, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)**

**"Dist.":** To sort in the order of distance from your current location.

**"Icon":** To sort in the order of the POI icons.

**"Name":** To sort in alphabetical order by name.

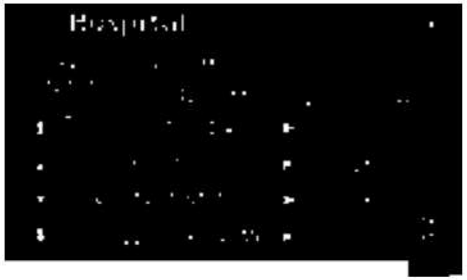
**"On Route":** When the indicator is illuminated by touching this switch, the list of the items searched along the route is displayed.

## — Destination input by "Emergency"

**By touching the "Emergency" switch on the "Destination" screen, the display changes to a screen to select dealers, hospitals or police stations. During driving, only nearby police stations, hospitals or dealers are shown. The current position is shown with an address, the latitude and the longitude at the top of the screen.**



When you touch the desired emergency category, the selected emergency category list is displayed.



**Touch the switch of the desired destination. The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)**

**"Dist. Sort":** To sort in the order of distance from your current position. The distance from your current position up to the destination is displayed on the right of the name.

**"Name Sort":** To sort in alphabetical order by name.

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| *The navigation system does not guide in areas where route guidance is unavailable. (See page 12.)* |

## — Destination input by "Memory"

**Touching the "Memory" switch on the "Destination" screen displays your list of registered memory points. See page 70 for registering and editing memory points.**




**When you touch the switch of your desired memory point, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)**

**There are 4 ways to list the memory point by touching switches on the bottom of the screen.**

**"Date":** To list the memory points in order of registered date.

**"Icon":** To list the memory points by the registered icon.

**"Name":** To list the memory points in alphabetical order.

**"Attribute":** To list the memory points by the registered attribute.

II

## — Destination input by "Previous"

**Touch the "Previous" switch on the "Destination" screen.**




The previous starting point and up to 99 previously set destinations are displayed on the screen.

**Touch the switch of the desired destination. The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)**

**"Date":** To list the previous destinations in order of registered date.

**"Name":** To list the previous destinations in alphabetical order.

### *INFORMATION*

*You can delete the list of previous destinations while your vehicle is stopped, if you no longer need them. (See page 95.)*

## — Destination input by "Map"

**Touch the "Map" switch on the "Destination" screen.**



**The screen changes and displays the map location that was previously displayed just before the destination input operation and the route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)**

### *INFORMATION*

*Guidance starts if you touch the "Enter" switch even while driving. However, the cursor cannot be moved.*

## — Destination input by "Intersection"

Touch the "Intersection" switch on the "Destination" screen.



Input the name of the two intersecting streets which are located near the destination to be set.



Touch the switch of the desired item. After inputting the two intersecting streets, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)



If the same two streets cross at more than one intersection, the screen changes and displays the menu to select the city name where the streets intersect. Select the city, and the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)

II

## — Destination input by "Freeway Ent./Exit"

**To input a freeway entrance or exit, touch the "Freeway Ent./Exit" switch on the "Destination" screen.**



Be sure to use the complete name of the freeway or highway, including the hyphen, when entering the destination. Freeways and interstates use an "I" (I-405). US highways use the state designation before the number (CA-1 18).



**Select the desired freeway by touching the switch.**



**You can then select either a freeway "Entrance" or "Exit".**



**Touch the switch of the desired entrance or exit name. The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)**

**"Dist. Sort":** In the order of distance from your current position. The distance from your current position up to the destination is displayed on the right of the name.

**"Name Sort":** In alphabetical order by name.

**"Input Name":** An applicable list is displayed by touching this switch and inputting name.

## — Destination input by "Coordinates"

Touch the "Coordinates" switch on the "Destination" screen.



Input the latitude and the longitude.

When the input is finished, touch the "OK" switch.

When you touch the switch of the desired point, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)

## — Destination input by "Phone #"

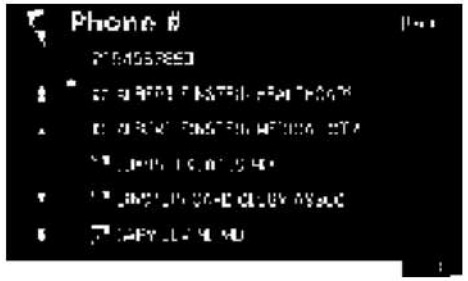
Touch the "Phone #" switch on the "Destination" screen.



Input a telephone number.

After inputting a telephone number, touch the "OK" switch, and the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the road preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)

If there is more than one site having the same number, the following screen appears.



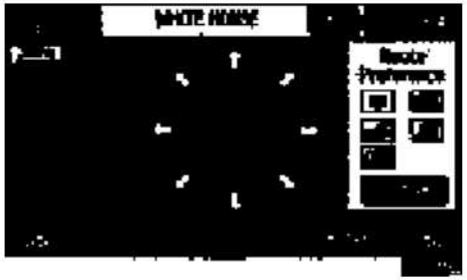

### *INFORMATION*

- *If there is no match for the telephone number inputted, a list of identical numbers but with different area codes will be displayed.*
- *To set a memory point as a destination using the phone number, the number must be registered previously. (See page 76.)*

II

## Starting route guidance — — Entering destination

**After you input the destination, the screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and the route preference.**



**SCREEN A**

**1. When you touch an arrow facing the desired point, the map scrolls in that direction. When you release your finger, scrolling stops.**

**2. To set the destination and display SCREEN B, touch the "Enter" switch.**

When the destination is already set, the **"Add to ⊙"** switch and the **"Replace ⊙"** switch are displayed.

**"Add to ⊙":** To add a destination.

**"Replace ⊙":** To delete the existing destinations and set a new one.

**"Change":** To change the route preference. (See page 43.)

**"Info.":** If this switch is displayed on the top of the screen, touch the switch to see name, address, and phone number, etc.



**SCREEN B**

**3. To start guidance, touch the "Guide" switch.**

**"3 Routes":** To select the desired route from three possible routes. (See page 43.)

**"Route":** To change the route. (See pages 46 and 48.)

### *INFORMATION*

- ***Guidance can be suspended or resumed. (See page 66.)***
- ***If you keep touching the "Guide" switch until a beep sounds, Demo mode will start.***

◦ **To change the route before starting guidance**

**ROUTE PREFERENCE**

You can change route preference by touching the **"Change"** switch on SCREEN A.



**You can turn the indicator on or off by touching the switch.**

When searching for a route, the system avoids routes where the indicator is dimmed as much as possible.

**After choosing conditions, touch the "OK" switch.**

***INFORMATION***

- ***Even if the "Allow Freeway" indicator is dimmed, the route cannot avoid including a freeway in some cases.***
- ***If the calculated route includes a trip by ferry, the route guidance shows a sea route. After you travel by ferry, the current vehicle position may be incorrect. Upon reception of GPS signals, it is automatically corrected.***

**3 ROUTES SELECTION**

To select the desired route from three routes, touch the **"3 Routes"** switch on SCREEN B.



**Touch the "Quick1", "Quick2" or "Short" switch to select the desired route.**

**"Quick1":** Recommended route.
This route is indicated by an orange line.

**"Quick2":** Other route.
This route is indicated by a purple line.

**"Short":** A route by which you can reach the destination in the shortest distance.
This route is indicated by a green line.

II

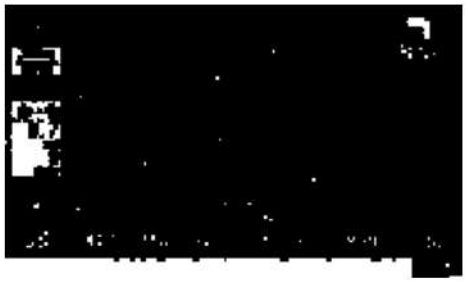
**"Info.":** To display the following information about each of the 3 routes.



1 **Time necessary for entire trip**
2 **Distance of entire trip**
3 **Toll road**
4 **Freeway**
5 **Ferry**

## — Route guidance screen

When starting route guidance, the following screen is displayed.



This screen displays the route that guides the driver to the destination.

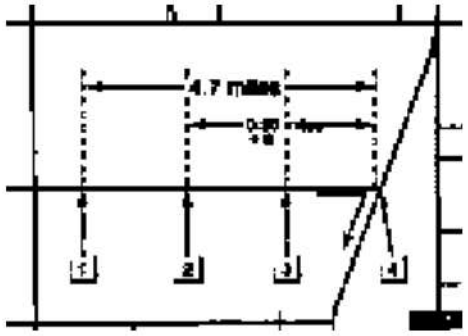
The route to the destination is indicated by a highlighted line. Drive along the guided route.

When the vehicle approaches a guidance point such as an intersection or a freeway, the screen automatically divides in two to display the guidance screen. (For details, see page 57.)

The current street name will be displayed at the bottom of the screen.

In some areas, the roads have not been completely digitized in our database yet. For this reason, the route guidance may guide the road that is not allowed to pass.

## — Typical voice guidance prompts

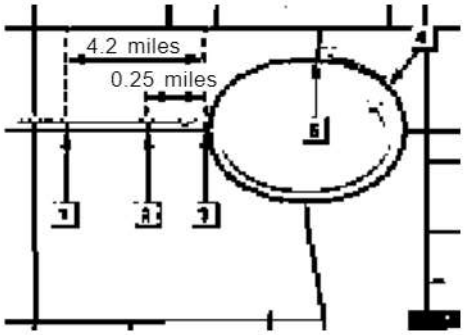



The voice guidance provides various messages as you approach an intersection, or other point where you need to maneuver the vehicle.

1 ♪ "Proceed about 5 miles."
2 ♪ "In a quarter of a mile, right turn."
3 ♪ "Right turn."
4 ♪♪ (Beep sound only)

## INFORMATION

***On freeways, interstates or other highways with higher speed limits, the voice guidance will be made at earlier points than on city streets in order to allow time to maneuver.***



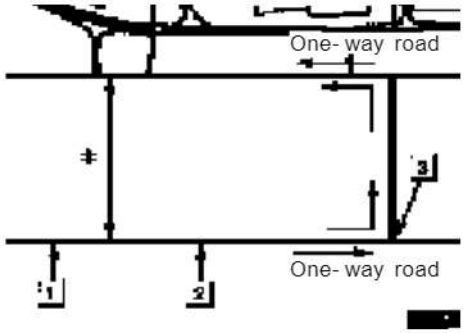

1 ♪ "Proceed about 4 miles to the traffic circle."

2 ♪ "In a quarter of a mile, traffic circle ahead, and then 3rd exit ahead."

3 ♪ "The 3rd exit ahead."

4 ♪ "The exit ahead."

5 ♪♪ (Beep sound only)

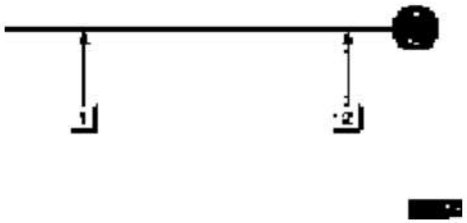



*: The system indicates a U-turn if the distance between two one-way roads (of opposite directions) is less than 50 feet (15 m) in residential areas or 164 feet (50 m) in non-residential areas.

1 ♪ "In half of a mile, make a legal U-turn."

2 ♪ "Make a legal U-turn ahead."

3 ♪♪ (Beep sound only)




The system announces your approach to the final destination.

1 ♪ "Your destination is ahead."

2 ♪ "You have arrived at your destination. The route guidance is now finished."

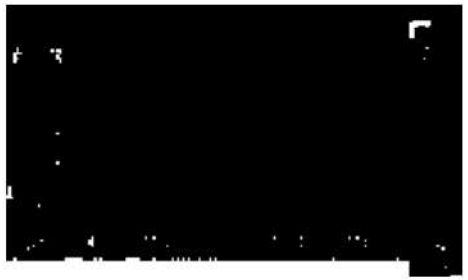
***INFORMATION***

- *If the system cannot determine the current vehicle position correctly (in cases of poor GPS signal reception), the voice guidance may be made early or delayed.*
- *If you did not hear the voice guidance command, touch the "MAP/VOICE" button to hear it again.*
- *To adjust the voice guidance volume, see page 67.*

## Setting and deleting destination

### (a) Adding destinations

**You can add destinations and search again for the routes.**



**1. Touch the "Route" switch.**



**2. Touch the "Add" switch of "Destination".**

3. Input an additional destination in the same way as the destination input. (See page 24.)



4. Touch the desired "Add" switch to determine the arrival order of the additional destination.

## (b) Reordering destinations

When more than one destination is set, you can change the arrival order of the destinations.

1. Touch the "Route" switch.



2. Touch the "Reorder" switch of "Destination".



3. Select the destination in the order of arrival by touching the switch of destinations.

Reordered number of arrival is displayed on the right side of the screen.

When you finish selecting the destinations, touch the "OK" switch. The system searches for the guidance route again, and displays the entire route. Even if you do not touch the "OK" switch, the entire route is displayed automatically within a few seconds when order is fixed.

II

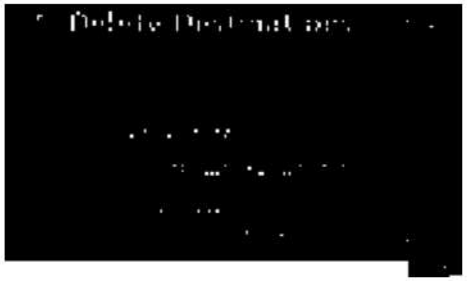
## (c) Deleting destination

You can delete a set destination.

1. Touch the "Route" switch.



2. Touch the "Delete" switch of "Destination".



3. When more than one destination is set, a list will appear on the screen. Touch the destination on the screen you wish to delete.

"Delete All": To delete all destinations on the list.

4. A message appears to confirm your request to delete. To delete the destination(s), touch the "Yes" switch.

If you touch the "Yes" switch, the data cannot be recovered.

If you touch the "No" switch, the previous screen will return.

5. If more than one destination is set, touch the "OK" switch after deleting the destinations. The system searches for the guidance route again, and displays the entire route.

## Setting and deleting route
## (a) Adding preferred road

You can add points you wish to pass through.



1. Touch the "Route" switch.



2. Touch the "Add" switch of "Preferred road".



3. Select the preferred road which you wish to modify and touch the "Enter ◆" switch.

4. A message appears to confirm your request. To add the preferred road, touch the "OK" switch.

Touch the "Next" switch to use another road.



5. If more than one destination is set, the "Add Preferred Road" screen appears. Touch the "Add" switch where you wish to add a preferred road.

## (b) Deleting preferred road

You can delete a set preferred road.

1. Touch the "Route" switch.



2. Touch the "Delete" switch of "Preferred road".



3. When more than one preferred road is set, a list will appear on the screen. Touch the switch of the preferred road to be deleted.

II

**"Delete All":** To delete all the listed preferred road.

**4. A message appears to confirm your request to delete. To delete the preferred road, touch the "Yes" switch.**

If you touch the **"Yes"** switch, the data cannot be recovered.

If you want to try again or cancel deletion, touch the **"No"** switch. The previous screen will return.

**5. If more than one preferred road is set, touch the "OK" switch after deleting the preferred road. The system searches for the guidance route again, and displays entire route.**

## (c) Search condition

**You can designate the route conditions of the route to the destination.**

**1. Touch the "Route" switch.**



**2. Touch the "Search Condition" switch. The "Search Condition" screen appears.**



**3. Touch the "Quick", "Quick1", "Quick2" or "Short" switch and touch the "OK" switch.**



The entire route from the starting point to the destination is displayed.

**"Guide":** To start guidance.

**"Route":** To add or change a route. (For details, see pages 46 and 48.)

## (d) Detour setting

**While the route guidance is operating, you can change the route to detour around a section of the route where a delay is caused by road repairs, an accident, etc.**

1. **Touch the "Route" switch.**



2. **Touch the "Detour" switch.**



3. **Select the switch below to select the desired detour distance.**

**"1 mile (km)", "3 miles (km)" or "5 miles (km)":** Touch one of these switches to start the detour process. After detouring, the system returns to the original guidance route.

**"Whole Route":** If you touch this switch, the system will calculate an entire new route to the destination.




This picture shows an example of how the system would guide you around a delay caused by a traffic jam.

1 This position indicates the location of a traffic jam caused by road repairs or an accident.

2 This route indicates the detour suggested by the system.

### *INFORMATION*

- ***When your vehicle is on a freeway, the detour distance selections are 5, 15, and 25 miles (km).***
- ***The system may not be able to calculate a detour route depending on the selected distance and surrounding road conditions.***

II

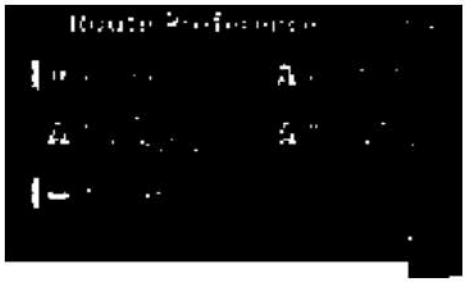
## (e) Route preference

**You are given a number of choices on the conditions which the system uses to determine the route to your destination.**

**1. Touch the "Route" switch.**



**2. Touch the "Route Preference" switch to change the conditions which are to determine the route to your destination.**



**3. You can turn the indicator on or off by touching the switch.**

When searching for a route, the system avoids routes where the indicator is dimmed as much as possible.

**After choosing the conditions, touch the "OK" switch.**

## (f) Starting route from adjacent road

**You can start the route guidance from the adjacent road.**

(ex. When the route guidance guides the route on the freeway, but you drive on the parallel way along a freeway.)

**1. Touch the "Route" switch.**



**2. Touch the "Start from Adjacent Road" switch.**

When there is no adjacent road, this switch will not appear.

## Show POI icons

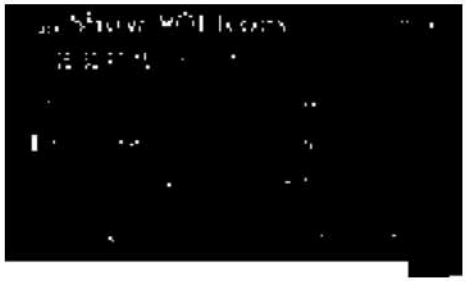
**Points of Interest such as gas stations and restaurants can be displayed on the map screen. You can also set their location as a destination and use them for route guidance.**



1. Touch the **"Map View"** switch.



2. Touch the **"Show POI Icon"** switch to display a particular type of Point of Interest on the screen.



A screen with a limited choice of Points of Interest will be displayed. (To change the displayed POI, see page 94.) When you touch the desired Point of Interest category, symbols will appear on the map screen indicating where the POI addresses are located.

**To turn off the symbols of the Points of Interest on the map screen, touch the "POI Off" switch.**

**"More":** If you cannot find your desired Point of Interest on the limited choice screen, touch this switch. The screen then displays the complete POI listing screen.

You can display up to 5 categories of icons on the screen.

II




When you select a Point of Interest type from either the limited list or the complete list, the screen will display symbols at those locations on the map screen.

Touching the **"Delete"** switch will delete the last selected icon.

**"Local POI List":** If you want to search for the nearest Point of Interest, touch this switch. Then choose one of the categories. The system will list the points within 20 miles (30 km).



Touch the switch of your desired Point of Interest. Selected Points of Interest are displayed on the map screen.

**"Dist.":** To sort in the order of distance from your current location.

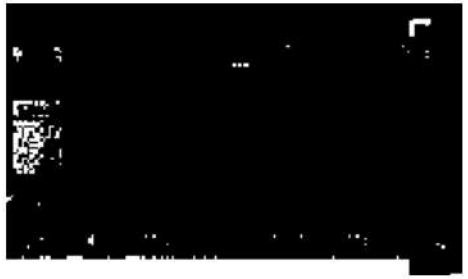
**"Icon":** To sort in the order of the POI icons.

**"Name":** To sort in alphabetical order by name.

**"On Route":** When the indicator is illuminated by touching this switch, the list of the items searched along the route is displayed.

° **To set a POI as a destination**

You can select one of the Points of Interest icons on the map screen as a destination and use it as route guidance.



**Directly touch the Point of Interest icon that you wish to set as a destination.**

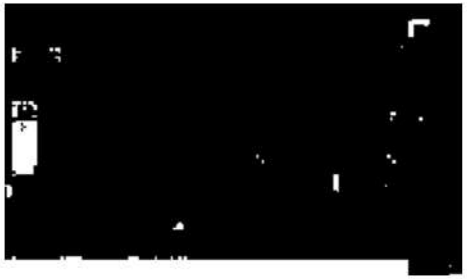
The map will shift so that the icon is centered on the screen and overlaps with the cursor ⌖. At this time, the distance from your current position can be displayed on the screen. The distance shown is measured as a straight line from the current vehicle position to the POI.

**When your desired Point of Interest overlaps with the cursor, touch the "Enter ⊙" switch. The screen changes and displays the map location of the selected destination and route preference. (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)**

## Route overview



1. Touch the "Map View" switch.



2. Touch the "Route Overview" switch.

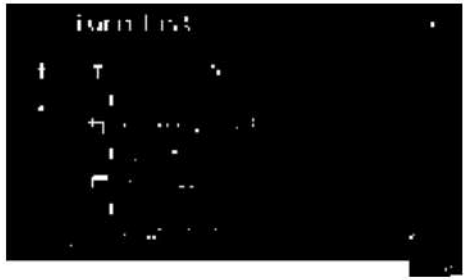


The entire route from the current position to the destination is displayed.

**"Guide":** To start guidance.

**"Route":** To change the route. (For details, see pages 46 and 48.)

**"Turn List":** The following screen displays the list of the roads up to your destination.



You can scroll through the list of roads by touching ▲ or ▼. However, not all road names in the route may appear on the list. If a road changes its name without requiring a turn (such as on a street that runs through two or more cities), the name change will not appear on the list. The street name closest to the starting point will be displayed with a mileage to the next turn.

These marks indicate the direction in which you should turn at an intersection.

II

Touch the "Map" switch of your desired point. The point which you choose is displayed on the map screen.



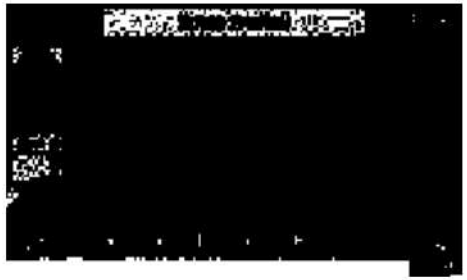
## Route preview



1. Touch the "Map View" switch.



2. Touch the "Route Preview" switch.



: To indicate the next destination.

: To preview the route to the next destination.

: To preview the route to the next destination in fast-forward mode.

: To stop the preview.

: To review the route to the previous destination or starting point.

: To review the route to the previous destination or starting point in fast-forward mode.

: To indicate the previous destination or starting point.

## Screen configuration

**You can choose any one of the screen configurations.**



**1. Touch this switch to display the following screen.**



**2. To select the desired screen configuration, touch one of the following switches.**

Depending on the conditions, it may not be possible to select certain screen configuration switches.

: To display single map screen. (See page 57.)

: To display dual map screen. (See page 58.)

: To display compass mode screen. (See page 58.)

: To display turn list screen. (See page 59.)

: To display arrow screen. (See page 59.)

: To display freeway information screen. (See page 59.)

: To display intersection guidance screen or guidance screen on freeway. (See page 60.)

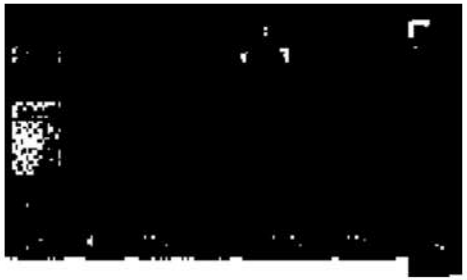
### (a) Single map



The screen shows the single map.

II

## (b) Dual map



The screen shows the dual map. The map on the left is the main map.

You can edit the right side map by touching any specific point on the right side map.



**This screen can perform the following procedures.**

- Changing the map scale
- Displaying the POI icon
- Changing the orientation of the map

Touch the **"OK"** switch when you complete editing. The screen returns to the dual map screen.

## (c) Compass mode



Information about the destination and current position, as well as a compass, is displayed on the screen.

The destination mark is displayed in the direction of the destination. When driving, refer to the longitude and latitude coordinates and the compass, to make sure that your vehicle is headed in the direction of the destination.

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| ***When the vehicle goes out of the disc area, the guidance screen changes into compass mode.*** |

### (d) Turn list screen



The screen shows the turn list. You cannot scroll through the list of roads.

### (e) Arrow screen



The screen shows the current road name and the distance to the next corner.

### (f) Freeway information screen



This screen displays the distance to the next junction and exit, or POIs in the vicinity of the freeway exit.

**"Map":** To display the selected map of the exit vicinity.

On the left side of the **"Map"** switch, up to five POIs around the selected exit are displayed.

▲: To scroll for farther junctions or exits.

▼: To scroll for closer junctions or exits.

▼: To scroll for the closest three junctions or exits.

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| ***When you drive on a freeway, the screen is automatically divided into two parts, with freeway information screen on the right side.*** |

## (g) Intersection guidance screen/guidance screen on freeway

° **Intersection guidance screen**

This screen automatically appears when the vehicle approaches an intersection on the road.



The distance to the intersection is shown at the bottom of the screen.

**"◀OFF":** The intersection guidance screen disappears and the map screen appears.

When touching the  switch or pushing the **"MAP/VOICE"** button, the intersection guidance screen reappears.

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| ***Intersection guidance can be turned on or off. (See page 89.)*** |

° **Guidance screen on freeway**

This screen automatically appears when the vehicle approaches a junction or exit on a freeway.



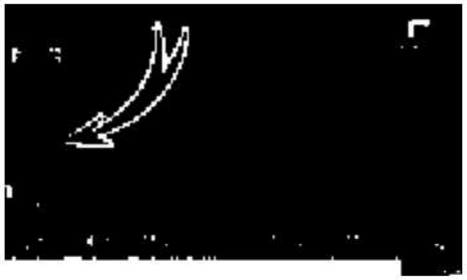
The distance to the junction or exit is shown at the bottom of the screen.

**"◀OFF":** The guidance screen on freeway disappears and the map screen appears.

When touching the  switch or pushing the **"MAP/VOICE"** button, the guidance screen on freeway reappears.

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| ***Guidance screen on freeway can be turned on or off. (See page 90.)*** |

## Distance and time to destination



**When the vehicle is on the guidance route, the distance and the estimated travel time to the destination are displayed. When the vehicle is not on the guidance route, the distance to and the direction of the destination are displayed.**

When driving on the guidance route and more than one destination is set, the distance and the estimated travel time from current position to each destination are displayed.

**1. Touch this switch to display the following screen.**



**2. Touch the number switch of the destination you wish to display.**

The distance and the estimated travel time from the current position to the selected destination are displayed.



Displayed while driving along the guidance route.



Displayed while driving off the guidance route. The destination direction is indicated by an arrow.

### *INFORMATION*

***When the vehicle is on the guidance route, the distance measured along the route is displayed. Travel time is calculated based on the set vehicle speed information. (For details, see page 83.) However, when the vehicle is not on the guidance route, the distance is the linear distance between the current position and the destination.***

II

## Foot print map

For the area which is covered by the foot print map (Some areas in the following cities; Detroit, Chicago, N.Y., L.A), you can switch to the foot print map on a scale of 75 feet (25 m).

° **To switch to the foot print map**

The switch changes into the switch when the map is scaled down to 150 feet (50 m).



**To display the foot print map, touch the switch.**

° **To delete the foot print map display**

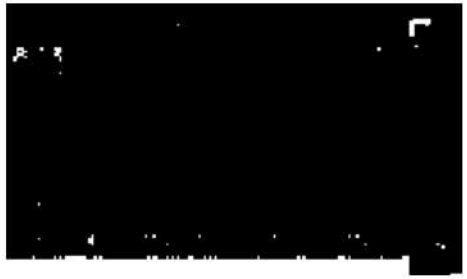
**Touch the switch.**

### *INFORMATION*

- ***If the map or the current position is moved to the area which is not covered by the foot print map, the screen scale automatically changes to 150 feet (50 m).***
- ***On the foot print map, a one way street is displayed by .***
- ***It is not possible to perform scrolling on the foot print map (one-touch scroll) while driving.***

° **To display building information**

Information is available only for buildings for which information is recorded on the map disc.



**1. Touch the "Info." switch while the foot print map is displayed.**

If the map is displayed in split screen, it turned into a single map display.



2. Using an eight-direction arrow, move the cursor to the position of the building you wish to display information.
3. Touch the "Building Info." switch.



4. Details of POIs in some buildings may be displayed. If you wish to see detailed POI information, touch the building name. You can see the detail of the selected POIs.

SECTION III

# ADVANCED FUNCTIONS

## Descriptions of functions for more effective use


Suspending and resuming guidance ..... 66
Volume ..... 67
User selection ..... 67
My places ..... 70
Area to avoid ..... 77
Setup ..... 80
Current position calibration ..... 81
Distance unit ..... 83
Estimated travel time ..... 83
Auto reroute ..... 85
Adjusting time zone ..... 85
Auto voice guidance ..... 86
Voice guidance in all modes ..... 87
Notifying traffic restriction ..... 88
Intersection guidance ..... 89
Guidance screen on freeway ..... 90
Street name on scroll map ..... 91
Display of building shape ..... 92
Screen layout function ( Function) ..... 93
POI category change (Show POI Icons) ..... 94
Delete previous point ..... 95
Map color ..... 96
Screen animation ..... 97

## Suspending and resuming guidance

◀ To suspend guidance

You can suspend route guidance.



Push the "MENU" button to display the "Menu" screen and touch the "Suspend Guidance" switch.

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| *When you do not have route guidance, the "Suspend Guidance" switch cannot be used.* |



The screen will return to the current position map without route guidance.

◀ To resume guidance

You can resume the suspended route guidance.




Push the "MENU" button to display the "Menu" screen and touch the "Resume Guidance" switch.



The screen will change to the current position map with route guidance.

## Volume

**You can use voice guidance when approaching a destination.**

You can adjust the volume of the voice or turn off voice guidance.



**Push the "MENU" button to display the "Menu" screen, and touch the "Volume" switch.**




To adjust the volume, select the desired level by touching the appropriate number.

If you do not need voice guidance, touch the **"Off"** switch.

The selected item is highlighted in green.

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| ***During route guidance, the voice guidance continues even if the navigation screen is changed to other screens.*** |

**"Adaptive Volume Control":** If you turn the "Adaptive Volume Control" on, the volume is turned up automatically when the vehicle speed exceeds 50 mph (80 km/h).

To turn the "Adaptive Volume Control" system on, touch the switch. The indicator will be highlighted.

## User selection

**The system can memorize the following settings for up to three users.**

- **Map direction**
- **Map scale**
- **Guidance mode**
- **Setup**
- **Volume**
- **Language**



**Push the "MENU" button to display the "Menu" screen. Then touch the "Select User" switch.**

III

◀ To register




Touch the "**Memorize**" switch of your desired "User number".




The confirmation screen will appear. To register, touch the "**Yes**" switch. To return to the previous screen, touch the "**No**" or "**Back**" switch.




When you touch the switch already registered, this screen appears. To replace, touch the "**Yes**" switch. To cancel the replacement, touch the "**No**" or "**Back**" switch.

◀ To change user



Push the "MENU" button to display the "Menu" screen. Then touch the "Select User" switch.




Touch the "User number" switch you wish to change.




The above message appears, then the map screen will be displayed.

◀ To delete user




Touch the "Delete" switch of "User number" you wish to delete.

III




The confirmation screen appears. To delete, touch the "Yes" switch. To return to the previous screen, touch the "No" or "Back" switch.

## My places

You can register and keep your own memory points (like restaurants, sports facilities, etc.) and use the memory points to input a destination.

### (a) Registering memory points



1. Push the "MENU" button to display the "Menu" screen and touch the "My Places" switch.




**2. Touch the "Register" switch of the "Memory Points".**




A screen similar to the destination input screen appears. Input the desired point in the same way as inputting a destination. (See page 24.)

When you finish memory point registration, the memory point data screen will appear.



You can set the icon, attribute, name, location and phone number.

Touch the desired switch you want to set. (For details, see "(b) Editing memory points".)

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| ***Up to 106 memory points can be registered.*** |

III

## (b) Editing memory points

**The icon, attribute, name, location and/or telephone number of a registered memory point can be edited.**

**1. Push the "MENU" button to display the "Menu" screen and touch the "My Places" switch.**



**2. Touch the "Edit" switch of the "Memory Points".**



**The screen lists the memory points.**

**"Date":** Touch this switch to list the memory points in order of the registered date.

**"Icon":** Touch this switch to list the memory points in order of the icon type.

**"Name":** Touch this switch to list the memory points in alphabetical order.

**"Attribute":** Touch this switch to list the memory points in order of the home and quick access number.

Touch the desired memory point switch to display the memory point data screen.



**3. Touch the switch which you wish to edit.**

◀ **To change "Icon"**




**Touch the desired icon.**

You can turn the page by touching **"Page 1"**, **"Page 2"** or **"With Sound"** switch.

**"With Sound":** To display sound icons. When your vehicle approaches the memory point, the sound which you chose will sound.




**Touch the desired sound icon.**

The next screen appears when you touch the **"Bell (with direction)"** switch.

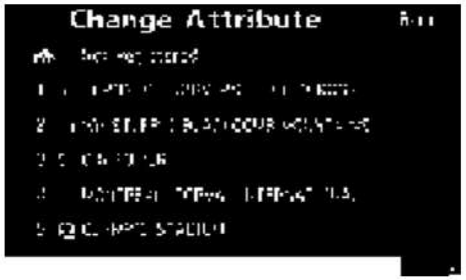


Touch the direction switches and adjust the direction. Touch the **"Enter"** switch. The bell sounds only when your vehicle approaches this point in the direction that you set.

III

◀ To change “Attribute”

For easy destination input, set the attribute of the memory points as Home or Quick access 1 to 5.




Touch the desired attribute. It is possible to replace a registered attribute.




To replace the attribute, touch the “Yes” switch. To return to the previous screen, touch the “No” or “Back” switch.



To delete the attribute, touch the “Del.” switch.



**To delete an attribute, touch the "Yes" switch. To return to the previous screen, touch the "No" or "Back" switch.**

◀ **To change "Name"**




**Touch the alphabet and/or numeral keys.**

When the entry has been completed, touch the **"OK"** switch on the screen.

The previous screen will be displayed.

◀ **"Show Name"**

**You can set the name of a memory point to be displayed or not on the map.**

**To show the name, touch the "On" switch. Not to show it, touch the "Off" switch.**

◀ **To change "Location"**



**Touch the eight direction switch to move the cursor ⌖ to the desired point on the map.**

Touch the **"Enter"** switch and the previous screen will be displayed.

III

◀ **To change "Phone #" (telephone number)**



**Touch numeral keys.**

When the entry has been completed, touch the **"OK"** switch on the screen.

The previous screen will be displayed.

## (c) Deleting memory points

**1. Push the "MENU" button to display the "Menu" screen and touch the "My Places" switch.**




**2. Touch the "Delete" switch of the "Memory Points".**



**3. Touch the corresponding switch. To delete all memory points, touch the "Delete All" switch.**

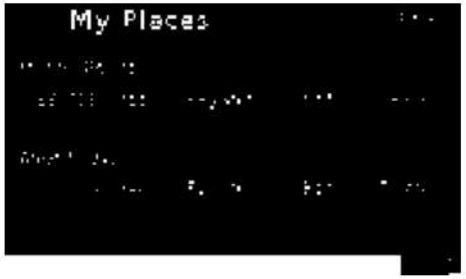
For efficient memory point search, memory points can be sorted by the **"Date"**, **"Icon"**, **"Name"** or **"Attribute"** switch.

To delete, touch the **"Yes"** switch. To cancel the deletion, touch the **"No"** switch.

## Area to avoid

Areas you wish to avoid because of traffic jams, construction work or other reasons can be registered as areas to avoid.

Push the "MENU" button to display the "Menu" screen and then touch the "My Places" switch to display the following screen.




| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| *If a destination is inputted in the area to avoid or the route calculation cannot be made without running through the area to avoid, a route passing through the area to avoid may be shown.* |

## (a) Registering area to avoid

1. Touch the "Register" switch of the "Areas to avoid".




2. Enter the location in the same way as inputting a destination, or display the map of the area you wish to avoid. (See page 24.)

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| *Up to 10 locations can be registered as point/area to avoid. If there are 10 locations already registered, the message "Unable to register additional points. Perform operation again after deleting unnecessary points." appears on the screen.* |



3. Set the cursor in the center of the area to avoid, and touch the "Enter" switch.

III



4. Touch either ▲ or ▼ switch to change the size of the area to avoid.

## (b) Editing area to avoid

1. Touch the "Edit" switch of the "Areas to Avoid" to display the "Edit Area to Avoid" screen.




2. To edit an area to avoid, touch the corresponding switch.




3. Touch the "Name", "Location" or "Area Size" switch on this screen.

◀ To change "Name"



**Touch alphabet or numeral keys.**

When the entry has been completed, touch the **"OK"** switch on the screen.

The previous screen will be displayed.

◀ **"Show Name"**

**The avoid area name can be set to be displayed or not on the map. To show the name, touch the "On" switch. Not to show it, touch the "Off" switch.**

◀ To change "Location"



Set the cursor ⌖ to the desired location, then touch the **"Enter"** switch. The previous screen will be displayed.

◀ To change "Area size"

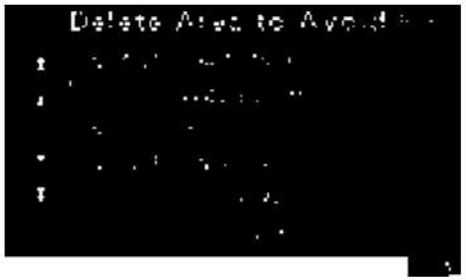


Touch either ▲ or ▼ switch to change the size of area you want to avoid, and touch the **"OK"** switch. The previous screen will be displayed.

III

## (c) Deleting area to avoid

**1. Touch the "Delete" switch of the "Areas to Avoid" to display the "Delete Area to Avoid" screen.**



**2. Touch the area you wish to delete from the list.**

**"Delete all":** To delete all registered areas to avoid in the system.

**3. To delete, touch the "Yes" switch. To cancel the deletion, touch the "No" switch.**

## Setup

**You can set the items shown on the "Set-up" screen.**

**1. Push the "MENU" button.**



**2. To display the "Setup" menu screen, touch the "Setup" switch. Touch the items you wish to set.**




**3. Touch the "OK" switch on the screen and then the previous screen will be displayed.**

**"Default":** This switch initializes all of the settings.

**"Calibration":** You can adjust the current vehicle position mark manually.

**"Distance":** You can select "km" or "miles" as the distance unit.

**"Estimated Travel Time":** You can set the system to display the travel time to the destination on the route guidance screen.

**"Auto Reroute":** You can set the system to automatically search for a new route to the destination.

**"Adjust Time Zone":** You can select your desired time zone.

**"Auto Voice Guidance":** You can set the automatic voice guidance.

**"Voice Guidance in All Modes":** You can set the voice guidance in all modes.

**"Notify Traffic Restriction":** You can select notification of seasonal restrictions.

**"Intersection Guidance":** You can select ON or OFF to display intersection guidance.

**"Guidance Screen on Freeway":** You can select ON or OFF to display the guidance screen on the freeway.

**"Street Name on Scroll Map":** You can select ON or OFF to display the street name on the scroll map.

**"Display Building Shape":** You can select ON or OFF to display the building shape on the map screen.

**" Function":** You can set to display or not to display each switch and current street name on the map screen.

**"Show POI Icons":** You can choose 6 icons displayed on "Show POI Icons" top screen.

**"Previous Point":** You can delete the previous destination.

**"Map Color (Day)":** You can select the desired map color.

**"Map Color (Night)":** You can select the desired map color.

**"Screen Animation":** You can set some screen displays to be animated.

## Current position calibration

**When driving, the current vehicle position mark will be automatically corrected by GPS signals. If GPS reception is poor due to location, you can manually adjust the current vehicle position mark.**



**1. Push the "MENU" button to display the "Menu" screen, and then touch the "Setup" switch.**




**2. Touch the "Adjust" switch of "Calibration".**



**3. Touch the "Position/Direction" switch.**

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| *For additional information on the accuracy of a current vehicle position, see "Limitations of the navigation system" on page 10.* |

III

### ◀ Position/direction calibration



**1. Touch the scroll arrows to move the cursor ⌖ to your desired location.**

Touch the **"Enter"** switch.



**2. Touch either the ↰ or ↱ switch to adjust the direction of the current vehicle position mark.**

Touch the **"Enter"** switch and the map screen will be displayed.

### ◀ Tire change calibration

**The tire change calibration function will be used when replacing the tires. This function will adjust the mis-calculation caused by the circumference difference between the old tires and new ones. If this procedure is not performed when tires are replaced, the current vehicle position mark may be incorrectly displayed.**

To perform a distance calibration procedure, touch the **"Tire Change"** switch on the "Calibration" screen.

The message appears and the quick distance calibration is automatically started. A few seconds later, a map screen will be displayed.

## Distance unit

1. Push the "MENU" button.



2. Touch the "Setup" switch.




3. Touch the "km" or "miles" switch of "Distance" to choose the distance unit.

The selected switch is highlighted in green.

4. Touch the "OK" switch.

## Estimated travel time

You can set the speed that is used for the calculation of the estimated travel time.



1. Push the "MENU" button.

III



2. Touch the "Setup" switch.




3. Touch the "Set Speed" switch of the "Estimated Travel Time".




4. Touch ◀ or ▶ to set the average vehicle speeds for driving on a Freeway, Main street, and Residential.

To set the default speeds, touch the "Default" switch.

5. When you finish setting the desired speeds, touch the "OK" switch.

### *INFORMATION*

- ◀ *The displayed time to the destination is the approximate driving time that is calculated based on the speeds you selected and your actual position along the guidance route.*
- ◀ *The time shown on the screen may vary greatly depending on your progress along the route, which may be affected by road conditions such as traffic jams, construction work.*
- ◀ *It is possible to display up to 99 hours 59 minutes.*

## Auto reroute

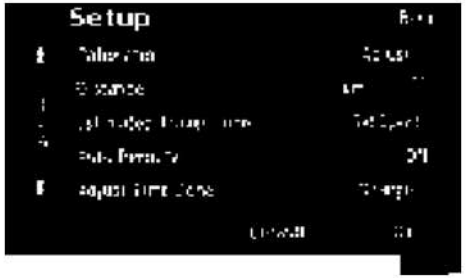
When the "Auto Reroute" feature is turned on, the system will automatically search for a new route to the destination if you stray from the guidance route. This feature does not operate while you are driving on roads where guidance is not available.

To turn the "Auto Reroute" mode on:

1. Push the "MENU" button.



2. Touch the "Setup" switch.




3. Touch the "On" switch of "Auto Reroute".

The selected switch is highlighted in green.

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| *If your vehicle strays from the guidance route, the system searches for a new route to the destination. The new route may or may not take you back to the previous route depending on how far you are off the original guidance route.* |

## Adjusting time zone

1. Push the "MENU" button.



2. Touch the "Setup" switch.

III




3. Touch the "Change" switch. The "Adjust Time Zone" screen appears on the display.




4. Touch the desired time zone.

The selected switch is highlighted in green.

5. Touch the "OK" switch on the screen and the "Setup" screen will be displayed.

## Auto voice guidance

When the "Auto Voice Guidance" feature is turned on, the voice guidance can be heard automatically.

When the "Auto Voice Guidance" feature is turned off, the voice guidance can be heard only if you push the "MAP/VOICE" button.

To turn the "Auto Voice Guidance" mode on:

1. Push the "MENU" button.



2. Touch the "Setup" switch. Then touch ▮ switch to display page 2 of the "Setup" screen.



3. Touch the "On" switch of "Auto Voice Guidance".

The selected switch is highlighted in green.

## Voice guidance in all modes

When the "Voice Guidance in All Modes" feature is turned on, you can hear the voice guidance in all modes.

When the "Voice Guidance in All Modes" feature is turned off, voice guidance cannot be heard when using the audio system.

To turn the "Voice Guidance in All Modes" on:

1. Push the "MENU" button.



2. Touch the "Setup" switch. Then touch switch to display page 2 of the "Setup" screen.

III



3. Touch the "On" switch of "Voice Guidance in All Modes" and touch the "OK" switch.

## Notifying traffic restriction

When the "Notify Traffic Restriction" feature is turned on, the system notifies you of traffic or seasonal restrictions.



To turn the "Notify Traffic Restriction" mode on:

1. Push the "MENU" button.



2. Touch the "Setup" switch. Then touch switch to display page 2 of the "Setup" screen.



3. Touch the "On" switch of "Notify Traffic Restriction" and touch the "OK" switch.

## Intersection guidance

When the "Intersection Guidance" feature is turned on, the system will display the intersection guidance screen if you drive with route guidance.



To turn the "Intersection Guidance" mode on:

1. Push the "MENU" button.



2. Touch the "Setup" switch. Then touch switch to display page 2 of the "Setup" screen.

III



3. Touch the "On" switch of "Intersection Guidance" and touch the "OK" switch.

## Guidance screen on freeway

When the "Guidance Screen on Freeway" feature is turned on, the system will display the lane guidance screen if you drive on a freeway with route guidance.



To turn the "Guidance Screen on Freeway" mode on:

1. Push the "MENU" button.



2. Touch the "Setup" switch. Then touch switch to display page 2 of the "Setup" screen.



3. Touch the "On" switch of "Guidance Screen on Freeway" and touch the "OK" switch.

## Street name on scroll map

When the "Street Name on Scroll Map" feature is turned on, the system will display the name of a street where the cursor ⌖ is positioned on the scroll map.



To turn the "Street Name on Scroll Map" mode on:

1. Push the "MENU" button.



2. Touch the "Setup" switch. Then touch ▼ switch twice to display page 3 of the "Setup" screen.

III




3. Touch the "On" switch of "Street Name on Scroll Map" and touch the "OK" switch.

## Display of building shape

When the "Display Building Shape" feature is turned on, the system will display the building shape on the map screen using a scale of 150 feet (50 m) to 300 feet (100 m).



To turn the "Display Building Shape" mode on:

1. Push the "MENU" button.



2. Touch the "Setup" switch. Then touch ▼ switch twice to display page 3 of the "Setup" screen.




3. Touch the "On" switch of "Display Building Shape" and touch the "OK" switch.

## Screen layout function ( OFF Function)

You can set display or hide each switch and current street name on the map screen.

1. Push the "MENU" button.



2. Touch the "Setup" switch. Then touch ▼ switch twice to display page 3 of the "Setup" screen.




3. Touch the "Change" switch of the "OFF Function".



4. Touch the switch corresponding to the desired setting. Then touch the "OK" switch.

III

## POI category change (Show POI Icons)

You can choose 6 icons displayed on the "Show POI Icons" top screen, so that you can easily set which icons to display on the map screen.



1. Push the "MENU" button.



2. Touch the "Setup" switch. Then touch switch twice to display page 3 of the "Setup" screen.




3. Touch the "Change" switch of "Show POI Icons".




4. Touch the category switch you wish to change.




5. Touch the switch corresponding to the desired category. Then touch the "OK" switch.

## Delete previous point

You can delete your previous destination.

1. Push the "MENU" button.

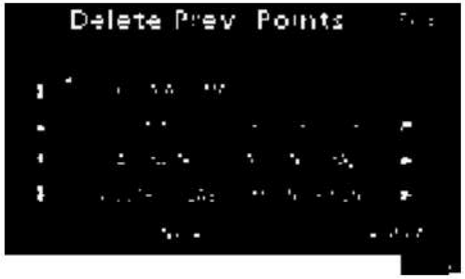


2. Touch the "Setup" switch. Then touch ▼ switch twice to display page 3 of the "Setup" screen.




3. Touch the "Delete" switch of "Previous Point".

III




4. Touch the switch you want to delete.

For efficient previous point search, previous points can be sorted by the "Date" or "Name" switch.



5. To delete the point, touch the "Yes" switch.

To cancel the deletion, touch the "No" switch.

## Map color

1. Push the "MENU" button.



2. Touch the "Setup" switch. Then touch ▼ switch three times to display page 4 of the "Setup" screen.



**3. Touch the desired color for day and/or night map and then touch the "OK" switch to return the map screen.**

Touch the **"Normal"** switch to return to the default map color.

## Screen animation

**When the "Screen Animation" feature is turned on, some switches and screens become animated. (e.g.: change map guidance on the map screen)**

**To turn the "Screen Animation" mode on:**

**1. Push the "MENU" button.**



**2. Touch the "Setup" switch. Then touch ▼ switch three times to display page 4 of the "Setup" screen.**



**3. Touch the "On" switch of "Screen Animation" and touch the "OK" switch.**

III

SECTION IV

# OTHER FUNCTIONS

## Other functions

Maintenance information ..... 100
Calendar with memo ..... 105
Screen adjustment ..... 112
Screen setting ..... 113

## Maintenance information



This system informs you when to replace certain parts or components and shows dealer information (if registered) on the screen. (See "Information items" on page 101.) When the navigation system begins operating after either the information item's pre-set date arrives or the driving distance reaches a pre-determined setting, the "Information" screen will be displayed. This screen will appear every time the system is turned on until you touch the **"Do not display this message again"** switch.

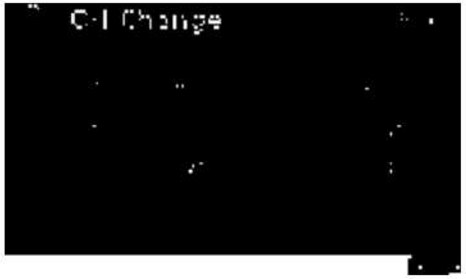
To prevent this information screen from being displayed again, touch the **"Do not display this message again"** switch.




1. Push the **"INFO"** button to display the "Information Menu" screen. Touch the **"Maintenance"** switch to display the "Maintenance" screen.




2. Touch the desired icon and input the conditions.



**Notice of "Date":** You can input the next maintenance date.

**Notice of "Distance":** You can input the driving distance until the next maintenance check.

When you touch the  switch on the "Maintenance" screen, the screen changes to the "Personal Event" screen. Touch the keys to input the desired name and then input conditions.

After you input the date and/or distance, touch the **"OK"** switch. The screen then returns to the "Maintenance" screen.

The following switches appear.

**"Delete All":** To cancel all conditions which have been inputted.

**"Reset All":** To reset the item which has satisfied a condition.

Touch the **"Off"** switch at the top of the "Maintenance" screen to turn off the information screen.

When your vehicle needs to be serviced, the icon color will change to orange.

### *INFORMATION*

- ***For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Scheduled Maintenance Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement".***
- ***Depending on driving or road conditions, the actual date and distance may differ from the stored date and distance in the system.***

**Information items**

 Oil change

 Replace oil filter

 Rotate tires

 Replace tires

 Replace battery

 Replace brake linings

 Replace wiper blades

IV


Replace engine coolant


Replace brake fluid


Replace ATF


Scheduled maintenance


Replace air filter


Personal event

## (a) Register dealer

**You can register the dealer name, staff, location and phone number.**




**1. Touch the "Set Dealer" switch on the "Maintenance" screen.**




**2. Enter the location of the dealer in the same way as for destination input. (See page 24.)**



After you input the dealer, the screen changes and displays the map location of the dealer. If it is OK, touch the **"Enter"** switch.

The screen changes to "Edit Dealer" screen. (See "(b) Edit dealer".)

## (b) Edit dealer




**You can edit the dealer name, staff, location and phone number.**

**1. Touch the "Set Dealer" switch on the "Maintenance" screen. The "Edit Dealer" screen appears.**




**2. To edit, touch the corresponding switch.**

IV

◀ To edit "Dealer" or "Contact"



**To input the name, touch the alphabet, numeral and/or umlaut keys. You can input up to 24 letters.**

After inputting, touch the **"OK"** switch at the bottom right of the screen. The previous screen will be displayed.

◀ To edit "Location"



**Set the cursor ⌖ to the desired point, and touch the "Enter" switch on the screen.**

◀ To edit "Phone #" (telephone number)



**Touch numeral keys.**

After inputting, touch the **"OK"** switch. The previous screen will be displayed.

## (c) Delete dealer




1. Touch the "Delete Dealer" switch on the screen.
2. A message will appear on the screen. To delete, touch the "Yes" switch. To cancel the deletion, touch the "No" or "Back" switch.

## (d) Set as destination




Touch the "Enter ⊙" switch on the "Set Dealer" screen. The screen changes and displays the map location of the registered dealer and the "Route Preference". (See " — Entering destination" on page 42.)

## Calendar with memo




This system informs you of a memo entry. At the specified date, the memo information will be displayed when the navigation system is in operation. The memo information screen will appear every time the system is turned on. To disable this screen, touch the "Do not display this message again." switch.

IV




To display the "Information Menu" screen, push the "INFO" button. Then touch the "Calendar" switch.



The current date is circled in yellow. If the current date is not displayed on the screen, touch the "Today" switch to display the current month calendar.

## (a) Inputting a memo



1. Touch the day you want to add a memo.



2. To display the "Memo" screen, touch the "Add Memo" switch.

◀ Memo



Touch the "Memo" switch to enter text.



**Enter text using the keys. You can enter text up to 24 letters.**

After entering the text, touch the "OK" switch at the bottom right of the screen.

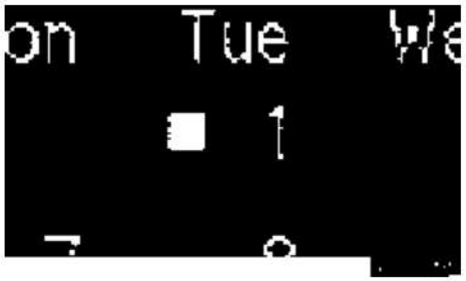
◀ Location



Touch the "Location" switch to set location.

A screen similar to the destination input screen appears. Input the same way as inputting a destination. (See page 24.)

You can add the memos up to 100 until December 31, 2022.




**The date inputted is marked as shown above.**

You can choose the desired mark and/or date color.

◀ **Mark color**



**Touch the "Mark" switch.**



**Touch your desired color for the mark.**

◀ **Date color**



**Touch the "Date" switch.**



Touch your desired color for the date.

You can set a color of the mark and/or date for the date you added the memo and/or location.

To default the date color, touch the "Delete" switch on the screen. After you choose the date and/or mark color, touch the "OK" switch to display the previous screen.

## (b) Adding a memo



To add a memo, touch the corresponding date.

The "Memo" screen appears on the display. Touch the "Add Memo" switch. (See page 106 for inputting a memo.)

You can add up to 100 memos.

## (c) Deleting a memo



Touch the corresponding date. Touch the corresponding memo switch, and then touch the "Delete" switch on the screen. A message appears on the display. To delete, touch the "Yes" switch. To cancel the deletion, touch the "No" switch.

IV

## (d) Editing a memo



To edit a memo, touch the corresponding date, and then touch the memo you wish to edit.



Touch the "Memo" or "Location" switch.

## (e) Memo list



1. To list the memos you added, touch the "List" switch.



2. Touch the desired search condition to list the memos. The "Memo list" is displayed on the screen.



To display the memos listed in a desired period, touch the "Period" switch.

Touch the number keys.

After setting the period, touch the "OK" switch. The "Memo list" screen will be displayed.

You can set a period from January 1, 2003, through December 31, 2022, for searching.



To delete and/or edit the memo, touch the desired memo switch.

To delete all memos, touch the "Delete All" switch. A message appears on the display. To delete, touch the "Yes" switch. To cancel the deletion, touch the "No" switch.



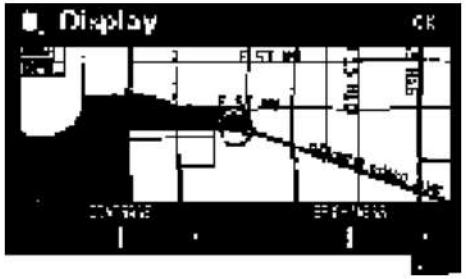
**To edit:** Touch the corresponding **"Memo"** or **"Location"** switch. (See page 110 for details.)

**To delete:** Touch the **"Delete"** switch. (See page 109 for details.)

## Screen adjustment

**The brightness or contrast of the screen can be adjusted depending on the brightness of your surroundings. You can also turn the display off.**

**To display the "Display" screen push the "DISPLAY" button.**




**Contrast and brightness adjustment**

**"CONTRAST" "+":**
Strengthens the contrast of the screen.

**"CONTRAST" "-":**
Weakens the contrast of the screen.

**"BRIGHTNESS" "+":**
Brightens the screen.

**"BRIGHTNESS" "-":**
Darkens the screen.

**After adjusting the screen, touch the "OK" switch.**

The screen goes off when you touch the **"SCREEN OFF"** switch. To turn the display screen back on, push any button such as **"INFO"**, etc. The selected screen appears.

| *INFORMATION* |
| --- |
| ***When you do not touch any switch on the screen for 20 seconds the "Display" screen goes off.*** |



**Depending on the position of the headlight switch, the screen changes to either day mode or night mode.**

To display the screen in the day mode even with the headlight switch on, touch the **"DAY MODE"** switch on the adjustment screen for brightness and contrast control.

If the screen is set in the day mode with the headlight switch turned on, this condition is memorized in the system even with the engine turned off.

## Screen setting

**1. Push the "INFO" button to display the "Information Menu" screen.**




**2. Touch the "Screen Setting" switch.**

## (a) Automatic transition

**You can select a function that enables automatic return to the navigation screen from the audio screen.**




**Select "ON" or "OFF" and then touch the "OK" switch.**

**"ON":** The navigation screen automatically returns from the audio screen 20 seconds after the end of audio operation.

**"OFF":** The audio screen remains on.

IV

## (b) Background color

You can select a background color.




Select the desired background color and then touch the "OK" switch.

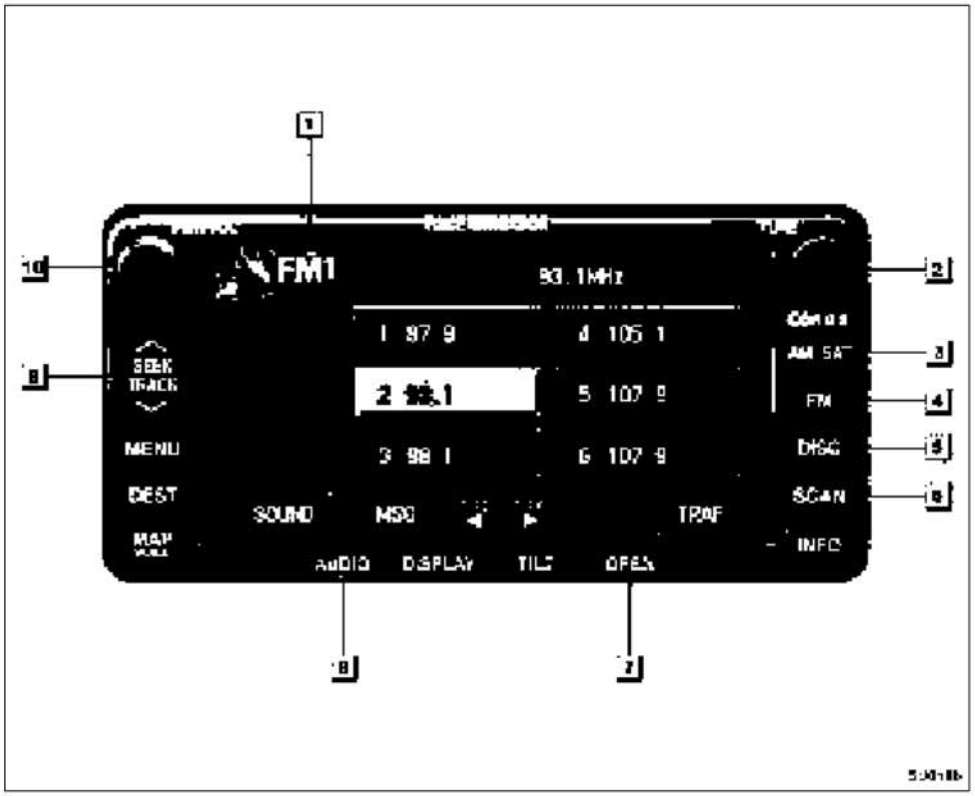
SECTION V

# AUDIO SYSTEM

## Audio system

Quick reference ..... 116
Using your audio system ..... 117
Audio system operating hints ..... 132

## Quick reference




1 **Function switch display screen**
Touch the switches displayed on the screen to control the radio and compact disc player. For details, see page 118.

2 **"TUNE" knob**
Turn this knob to move the station band or SAT channel up or down. For details, see pages 120 and 125.

3 **"AM·SAT" button**
Push this button to choose either an AM or SAT station. For details, see pages 118, 120 and 124.

4 **"FM" button**
Push this button to choose an FM station. For details, see pages 118 and 120.

5 **"DISC" button**
Push this button to turn the compact disc player on. For details, see pages 118 and 130.

6 **"SCAN" button**
Push this button to scan radio stations/ SAT channels or the tracks on a compact disc. For details, see pages 121, 126 and 131.

7 **"OPEN" button**
Push this button to open the display to access the slot for the compact disc player. For details, see page 129.

8 **"AUDIO" button**
Push this button to display the audio control screen. For details, see page 117.

9 **"SEEK/TRACK" button**
Push either side of this button to seek up or down for a station, to access a desired program or track, or to select a SAT channel. For details, see pages 121, 126 and 131.

10 **"PWR·VOL" knob**
Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off, and turn it to adjust the volume. For details, see page 117.

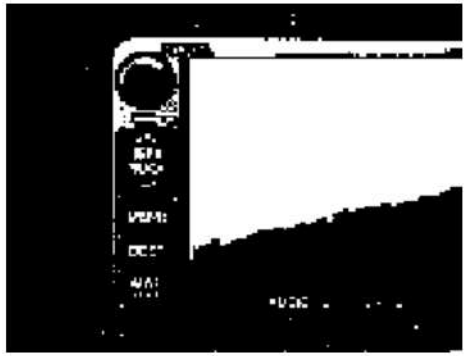
## Using your audio system — — Some basics

This section describes some of the basic features of your audio system. Some information may not pertain to your system.

Your audio system works when the ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

***NOTICE***

***To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.***



### (a) Turning the system on and off

**"PWR·VOL":** Push this knob to turn the audio system on and off. Turn this knob to adjust the volume. The system turns on in the last mode used.

**"AUDIO":** Push this button to display switches for audio system (audio control mode).

You can select the function that enables automatic return to the previous screen from the audio screen. See page 113 for details.

V




**Push "AM·SAT", "FM" or "DISC" button to turn on the desired mode. The selected mode turns on immediately.**

Push these buttons if you want to switch from one mode to another.

If the disc is not set, the compact disc player does not turn on.

You can turn off the compact disc player by ejecting the compact disc. If the audio system was previously off, then the entire audio system will be turned off when you eject the compact disc. If the other function was previously playing, it will come on again.









**The switches for radio and compact disc player operation are displayed on the function switch display screen when the audio control mode is selected. Touch them lightly and directly on the screen.**

The selected switch is highlighted in green or yellow.

### *INFORMATION*

- ***If the system does not respond to a touch of a switch, move your finger away from the screen and then touch it again.***
- ***You cannot operate dimmed switches.***
- ***Wipe off fingerprints on the surface of the display using a glass cleaning cloth.***

### (b) Tone and balance

How good an audio program sounds to you is largely determined by the mix of the treble, midrange, and bass levels. In fact, different kinds of music and vocal programs usually sound better with different mixes of treble, mid-range, and bass.

A good balance of the left and right stereo channels and of the front and rear sound levels is also important.

Keep in mind that if you are listening to a stereo recording or broadcast, changing the right/left balance will increase the volume of one group of sounds while decreasing the volume of another.



**Touching the "SOUND" switch displayed on the screen at the audio control mode will display the sound control mode. Adjust the tone and balance as follows.**

**To adjust the tone, touch the "+" or "-" switch on the screen. To adjust the balance between the front and rear speakers, touch the "FRONT" or "REAR" switch on the screen, and to adjust the balance between the left and right, touch the "L" or "R" switch on the screen.**

**"BASS":** Adjusts low-pitched tones.

**"MID":** Adjusts mid-pitched tones.

**"TREB":** Adjusts high-pitched tones.

As the yellow display goes up, each tone is more emphasized.

### (c) Sound adjusting function (convertible with 7 speakers)

The audio system automatically adjusts the sound to the suitable tone according to the convertible top condition.

When the tone level is adjusted, audio will be disrupted momentarily.

### (d) Your compact disc player

When you insert a compact disc, insert it with the label side up. The compact disc player will play from track 1 through to the end of the disc. Then it will play from track 1 again.

| *NOTICE* |
| --- |
| ***Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the compact disc player. Do not insert anything other than compact discs into the slot.*** |

The player is intended for use with 12 cm (4.7 in.) discs only.

## — Radio operation




### (a) Listening to the radio

**Push these buttons to choose either an AM or FM station.**

"AM", "FM1" or "FM2" appears on the screen.

**If your vehicle is equipped with a satellite radio broadcast system, when you push the "AM·SAT" button,** "AM", "SAT1", "SAT2" or "SAT3" station appears on the display. For details about satellite radio broadcast, see "— Radio operation (XM satellite radio broadcast)" on page 123.




**Turn the knob clockwise to step up the station band or counterclockwise to step down.**

Your radio automatically changes to stereo reception when a stereo broadcast is received. "ST" appears on the screen. If the signal becomes weak, the radio reduces the amount of channel separation to prevent the weak signal from creating noise. If the signal becomes extremely weak, the radio switches from stereo to mono reception. In this case, "ST" disappears from the screen.



**(b) Presetting a station**

**1. Tune in the desired station.**

**2. Touch one of the switches (1 — 6) you want and hold it until a beep is heard. This sets the station to the switch and the frequency appears on the switch.**

Each radio mode (AM, FM1 or FM2) can store up to 6 stations. To change the preset station to a different one, follow the same procedure.

The preset station memory is cancelled when the power source is interrupted by battery disconnection or a blown fuse.

**(c) Selecting a station**

Tune in the desired station using one of the following methods.

**Preset tuning:** Touch the switch (1 — 6) for the station you want. The switch is highlighted in green and the station frequency appears on the screen.

**Seek tuning:** Push the "SEEK/TRACK" button on either side. The radio will begin seeking up or down for a station of the nearest frequency and will stop on reception. Each time you push the button, the stations will be searched out automatically after another.

**To scan all the frequencies:** Touch the "SCAN" switch on the screen or push the "SCAN" button briefly. "SCAN" appears on the screen. The radio will find the next station and stay there for a few seconds, and then scan again. To select a station, touch the "SCAN" switch or push the "SCAN" button again.

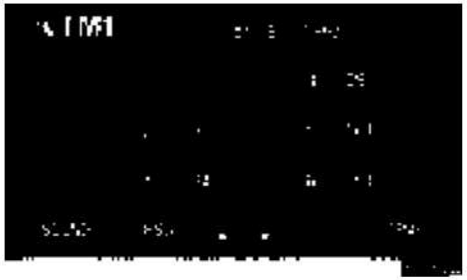
**To scan the preset stations:** Touch the "SCAN" switch on the screen or push the "SCAN" button for longer than approximately a second. "P. SCAN" appears on the screen. The radio will tune in the next preset station, stay there for a few seconds, and then move to the next preset station. To select a station, touch the "SCAN" switch or push the "SCAN" button again.

**(d) Radio Data System**

Your audio system is equipped with Radio Data Systems (RDS). RDS mode allows you to receive text messages from radio stations that utilize RDS transmitters.

When RDS is on, the radio can
— only select stations of a particular program type,
— display messages from radio stations,
— search for a stronger signal station.

RDS features are available for use only on FM stations which broadcast RDS information.

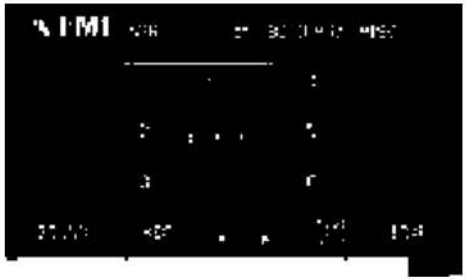


"TYPE ° ◀" switch

If the system receives no RDS stations, "NO PTY" appears on the display.

Each time you touch the "TYPE ° " or "TYPE ◀" switch, the program type changes as follows:

- ROCK
- MISC (Miscellaneous)
- Inform (Information)
- Easy Lis (Easy listening)
- Cls/Jazz (Classical music and Jazz)
- R & B (Rhythm and Blues)
- Religion
- Alert (Emergency message)



"TYPE SEEK" switch

When a program is set, "TYPE SEEK" switch appears. Touch the switch and the system starts to seek the station in the relevant program type.

If any type program station is not found, "NOTHING" appears on the display.



"MSG" (MESSAGE) switch

If the system receives a radio text from an RDS station, "MSG" appears on the display. Touch the "MSG" switch, and a text message is displayed on the screen.

In case a text message is not accepted in a screen, you can touch the "MSG" switch and hold it to display the rest of the message.

When the system can show the station name, "RDS" appears on the display. Each time you touch the "MSG" switch, indication on the display changes from the band to the station name, to radio text in this order. After six seconds pass, indication returns to the band.




**(e) Traffic announcement**

"TRAF" switch

A station that regularly broadcasts traffic information is automatically located.

When you push the "TRAF" switch, "TRAF SEEK" appears on the display and the radio will start seeking any traffic program station.

If any traffic program station is not found, "NOTHING" appears on the display.

If the traffic program station is found, the name for traffic program station is displayed and "TRAF" is lit for a while until traffic announcement is received.

## — Radio operation (XM satellite radio broadcast)

To listen to a satellite radio broadcast in your vehicle, an additional genuine Toyota satellite receiver and antenna must be purchased and installed, and the subscription to the XM satellite radio is necessary.

**(a) How to subscribe to an XM satellite radio**

An XM satellite radio is a tuner designed exclusively to receive broadcasts provided under a separate subscription. Availability is limited to the 48 contiguous states.

**How to subscribe:** You must enter into a separate service agreement with the XM radio in order to receive satellite broadcast programming in the vehicle. Additional activation and service subscription fees apply that are not included in the purchase price of the vehicle and optional digital satellite tuner. For complete information on subscription rates and terms, or to subscribe to the XM radio, visit XM on the web at www.xmradio.com or call an XM's Listener Care at (800) 852-9696. The XM radio is solely responsible for the quality, availability and content of the satellite radio services provided, which are subject to the terms and conditions of the XM radio customer service agreement.

Customers should have their radio ID ready; the radio ID can be found by selecting "channel 000" on the radio. For details, see the "Displaying the radio ID" that follows.

All fees and programming are the responsibility of the XM satellite radio and are subject to change.

**Satellite tuner technology notice:**
Toyota's satellite radio tuners are awarded Type Approval Certificates from XM Satellite Radio Inc. on "March 10, 2003" and "April 15, 2003" as proof of compatibility with the services offered by the XM satellite radio.

**(b) Displaying the radio ID**

Each XM tuner is identified with a unique radio ID. You will need the radio ID when activating XM service or when reporting a problem.

If you select the "CH 000" using the "TUNE" knob, the ID code of 8 alphanumeric characters appears. If you select another channel, display of the ID code is canceled. The channel (000) alternates the display between the radio ID and the specific radio ID code.




**(c) Listening to satellite radio**

**Push the "AM·SAT" button to choose an SAT channel.**

Besides "AM", "SAT1", "SAT2" or "SAT3" also appears on the display.



**Turn this knob to select the next or previous channel.**

If you turn continuously, you can rapidly scroll forward or down through the channels.




**(d) Channel category**

When the channel category appears, touch either "TYPE° " or "TYPE◀" switch to go to the next or previous category.




**(e) Presetting a channel**

**1. Tune in the desired channel.**

**2. Touch one of the channel selector switches (1 — 6) and hold it until a beep is heard. This sets the channel to the switch and the name and number of the channel appears on the switch.**

Each switch can store three SAT channels. To change the preset channel to a different one, follow the same procedure.

The preset channel memory is cancelled when the power source is interrupted by battery disconnection or a blown fuse.

V

### (f) Selecting a channel

Tune in the desired channel using one of the following methods.

**Preset tuning:** Touch the switch (1 — 6) for the channel you want. The switch (1 — 6) is highlighted in green and channel number appears on the display.

**To select channel within the current category:** Push the "×" or "±" button of the "SEEK/TRACK" button.



**To scan the currently selected channel category:** Touch the "TYPE SCAN" switch or push the "SCAN" button briefly. "SCAN" appears on the display. The radio will find the next channel in the same channel category, stay there for a few seconds, and then scan again. To select a channel, touch the "TYPE SCAN" switch or push the "SCAN" button a second time.

**To scan the preset channels:** Push the "SCAN" button and hold it until you hear a beep. "P.SCAN" appears on the display. The radio will find the next preset channel, stay there for a few seconds, and then move to the next preset channel. To select a channel, push the "SCAN" button a second time.



### (g) Displaying the title and name

When you touch the "TEXT" switch, the song/program title and the artist name/feature are displayed.

Up to 10 alphanumeric characters can be displayed. (Some information will not be fully displayed.)

When you touch the "TEXT" switch again, the display returns.

### (h) If the satellite radio tuner malfunctions

When problems occur with the XM tuner, a message will appear on the display. Referring to the table below to identify the problem, take the suggested corrective action.

| | |
|---|---|
| ANTENNA | The XM antenna is not connected. Check whether the XM antenna cable is attached securely. |
| | A short-circuit occurs in the antenna or the surrounding antenna cable. See a Toyota certified dealer. |
| UPDATING | You have not subscribed to the XM satellite radio. The radio is being updated with the latest encryption code. Contact the XM satellite radio for subscription information. When a contact is canceled, you can choose the "CH000" and all free-to-air channels. |
| | The premium channel you selected is not authorized. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel. If you want to listen to the premium channel, contact the XM satellite radio. |
| NO SIGNAL | The XM signal is too weak at the current location. Wait until your vehicle reaches a location with a stronger signal. |
| LOADING | The unit is acquiring audio or program information. Wait until the unit has received the information. |
| OFF AIR | The channel you selected is not broadcasting any programming. Select another channel. |
| ----- | There is no song/program title or artist name/feature associated with the channel at that time. No action needed. |
| --- | The channel you selected is no longer available. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel. |

The XM Listener Care Center is also available on the phone, please call (800) 852-9696 during the following hours:
Monday — Saturday: 7 a.m. — 1 a.m. Sunday: 12 p.m. — 12 a.m. (EST)

### NOTICE

*This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.*

*If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:*

*— Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.*

*— Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.*

*— Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.*

*— Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.*

*Information to user*

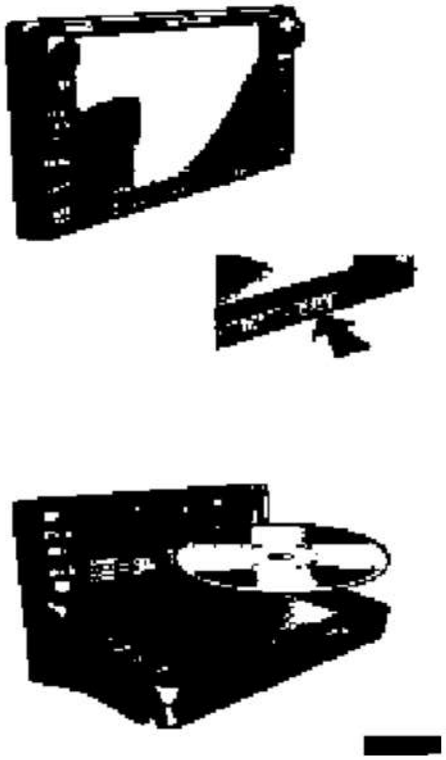
*Alternation or modifications carried out without appropriate authorization may invalidate the user's right to operate the equipment.*

### NOTICE

*This XM tuner supports "Audio Services" (Music and Talk) of only XM satellite radio and "Text Information"* linked to the respective "Audio Services".*

**Text Information includes, Station Name, (Artist) Name, (Song) Title and Category Name.*

## — Compact disc player operation



(a) Inserting a compact disc

**The slot for the compact disc player is behind the display.**

**To insert a compact disc, push the "OPEN" button to lower the display. Put the compact disc in the slot with the label side up.**

The player will automatically start when you insert the compact disc. At this time, "CD" appears on the screen.

If the label faces down, the disc cannot be played. In this case, "CD CHECK" appears on the screen.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **Do not place anything on the opened display, as such items may be thrown about in the compartment and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.**
- **To reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop while driving, keep the display closed.**
- **Take care not to jam your hand while the display is moving. Otherwise, you could be injured.**

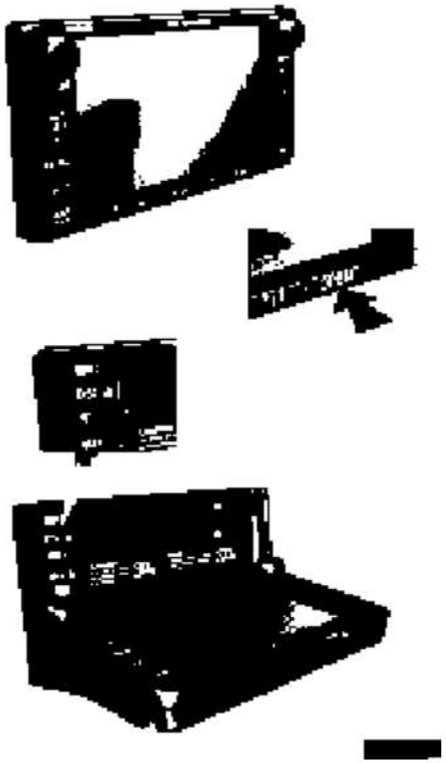
***NOTICE***

***Do not obstruct the display while it is moving. It could damage your audio system.***

***INFORMATION***

***Under extremely cold conditions, the display may react slowly or operation sound may become louder.***

V



**(b) Ejecting a compact disc**

To stop and eject the compact disc, push the "OPEN" button to lower the display. Push the "DISC ⏏" button.




**(c) Playing a compact disc**

**Push the "DISC" button if a compact disc is already loaded in the slot.**

"CD" appears on the screen.




**(d) Selecting a desired track**

**"SEEK/TRACK" button:** Use for a direct access to a desired track.

Push either side of the "SEEK/TRACK" button and hold it until the desired track number appears on the screen. As you release the button, the player will start playing the selected track from the beginning.

**Fast forward:** Touch the ▲ switch and hold it to fast forward the disc. When you release the switch, the compact disc player will resume playing from that position.

**Reverse:** Touch the ▼ switch and hold it to reverse the disc. When you release the switch, the compact disc player will resume playing.




**(e) Searching for a desired track**

**Touch the "SCAN" switch on the screen or push the "SCAN" button.**

The compact disc player will play the next track for 10 seconds, then scan again. To select a track, touch the "SCAN" switch on the screen or push the "SCAN" button a second time. If the player reaches the end of the disc, it will continue scanning at track 1.

After all the tracks are scanned in one pass, normal play resumes.



**(f) Other compact disc player functions**

**"RPT" switch:** Use it for automatic repeat of the track you are currently listening to.

Touch the switch while the track is playing. When the track is finished, the player will automatically go back to the beginning of the track and play the track again. To cancel it, touch the switch once again.

**"RAND" switch:** Use it for automatic and random selection.

When the switch is touched, the system selects a track in the disc. To cancel it, touch the switch once again.

If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the title of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 29 letters can be displayed.

### (g) If the player malfunctions

If "CD ERROR" appears on the screen, audio signals of the disc cannot be read or the system has trouble. Push the "DISC" button once again.

If the player does not operate, check that the disc surface is not soiled or damaged. If the disc is O.K., the temperature of the player's internal mechanism may be raised because of high external temperature. Remove the disc from the player to cool it.

If the player still does not operate, have it checked by your dealer.

## Audio system operating hints

**NOTICE**

***To ensure correct audio system operations:***

- ***Be careful not to spill beverages over the audio system.***
- ***Do not put anything other than a Compact Disc into the slot.***
- ***The use of a cellular phone inside or near the vehicle may cause a noise from the speakers of the audio system which you are listening to. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.***

### RADIO RECEPTION

Usually, a problem with radio reception does not mean there is a problem with your radio — it is just the normal result of conditions outside the vehicle.

For example, nearby buildings and terrain can interfere with FM reception. Power lines or telephone wires can interfere with AM signals. And of course, radio signals have a limited range. The farther you are from a station, the weaker its signal will be. In addition, reception conditions change constantly as your vehicle moves.

Here are some common reception problems that probably do not indicate a problem with your radio:

FM

Fading and drifting stations — Generally, the effective range of FM is about 40 km (25 miles). Once outside this range, you may notice fading and drifting, which increase with the distance from the radio transmitter. They are often accompanied by distortion.

Multi-path — FM signals are reflective, making it possible for two signals to reach your antenna at the same time. If this happens, the signals will cancel each other out, causing a momentary flutter or loss of reception.

Static and fluttering — These occur when signals are blocked by buildings, trees, or other large objects. Increasing the bass level may reduce static and fluttering.

Station swapping — If the FM signal you are listening to is interrupted or weakened, and there is another strong station nearby on the FM band, your radio may tune in the second station until the original signal can be picked up again.

AM

Fading — AM broadcasts are reflected by the upper atmosphere — especially at night. These reflected signals can interfere with those received directly from the radio station, causing the radio station to sound alternately strong and weak.

Station interference — When a reflected signal and a signal received directly from a radio station are very nearly the same frequency, they can interfere with each other, making it difficult to hear the broadcast.

Static — AM is easily affected by external sources of electrical noise, such as high tension power lines, lightening, or electrical motors. This results in static.

**CARING FOR YOUR COMPACT DISC PLAYER AND DISCS**

- Your compact disc player is intended for use with 12 cm (4.7 in.) discs only.
- Extremely high temperatures can keep your compact disc player from working. On hot days, use the air conditioning to cool the vehicle interior before you listen to a disc.
- Bumpy roads or other vibrations may make your compact disc player skip.
- If moisture gets into your compact disc player, you may not hear any sound even though your compact disc player appears to be working. Remove the disc from the player and wait until it dries.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Compact disc players use an invisible laser beam which could cause hazardous radiation exposure if directed outside the unit. Be sure to operate the player correctly.**

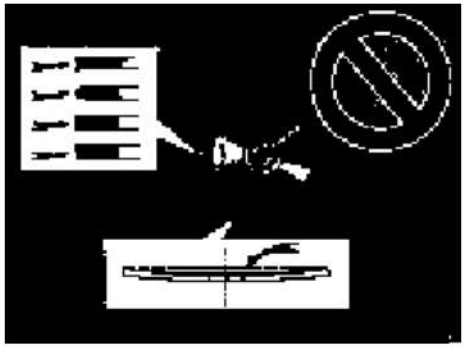



- Use only compact discs marked as shown above. The following products may not be playable on your compact disc player.

  Copy-protected CD
  CD-R (CD-Recordable)
  CD-R W (CD-Re-writable)
  CD-ROM



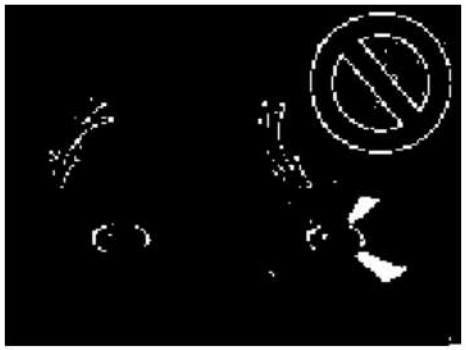
Special shaped discs



Low quality discs



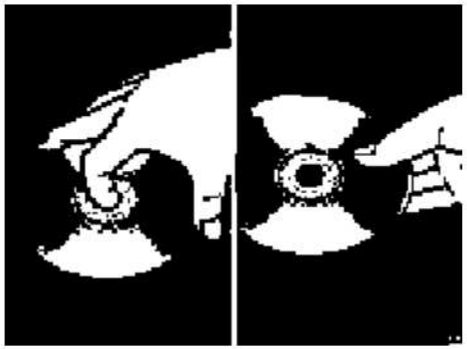
Transparent/translucent discs



Labeled discs

**NOTICE**

*Do not use special shaped, transparent/ translucent, low quality or labeled discs such as those shown in the illustrations. The use of such discs may damage the player or changer, or it may be impossible to eject the disc.*



◀ Correct ◀ Wrong

- Handle compact discs carefully, especially when you are inserting them. Hold them on the edge and do not bend them. Avoid getting fingerprints on them, particularly on the shiny side.
- Dirt, scratches, warping, pin holes, or other disc damage could cause the player to skip or to repeat a section of a track. (To see a pin hole, hold the disc up to the light.)
- Remove discs from the compact disc player when you are not listening to them. Store them in their plastic cases away from moisture, heat, and direct sunlight.



**To clean a compact disc:** Wipe it with a soft, lint-free cloth that has been dampened with water. Wipe in a straight line from the center to the edge of the disc (not in circles). Dry it with another soft, lint-free cloth. Do not use a conventional record cleaner or anti-static device.

# Important information about this manual

For safety reasons, this manual indicates items requiring particular attention with the following marks.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**This is a warning against anything which may cause injury to people if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.**

***NOTICE***

***This is a warning against anything which may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your vehicle and its equipment.***

***INFORMATION***

***This provides additional information.***

## Initial screen

When you start the engine or turn the ignition switch to the "ACC" position, the initial screen appears and the system begins operating.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**When the vehicle is stopped with the engine running, always apply the parking brake for safety.**

After a few seconds, the "CAUTION" screen appears.




**Touch either "English" or "Français" to select a language. Read and follow the instructions.**

**When you touch the "I Agree" switch on the screen, the map screen appears.**

You can access this screen when you push the **"INFO"** button and touch the **"Language"** switch. Then you can select a language.

# Safety Instruction




To use your system in the safest possible manner, follow all the safety tips shown below.

This system is intended to assist you in reaching your destination and, if used properly, can do so. You, as the driver, are solely responsible for the safe operation of your vehicle and the safety of your passengers.

Do not use any feature of this system to the extent it distracts you from safe driving. Your first priority while driving should always be the safe operation of your vehicle. While you are driving, be sure to observe all traffic regulations.

Prior to the actual use of this system, learn how to use it and become thoroughly familiar with it. Read the entire Navigation System Owner's Manual to make sure you understand the system. Do not allow others to use this system until they have read and understood the instructions in this manual.

For your safety, some functions may become inoperable when you start driving. Unavailable switches are dimmed. You can input your destination and select your route only when the vehicle is not moving.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- **For safety, the driver should not operate the navigation system while he/she is driving. Inattention to the road and traffic may cause an accident.**
- **While you are driving, be sure to obey the traffic regulations and maintain awareness of the road conditions. If a traffic sign on the road has been changed, route guidance may provide wrong information such as the direction of a one way street.**

While you are driving, listen to the voice instructions as much as possible and glance at the screen briefly and only when it is safe. However, do not totally rely on voice guidance. Use it just for your information. If the system cannot determine your current position correctly, there is a possibility of incorrect, late or non-voice guidance.

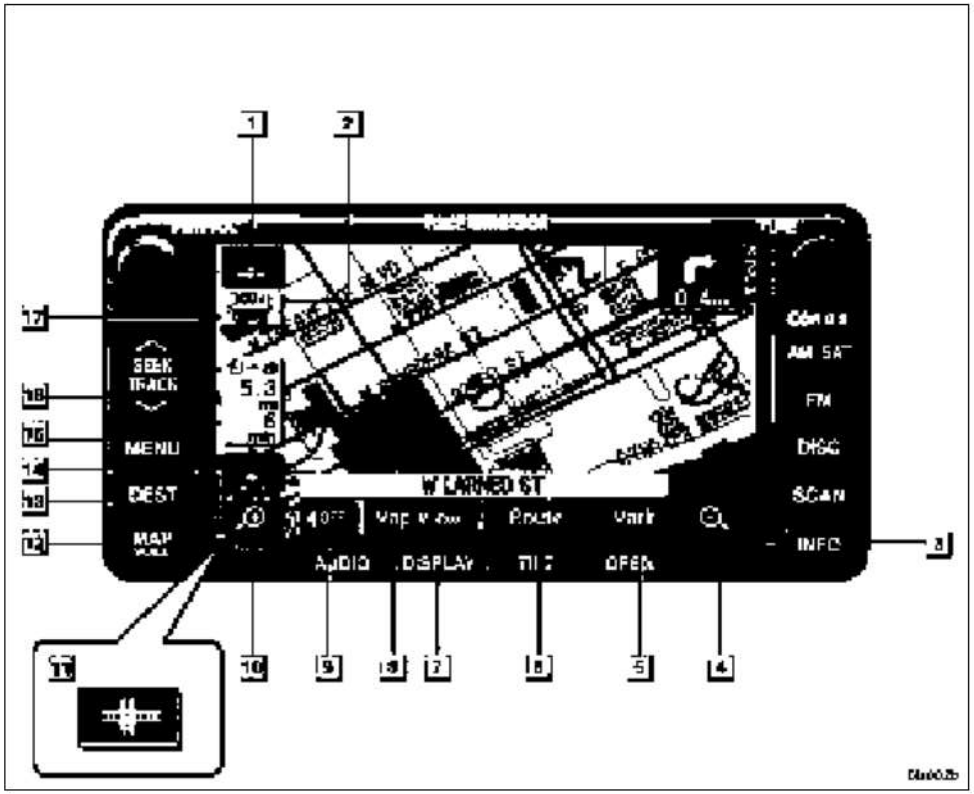
The data in the system may occasionally be incomplete. Road conditions, including driving restrictions (no left turns, street closures, etc.) frequently change. Therefore, before you follow any instruction from the system, look to see whether you can comply with the instruction safely and legally.

This system cannot warn you about such things as the safety of an area, condition of streets, and availability of emergency services. If you are unsure about the safety of an area, do not drive into it. **Under no circumstances is this system a substitute for the driver's personal judgement.**

Use this system only in locations where it is legal to do so. Some states/provinces may have laws prohibiting video screens within sight of the driver.

>

## — Quick reference




**1 North-up or heading-up symbol**

This symbol indicates a map view with north-up or heading-up. Touching this symbol changes the map orientation. . . . . 9

**2 Scale indicator**

This figure indicates the map scale. . . . . 9

**3 "INFO" button**

Push this button to display the "Information Menu" screen. . . . . ii, 100, 105, 113

**4 Zoom out switch**

Touch this switch to reduce the map scale. . . . . 9

**5 "Mark" switch**

Touch this switch to register the cursor position as a memory point. . . . . 6

**6 "Route" switch**

Touch this switch to change the route. . . . . 46, 48

**7 "DISPLAY" button**

Push this button to display the "Display" screen. . . . . 112

**8 "Map View" switch**

Touch this switch to obtain information regarding the route to the destination and information about the POI (Points of Interest) on the map screen. . . . . 53, 55, 56

**9 "◀OFF" switch**

Touch this switch to obtain a broader view. Some of the switches on the screen are not displayed. They reappear by touching the "ON ▶" switch. . . . . 93

**10 Zoom in switch**

Touch this switch to magnify the map scale. . . . . 9

**11 Foot print map switch**

Touch this switch to display the foot print map and the building information. . . . . 62

**12 "MAP/VOICE" button**

Push this button to repeat a voice guidance, cancel one touch scroll, start guidance and display the current position. . . . . 5, 6, 46

**13 "DEST" button**

Push this button to display the "Destination" screen. . . . . xiv, 24

**14 Screen configuration switch**

Touch this switch to change the screen mode. . . . . 57

**15 "MENU" button**

Push this button to display the "Menu" screen. . . . . xvi, 20, 65

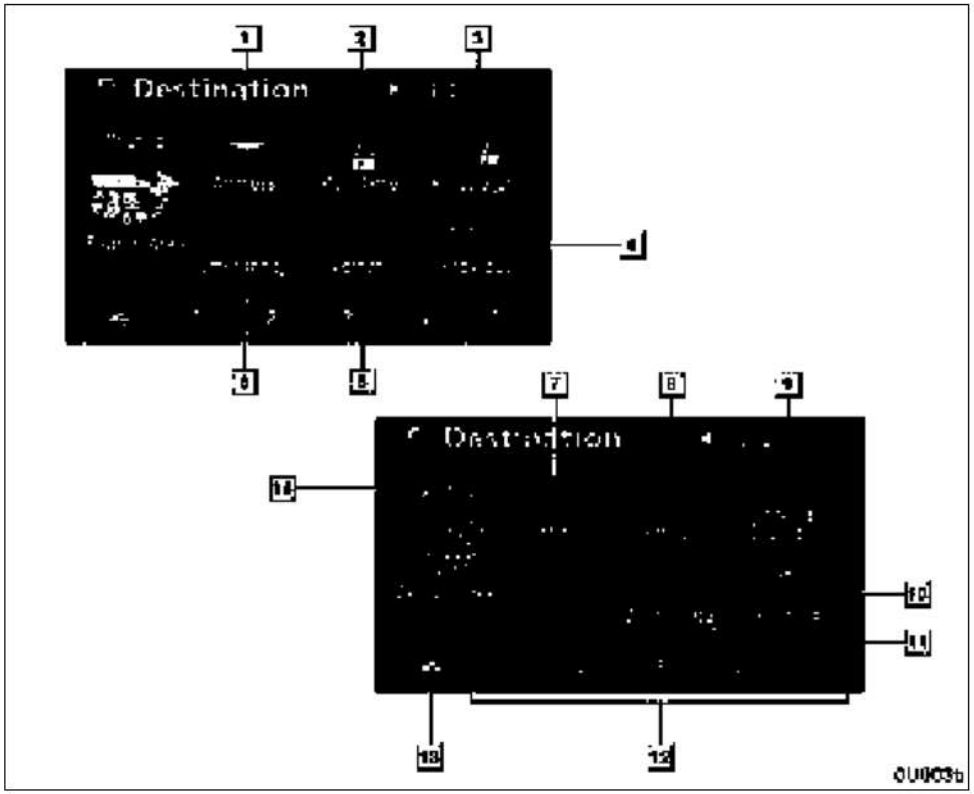
**16 Distance and time to destination**

Displays the distance and the estimated travel time to the destination. . . . . 61

**17 "GPS" mark (Global Positioning System)**

Whenever your vehicle is receiving signals from the GPS, this mark is displayed. . . . . 10

## — “Destination” screen




**To search for a destination, the switches below perform the following operations.**

**1 “Address” switch**

You can input the house number and the street address by using the input keys. . . . . 26

**2 “POI Name” switch**

You can select one of the many POIs (Points of Interest) that have already been stored in the system’s database. . . . . 30

**3 “POI Category” switch**

You can select a destination from the POI category. . . . . 33

**4 “Previous” switch**

You can select a destination from any of the last 99 previously set destinations and from the previous starting point. . . . . 38

**5 “Memory” switch**

You can select the location from those registered as “Memory points”. (To register memory points, see page 70.) . . . . . 37

**6 “Emergency” switch**

You can select one of the three categories of emergency service points that have been already stored in the system’s database. . . . . 36

**7** **"Map" switch**

You can select a destination simply by touching the location on the displayed map. . . . . 38

**8** **"Intersection" switch**

You can enter the names of two intersecting streets. This is helpful if you do not know the specific street address of your destination but know the general vicinity. . . . . 39

**9** **"Freeway Ent./Exit" switch**

You can enter the name of a freeway (interstate) entrance or exit. . . . . 40

**10** **"Phone #" switch**

You can enter a destination by the telephone number. . . . . 41

**11** **"Coordinates" switch**

You can set a destination using latitude and longitude as coordinates. . . . . 41

**12** **Quick access switch**

You can select one of 5 preset destinations directly. To use this function, it is necessary to set the "Attribute" for each memory point. (To register a "Quick Access", see page 74.) . . . . . 26

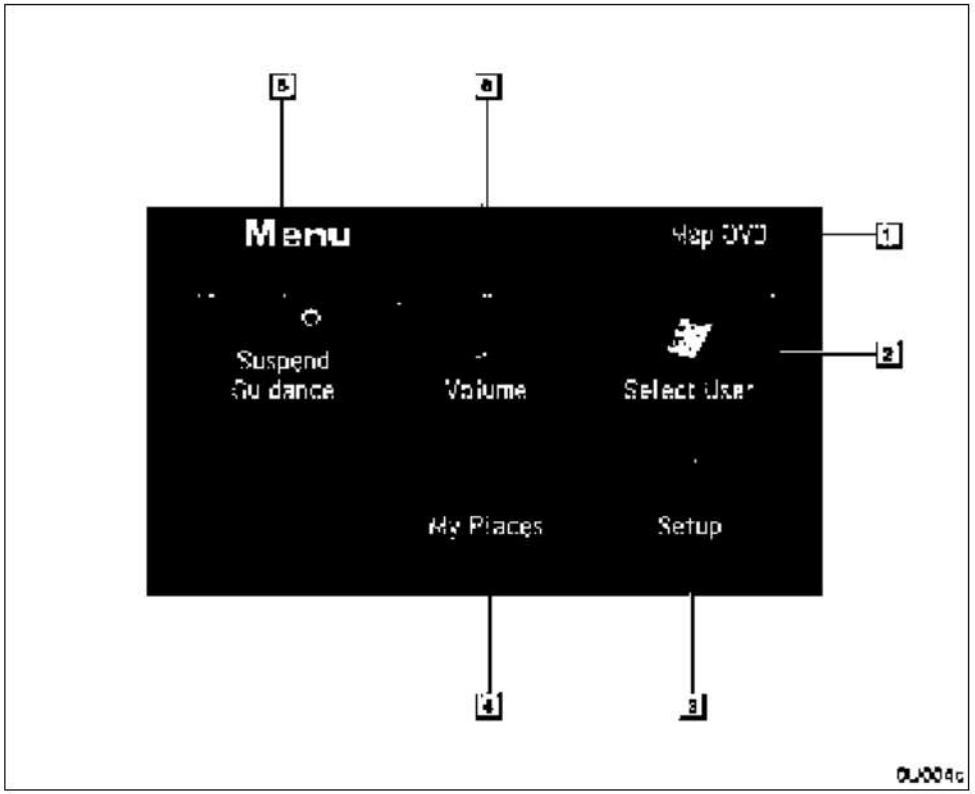
**13** **Home switch**

You can select your own home without entering the address each time. To use this function, it is necessary to set the "Attribute" for the memory point. (To register "Home", see page 74.) . . . . . 26

**14** **"Change" switch**

To change the search area, touch this switch. . . . . 24

## — “Menu” screen




**The switches below perform the following operations.**

**1 “Map DVD” switch**

Displays information regarding the disc version or covered area. . . . . 12

**2 “Select User” switch**

Enables recall of up to three memorized user setting patterns. . . . . 67

**3 “Setup” switch**

Enables various settings for the navigation system. . . . . 80

**4 “My Places” switch**

Enables changes to “Memory points” and “Areas to avoid”. . . . . 70

**5 “Suspend Guidance” and “Resume Guidance” switch**

Suspends or resumes guidance. . . . . 66

**6 “Volume” switch**

Sets the volume for voice guidance. . . . . 67

## 2006 Solara 5,000 Miles – 6 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.

## 2006 Solara 10,000 Miles – 12 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.

## 2006 Solara 15,000 Miles – 18 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
- ❑ Inspect the following:
  - __ Ball joints and dust covers
  - __ Brake lines and hoses
  - __ Drive shaft boots
  - __ Engine coolant[3]
  - __ Exhaust pipes and mountings
  - __ Steering gear box
  - __ Steering linkage and boots

**Note:** Driving in heavy traffic, on dirt roads or in urban, dusty or desert areas may shorten the life of the cabin air filter. Replacement may be needed if you notice reduced air flow from the air conditioner and heater or if the windows fog easily when you use the "fresh" mode. Consult your dealer if any of these conditions occur.

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.
3) See Maintenance Definitions (Engine Coolant) for details.

## 2006 Solara 20,000 Miles – 24 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.

## 2006 Solara 25,000 Miles – 30 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.

## 2006 Solara 30,000 Miles – 36 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Replace cabin air filter
- ❑ Replace engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect the following:
  - __ Ball joints and dust covers
  - __ Brake lines and hoses
  - __ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs[4]
  - __ Differential oil
  - __ Drive shaft boots
  - __ Engine coolant[3]
  - __ Exhaust pipes and mountings
  - __ Fuel lines and connections, fuel tank band and fuel tank vapor vent system hoses
  - __ Fuel tank cap gasket
  - __ Radiator core and condenser
  - __ Steering gear box
  - __ Steering linkage and boots
  - __ Transmission fluid or oil

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Replace front differential oil (all models with manual transmission)
- ❑ Replace manual transmission oil
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.
3) See Maintenance Definitions (Engine Coolant) for details.
4) Inspect thickness measurement and disc runout.

## 2006 Solara 35,000 Miles – 42 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.

## 2006 Solara 40,000 Miles – 48 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.

## 2006 Solara 45,000 Miles – 54 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
- ❑ Inspect the following:
  - __ Ball joints and dust covers
  - __ Brake lines and hoses
  - __ Drive shaft boots
  - __ Engine coolant[3]
  - __ Exhaust pipes and mountings
  - __ Steering gear box
  - __ Steering linkage and boots

**Note:** Driving in heavy traffic, on dirt roads or in urban, dusty or desert areas may shorten the life of the cabin air filter. Replacement may be needed if you notice reduced airflow from the air conditioner and heater or if the windows fog easily when you use the "Fresh" mode. Consult your dealer if any of these conditions occur.

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.
3) See Maintenance Definitions (Engine Coolant) for details.

## 2006 Solara 50,000 Miles – 60 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.

## 2006 Solara 55,000 Miles – 66 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.

## 2006 Solara 60,000 Miles – 72 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Replace cabin air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect the following:
  - __ Ball joints and dust covers
  - __ Brake lines and hoses
  - __ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs[4]
  - __ Differential oil
  - __ Drive belts[5]
  - __ Drive shaft boots
  - __ Engine coolant[3]
  - __ Engine valve clearance
  - __ Exhaust pipes and mountings
  - __ Fuel lines and connections, fuel tank band and fuel tank vapor vent system hoses
  - __ Fuel tank cap gasket
  - __ Radiator core and condenser
  - __ Steering gear box
  - __ Steering linkage and boots
  - __ Transmission fluid or oil

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Replace front differential oil
- ❑ Replace transmission fluid or oil
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.
3) See Maintenance Definitions (Engine Coolant) for details.
4) Inspect thickness measurement and disc runout.
5) Initial inspection at 60,000 miles/72 months. Inspect every 15,000 miles/18 months thereafter.

## 2006 Solara 65,000 Miles – 78 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.

## 2006 Solara 70,000 Miles – 84 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.

## 2006 Solara 75,000 Miles – 90 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
- ❑ Inspect the following:
  - __ Ball joints and dust covers
  - __ Brake lines and hoses
  - __ Drive belts
  - __ Drive shaft boots
  - __ Engine coolant[3]
  - __ Exhaust pipes and mountings
  - __ Steering gear box
  - __ Steering linkage and boots

**Note:** Driving in heavy traffic, on dirt roads or in urban, dusty or desert areas may shorten the life of the cabin air filter. Replacement may be needed if you notice reduced airflow from the air conditioner and heater or if the windows fog easily when you use the "Fresh" mode. Consult your dealer if any of these conditions occur.

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.
3) See Maintenance Definitions (Engine Coolant) for details.

## 2006 Solara 80,000 Miles – 96 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.

## 2006 Solara 85,000 Miles – 102 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.

## 2006 Solara 90,000 Miles – 108 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Replace cabin air filter
- ❑ Replace engine air filter
- ❑ Replace timing belt (3MZ-FE)
- ❑ Inspect the following:
  - __ Ball joints and dust covers
  - __ Brake lines and hoses
  - __ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs[4]
  - __ Differential oil
  - __ Drive belts
  - __ Drive shaft boots
  - __ Engine coolant[3]
  - __ Exhaust pipes and mountings
  - __ Fuel lines and connections, fuel tank band and fuel tank vapor vent system hoses
  - __ Fuel tank cap gasket
  - __ Radiator core and condenser
  - __ Steering gear box
  - __ Steering linkage and boots
  - __ Transmission fluid or oil

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Replace front differential oil (all models with manual transmission)
- ❑ Replace manual transmission oil
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.
3) See Maintenance Definitions (Engine Coolant) for details.
4) Inspect thickness measurement and disc runout.

## 2006 Solara 95,000 Miles – 114 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.

## 2006 Solara 100,000 Miles – 120 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Replace engine coolant[6]
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.
6) Initial replacement at 100,000 miles/120 months. Replace every 50,000 miles/60 months thereafter. See Maintenance Definitions (Engine Coolant) for details.

## 2006 Solara 105,000 Miles – 126 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs
- ❑ Inspect the following:
  - __ Ball joints and dust covers
  - __ Brake lines and hoses
  - __ Drive belts
  - __ Drive shaft boots
  - __ Engine coolant[3]
  - __ Exhaust pipes and mountings
  - __ Steering gear box
  - __ Steering linkage and boots

**Note:** Driving in heavy traffic, on dirt roads or in urban, dusty or desert areas may shorten the life of the cabin air filter. Replacement may be needed if you notice reduced airflow from the air conditioner and heater or if the windows fog easily when you use the "Fresh" mode. Consult your dealer if any of these conditions occur.

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.
3) See Maintenance Definitions (Engine Coolant) for details.

## 2006 Solara 110,000 Miles – 132 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.

## 2006 Solara 115,000 Miles – 138 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Visually inspect brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Inspect ball joints and dust covers
- ❑ Inspect drive shaft boots
- ❑ Inspect engine air filter
- ❑ Inspect steering linkage and boots
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.

## 2006 Solara 120,000 Miles - 144 Months

- ❑ Replace engine oil and oil filter[1]
- ❑ Rotate tires
- ❑ Replace cabin air filter (if equipped)
- ❑ Replace engine air filter
- ❑ Replace spark plugs[7]
- ❑ Inspect the following:
  - __ Ball joints and dust covers
  - __ Brake lines and hoses
  - __ Brake linings/drums and brake pads/discs[4]
  - __ Differential oil
  - __ Drive belts
  - __ Drive shaft boots
  - __ Engine coolant[3]
  - __ Engine valve clearance
  - __ Exhaust pipes and mountings
  - __ Fuel lines and connections, fuel tank band and fuel tank vapor vent system hoses
  - __ Fuel tank cap gasket
  - __ Radiator core and condenser
  - __ Steering gear box
  - __ Steering linkage and boots
  - __ Transmission fluid or oil

**Additional Maintenance Items for Special Operating Conditions:**

**Driving While Towing**

- ❑ Replace front differential oil
- ❑ Replace transmission fluid or oil
- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Driving in Desert or On Dirt Roads**

- ❑ Tighten nuts and bolts on chassis

**Applicable Footnotes:**

1) Reset the oil replacement reminder ("MAINT REQD") light after replacing engine oil, if vehicle is equipped with this light.
3) See Maintenance Definitions (Engine Coolant) for details.
4) Inspect thickness measurement and disc runout.
7) Required under the terms of the Emission Control Warranty.